JVC

ENGLISH

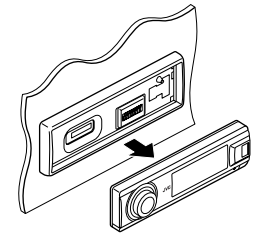
ESPAÑOL

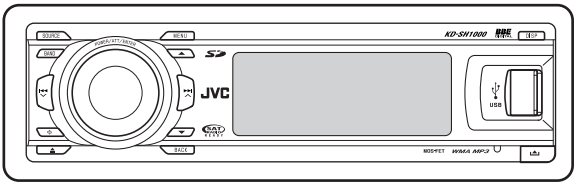
FRANÇAIS

CD RECEIVER KD-SH1000

RECEPTOR CON CD KD-SH1000

RECEPTEUR CD KD-SH1000





MP3 WMA

For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8
Para cancelar la demostración en pantalla, consulte la página 8
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 8

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

For customer Use:
Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No. _____

Serial No. _____

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

GET0364-001A
[J]

INFORMATION (For U.S.A.)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution:

Changes or modifications not approved by JVC could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.

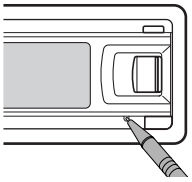
Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Notice:

The display window built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.

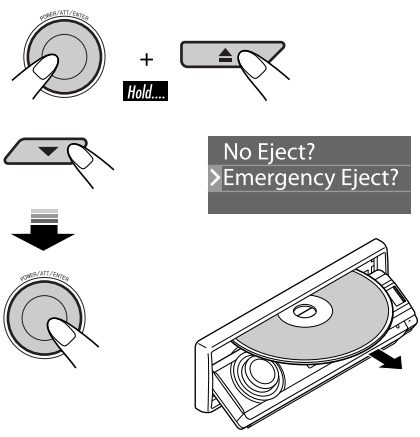
How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc

- If an SD card is inserted, eject the SD card first (see page 11).

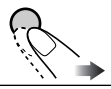
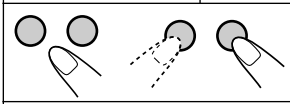
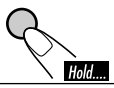
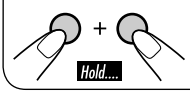


- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

How to read this manual

- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations in the table below.
- Some related tips and notes are explained in "More about this unit" (see pages 32 – 37).

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press Ⓐ, then Ⓑ.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.
	Press and hold both buttons at the same time.

The following marks are used to indicate...

- : Built-in CD player operations.
- : External CD changer operations.
- : SD player operations.
- : External USB memory operations.

CONTENTS

Control panel 5
Remote controller — RM-RK300 6
Getting started 7
Basic operations 7
Radio operations 8
Disc/SD card/USB memory operations 11
Playing a disc in the unit 11
Playing discs in the CD changer 11
Playing from an SD card 11
Playing from a USB memory 12
Sound adjustments 15
Selecting the DSP modes (DSP) 15
Using the equalizer—EQ 16
Activating crossover network 18
Setting the sound modes—SEL 18
General settings — PSM 20
Title assignment 24
Satellite radio operations 25
iPod®/D. player operations 29
Other external component operations ... 31
Maintenance 31
More about this unit 32
Troubleshooting 38
Specifications 42

ENGLISH

For safety...

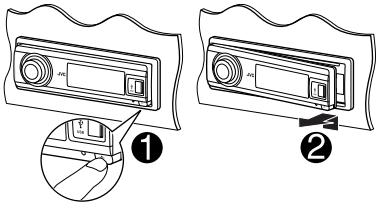
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

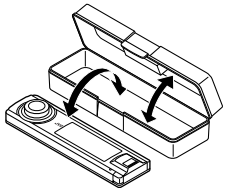
Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

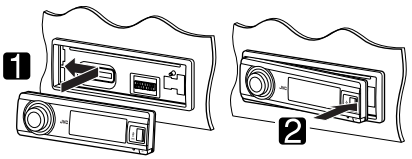
How to detach/attach the control panel

Detaching...





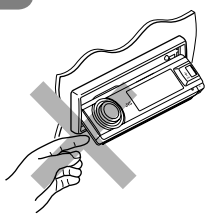
Attaching...



How to change the control panel angle

When using the remote controller

Caution:



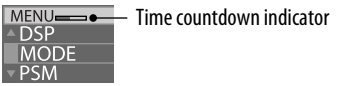
How to enter the various menus

The main menu contains seven menus (MODE, PSM, SEL, TITLE, BBE, EQ, DSP).

- If no operation is done for about 5 seconds, menu screen is canceled.

1

2 Select a menu you want.



3 Enter the selected menu.

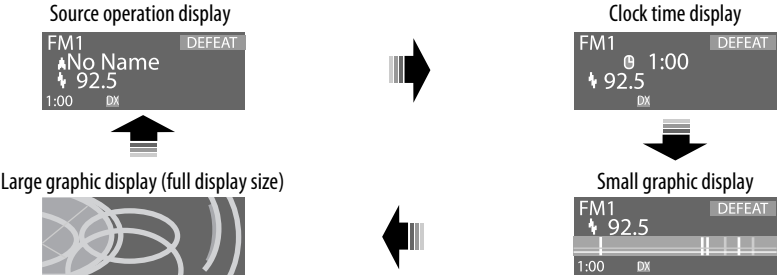
- To go back to the previous screen or exit the MENU screen, press BACK repeatedly.

4 Operate as instructed on the screen.

- To go back to the MENU screen, press MENU.

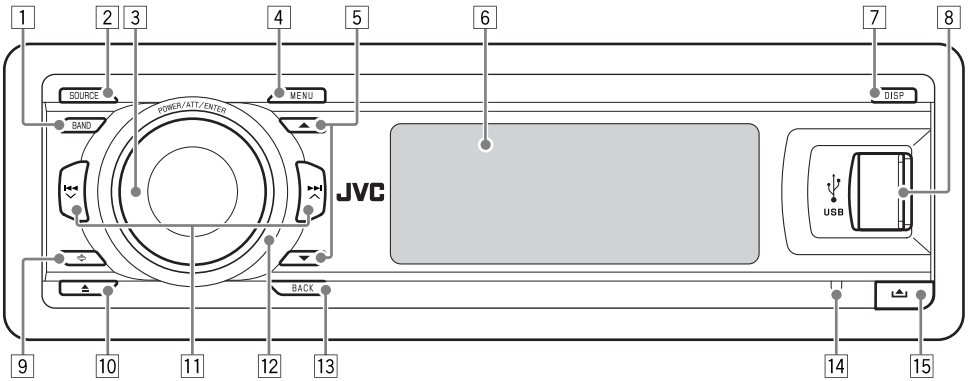
How to change the display information and patterns

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Control panel

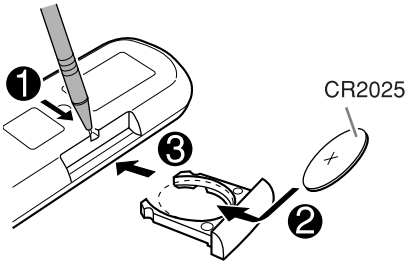
Parts identification



1 BAND button
2 SOURCE button
3 • Control dial
• POWER/ATT (attenuator)/ENTER button
4 MENU button
5 ▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons
6 Display window
7 DISP (display) button
8 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input terminal
9 (angle) button
10 ⏏ (eject) button
11 ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧ buttons
12 Remote sensor
DO NOT expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).
13 BACK button
14 Reset button
15 (control panel release) button

Remote controller — RM-RK300

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)

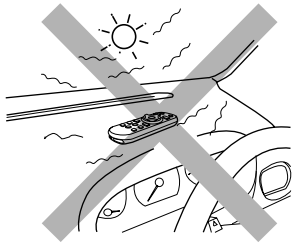


Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.

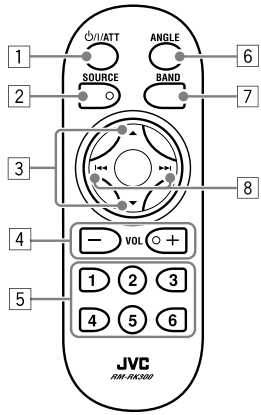
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accident.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
  - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
  - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
  - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
  - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Caution:



Main elements and features



1 **⏻/I/ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button**
- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 **SOURCE button**
Selects the source.

3 **▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Changes the preset stations.
- **For SIRIUS®/XM:** Changes the categories.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the folders.

- **While listening to an Apple iPod® or a JVC D. player:**
  - – Pauses/stops or resumes playback with ▼.
  - – Enters the main menu with ▲. (Now ▲/▼/|◄◄/►►| work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

4 **VOL (volume) + / – buttons**
Adjusts the volume level.

5 **Number buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Selects the preset station if pressed, or store a station if pressed and held.
- **For SIRIUS®/XM:** Selects the preset channels if pressed, or store a channel if pressed and held.
- **For CD/CD Text:** Selects the tracks.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Selects the folders.
- **For CD changer:** Selects the discs.

6 **ANGLE button**
Adjusts the control panel angle.

7 **BAND button**
Selects the band.

8 **|◄◄ / ►►| buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Searches for stations if pressed, or skips frequencies after pressed and held.
- **For SIRIUS®/XM:** Changes the channels if pressed briefly, or changes the channels rapidly if pressed and held.
- **For CD/CD Text/MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the tracks if pressed, or fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
- **While listening to an iPod or a D. player (in menu selecting mode):**
  - – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  - – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

* ▲ : *Returns to the previous menu.*
▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

Getting started

Activates or deactivates crossover network (see page 18) before turning on the power.

Basic operations

1 Turn on the power.

2

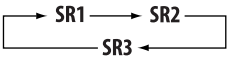
FM/AM → SIRIUS*/XM* → CD* → SD* → USB* → CD-CH*/iPod*/D. player* (or **EXT-IN**) → **LINE-IN** → (back to the beginning)

* *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

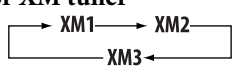
3

For FM/AM tuner

For SIRIUS® radio



For XM tuner



4 Adjust the volume.

Continued on the next page

5 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)**

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT) To restore the sound, press it again.	
To turn off the power	

Caution on volume setting:

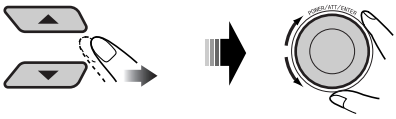
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Basic settings

- See also "General settings — PSM" on pages 20 – 23.

1 **Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).**

2



1 **Canceling the display demonstrations**
Select "Demo," then "Off."

2 **Setting the clock**
Select "Clock H" (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select "Clock M" (minute), then adjust the minute.
Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."

3 **Finish the procedure.**

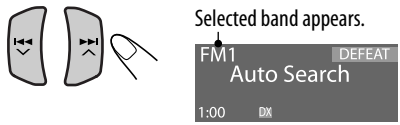
To check the current clock time while the power is turned off

Radio operations

1

2

3 **Start searching for a station.**



When a station is received, searching stops.
To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

In step **3** above...

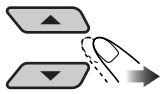
1

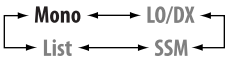
2 **Select a desired station frequency.**

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2





3

Off ⟷ On

4

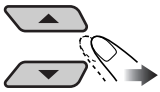
MO indicator lights up. Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

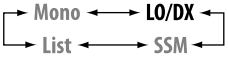
To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure and select "Off" in step **3**. The MO indicator goes off.

Tuning in to FM stations with strong signals only—LO (local)/DX (Distance-Extreme)

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2





3

Local ⟷ DX

4

DX indicator goes off and LO indicator lights up. Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure and select "DX" in step **3**. The LO indicator goes off and DX indicator lights up.

Storing stations in memory

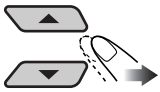
You can preset six stations for each band.

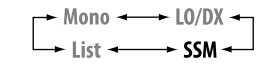
FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

1 **Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store into.**

2 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

3





4

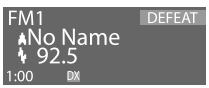
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1

2



3 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

- If you hold down ▲/▼, the Preset Station List appears (go to step **6**).

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

4

5

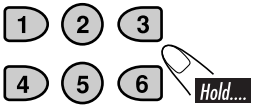
6 Select a preset number.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by turning the control dial.

7 Store the station.

When using the remote controller

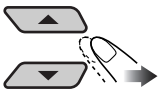
After tuning in to a station you want to preset...



Listening to a preset station

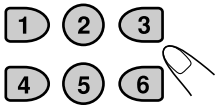
1

2



When using the remote controller

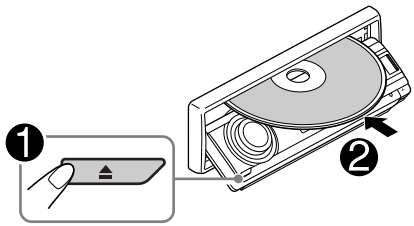
Directly select the preset number.



Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Playing a disc in the unit

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.



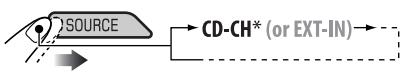
To stop play and eject the disc

Note:
If a USB memory is attached to the unit, you cannot eject the disc. "Please Eject USB" flashes on the display. If this happens, detach the USB memory, then, press ⏏ button again.

Playing discs in the CD changer

All discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

- Ejecting the magazine will also stop playback.

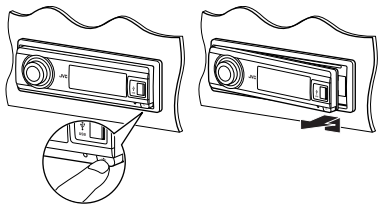


* *If you have changed the external input setting to "Ext In" (see page 22), you cannot select the CD changer.*

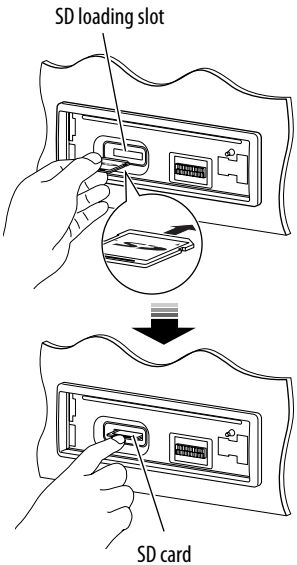
Playing from an SD card

Before detaching the control panel, turn off the power.

❶



❷



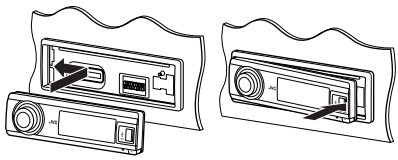
Press in the SD card until you hear a clicking sound.

To eject the SD card, press the SD card again.

- Press the SD card softly (do not release your finger quickly); otherwise, the SD card may pop out from the unit.

Continued on the next page

3 **Attach the control panel.**



4

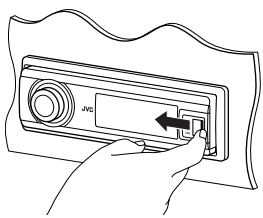
- The control panel goes back to the previous position.

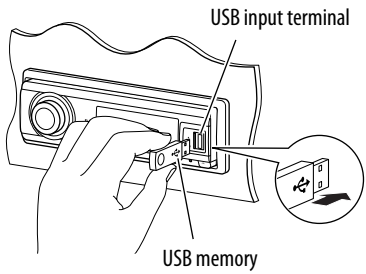
Playback starts automatically if tracks are recorded.

Playing from a USB memory

This unit can play MP3/WMA tracks stored in a USB memory.
All tracks in the USB memory will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

- Removing the USB memory will also stop playback.

1 

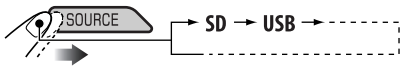
2 

To detach the USB memory, straightly pull it out from the unit.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the SD card/USB memory when it might hinder your safety driving.
- Make sure all important data have been backed up to avoid losing the data.

If an SD card or USB memory has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different SD card or USB memory is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

About MP3 and WMA tracks

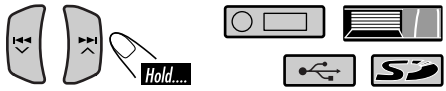
MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."

About the CD changer

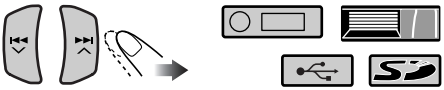
It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can also connect MP3-incompatible CD changers. However, these units are not compatible with MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the CH-X99, CH-X100, and KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.
- You cannot play any WMA disc in the CD changer.
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

To fast-forward or reverse the track



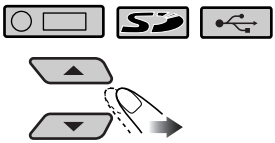
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB)

For MP3 tracks:

For WMA tracks:



- Holding the buttons can display the Disc List ( ) and Folder List (/ /), see the following.

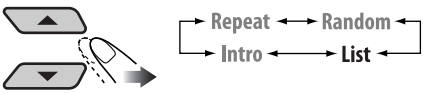
Other main functions

Selecting a disc/folder/track on the list

- This function is not available for an audio CD or a CD Text when the source is "CD."

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2



3 **Select a list type.**

*1 *Selectable only when the source is "CD-CH."*

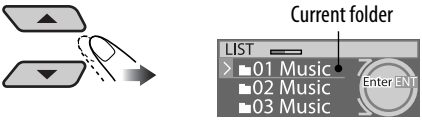
*2 *Appears only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB.*

4 **Confirm the selection.**

The selected list appears on the display.

- You can move to the other list by turning the control dial.

5 **Select a disc/folder/file from the list.**



Ex.: When "Folder" is selected in step **3**

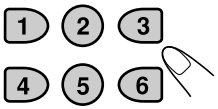
Only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB:
If you select the current disc/folder (highlighted on the screen), its Folder/File List appears.

6 **Starts playback.**

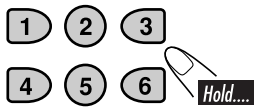
When using the remote controller

- To directly select a disc ( )
- To directly select a track of an audio CD or a CD Text ( )
- To directly select an MP3/WMA folder (/ /)

To select a number from 1 – 6:



To select a number from 7 (1) – 12 (6):



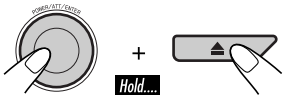
For MP3/WMA folders:
It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

ENGLISH

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

1



2 After making sure "No Eject?" is selected...

- "No Eject" flashes, and the disc cannot be ejected.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure after making sure "Eject OK?" is selected.

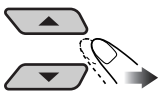
- "Eject OK" flashes on the display.

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



Repeat ↔ Random
Intro ↔ List

3 Select one of the items (see the following table).

4 Finish the procedure.

Intro	Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...
Track	: All tracks of the current playback media. [INTRO]
Folder*1	: First track of all folders of the current playback media. [F INTRO]
Disc*2	: First track of all the inserted discs. [D INTRO]
Off	: Cancels.

Repeat	Plays repeatedly
Track	: The current track. [REPEAT]
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder. [F REPT]
Disc*2	: All tracks of the inserted discs. [D RPT]
Off	: Cancels.

Random	Plays at random
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. [F RDM]
Disc	: All tracks of the current disc. [D RDM]
All*3	: All tracks of the inserted discs/ media. [ALL RDM]
Off	: Cancels.

*1 *Only while playing a media (MP3/WMA/SD/USB).*

*2 *Only when the source is CD-CH.*

*3 *Only when the source is CD-CH, SD, or USB.*

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes (DSP)

You can create a more acoustic sound field such as in a theater, hall, etc.

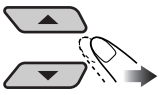
- When crossover network (see page 18) is activated, the DSP mode is fixed to "Defeat."

DSP modes

Defeat (No acoustic effect is applied), Theater, Hall, Club, Dome, Studio, V.Cancel (Voice Cancel: Reduces the vocal sounds. Good for mastering your favorite songs—Karaoke.)

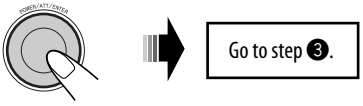
❶ **Enter the DSP menu (see page 4).**

❷ **Select one of the DSP modes.**



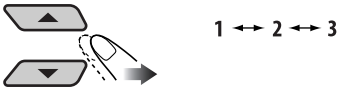
- **To finish the procedure**

- **To adjust the effect level**



For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the effect level is not adjustable.

❸ **Adjust the effect level.**



- **To finish the procedure**

To make more precise settings, see the following.

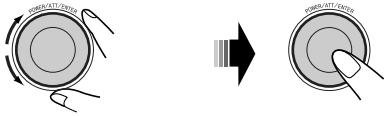
To cancel the acoustic effect, select "Defeat" in step ❷.

Precise settings for the DSP modes

1 Select a DSP mode.

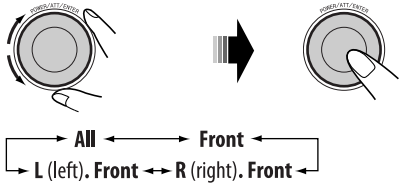
2 Select the number of the built-in speakers.

- For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the speaker number is fixed to "4ch."

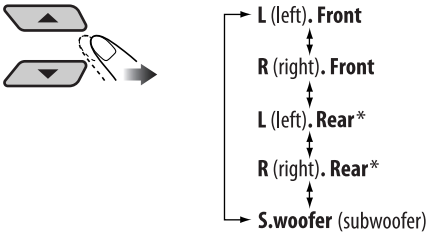


2ch (channel) ↔ **4ch** (channel)

3 Select your listening seat position.



4 Select the speaker to be adjusted.



* *Appears only when "4ch" is selected in step* **2**.

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

5 Select the distance between the selected speaker and the seat.

Once you have set the distance, it is memorized for each seat position selected in step **3**. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select the seat position.

To change the measuring unit

6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to adjust the distance for the other speakers.

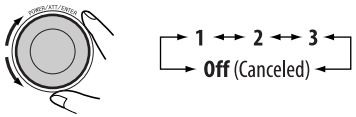
7 Finish the procedure.

Activating BBE Digital

BBE Digital is a digital processing method to restore the brilliance and clarity of the original live sound in recording, broadcasts, etc. When a speaker reproduces sound, it introduces frequency-dependent phase shifting, causing high-frequency sounds to take longer to reach the ear than low frequency sounds.
BBE Digital adjusts the phase relationship between the low, mid, and high frequencies by adding a progressively longer delay time to the low and mid frequencies, so that all frequencies reach the listener's ears at the proper time. A more brilliance and clearer sound is heard.

1 Enter the BBE menu (see page 4).

2 Select the effect level.



3 Finish the procedure.

Using the equalizer—EQ

You can adjust the sound equalization patterns to your preference by using either Graphic EQ or Parametric EQ.

- Adjust the equalizer to match the reproducible frequency range of the connected speakers; otherwise, the adjustments may not be effective.

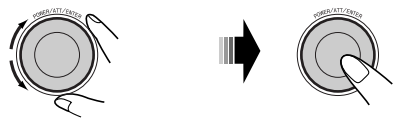
Selecting preset sound modes—Graphic EQ

Sound modes

Flat (No sound mode is applied), HardRock, R&B (Rhythm&Blues), Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User 1, User 2, User 3

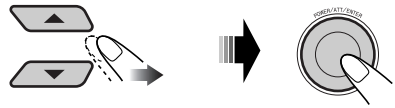
1 Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).

2



Graphic ↔ P.metric

3 Select a sound mode.

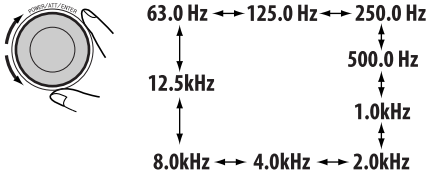


4 Finish the procedure.

Storing your own sound modes

1 **Select a sound mode.**

2 **Select a frequency band.**

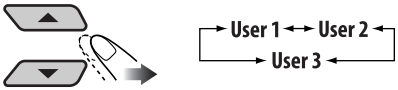


3 **Adjust the enhanced level for the selected frequency band.**

4 **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other frequency bands.**

5

6 **Select one of the user modes.**

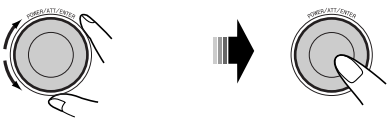


7 **Store the adjustments.**

Adjusting Parametric EQ

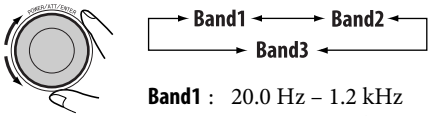
1 **Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).**

2



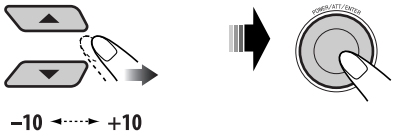
Graphic ↔ P.metric

3 **Select a band.**



Band1 : 20.0 Hz – 1.2 kHz
Band2 : 80.0 Hz – 5.0 kHz
Band3 : 315.0 Hz – 20 kHz

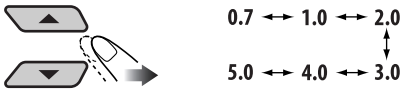
4 **Adjust the enhanced level for the selected band.**



5 **Select the frequency.**

- Band 1/2/3 are required to be preset at least 5 steps (frequencies) away from each other. (Only selectable frequencies are shown on the display.)

6 **Select the band width (Q).**



- To adjust the other bands, press BACK. Then repeat steps **3** to **6**.

7 **Finish the procedure.**

Once you have made adjustments, it is memorized. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select Parametric EQ.

Activating crossover network

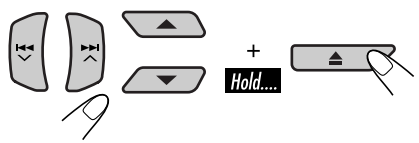
By activating crossover network, you can allocate different frequency range of sound signals to different speakers to match their characteristic.

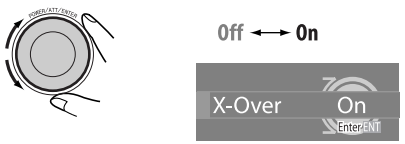
If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following:

- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For 3-way network speaker system, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

You cannot perform other operations until you finish the following procedure.

While the power is turned off...

1 

2 

3

- **To cancel the procedure,** press and hold POWER/ATT/ENTER. The power turns off.

4 **Finish the procedure.**

- X-OVER indicator lights up (in sequence with other indicators).

To cancel Crossover, repeat the same procedure. Make sure that "X-Over Off OK?" appears on the display.

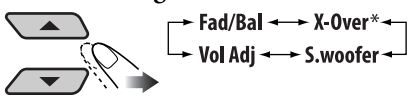
- X-OVER indicator goes off.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

1 **Enter the SEL menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select a setting item.**



* *Appears only when crossover network is activated (see left column).*

When selecting "Fad/Bal," "X-Over," or "S.woofer," press POWER/ATT/ENTER to enter its submenu.

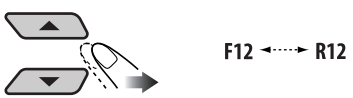
3 **Adjust the selected setting item. (See the following for details.)**

- To adjust other SEL settings, press BACK. Then repeat steps 2 and 3.

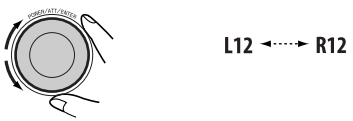
4 **Finish the procedure.**

To adjust fader and balance—Fad/Bal

- **Fad (fader)**
  Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.



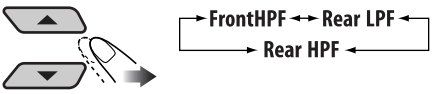
- **Bal (balance)**
  Adjust the left and right speaker balance.



To adjust reproduced frequency level—X-Over

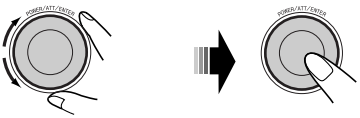
This setting is available only when crossover network (see page 18) is activated.

1 Select a filter.



HPF (Front/Rear)	: Frequencies lower than the selected level are cut-off.
LPF (Rear)	: Frequencies higher than the selected level are cut-off.

2 Select "On" to activate the selected filter.
- If you connect high-range speakers to Front or Rear output, select "On" for the corresponding HPF to prevent the speakers from being damaged.

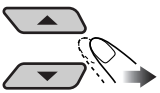


Off ↔ On

3 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected speakers.

1.6kHz – 16.0kHz : Front HPF and Rear LPF
31.5 Hz – 200.0Hz : Rear HPF

4 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).



–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

To adjust subwoofer output—S.woofer

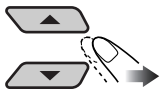
1 Adjust the output level.

00 ↔ 12

2 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected subwoofer.

31.5 Hz ↔ 200.0 Hz

3 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).



–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

To adjust the input level of each source—Vol Adj

This setting is required for each source except for FM.
Once an adjustment is made, it will be memorized. When you change the source the volume level will automatically increase or decrease according to the adjusted level.

1 Select a source before entering the SEL menu.

2 Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.

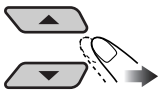
–5 ↔ +5

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items (except "Sirius ID") listed in the table that follows.

1 **Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select a PSM item.**



3 **Select or adjust the selected PSM item.**

4 **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other PSM items if necessary.**

5 **Finish the procedure.**

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Demo Display demonstration	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [8]. : Cancels.
Anime Animation	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: An animation screen appears when you turn on or off the power, change the source, and when you select an EQ, MENU, or DSP. : Cancels.
Clock H Hour adjustment	**1** – **12** (**0** – **23**) [Initial: 1 (1:00AM)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
Clock M Minute adjustment	**00** – **59** [Initial: 00 (1:00AM)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** [Initial] • **24Hours**	: See also page 8 for setting.
Clock Adj*1 Time display mode	• **Auto** [Initial] • **Off**	: The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock data provided via the satellite radio channel. : Cancels.
Time Zone*1,*2 Time zone	• **Eastern** [Initial] • **Atlantic** • **Newfndlnd** • **Alaska** • **Pacific** • **Mountain** • **Central**	: Select your residential area from one of the following time zones for clock adjustment.

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
DST[*1] Daylight savings time	• **On** [Initial]	: Activates daylight savings time if your residential area is subject to DST.
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Sirius ID[*3] SIRIUS ID		: Your SIRIUS identification number appears on the display, [25].
Scroll[*4]	• **Once** [Initial]	: Scrolls the track information once.
	• **Auto**	: Repeats scrolling (in 5-second intervals in between).
	• **Off**	: Cancels. • Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
Dimmer	• **Auto** [Initial]	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights.
	• **Time Set**	: Sets the timer for dimmer, see page 23 for setting. From: Any hour; To: Any hour
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
	• **On**	: Activates dimmer. (Does not work if "Bright" is set to "1.")
Bright Display brightness	**1** – **10** [Initial: 8]	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible. (If Dimmer is set to "On", selecting "1" to "4" takes no effect.)
ID3 Tag Tag display	• **On** [Initial]	: Shows the Tag information display while playing MP3/WMA tracks.
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Theme Display theme	• **Large** (**1** [Initial] or **2**)	: Select the display theme for large graphic display, [5]. See page 23 for setting.
	• **Small** (**1** [Initial] or **2**)	: Select the display theme for small graphic display, [5]. See page 23 for setting.
IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** [Initial]	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between close stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)
	• **Wide**	: Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Area Tuner channel interval	• **US** [Initial]	: When using in North/Central/South America. AM/FM intervals are set to 10 kHz/200 kHz.
	• **SA**	: When using in South American countries where FM interval is 100 kHz. AM interval is set to 10 kHz.
	• **EU**	: When using in any other areas. AM/FM intervals are set to 9 kHz/50 kHz (100 kHz during auto search).

[*1] *Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio or XM Satellite radio is connected.*
[*2] *Displayed only when "Clock Adj" is set to "Auto."*
[*3] *Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio is connected.*
[*4] *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

Continued on the next page

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Beep Key-touch tone	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Activates the key-touch tone. : Deactivates the key-touch tone.
Ext In*5 External input	• **Changer** [Initial] • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [18], a JVC compatible satellite (SIRIUS/XM) tuner, [25], or an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player, [29]. : To use any other external component than the above, [31].
Tel Telephone muting	• **Muting 1/ Muting 2** • **Off** [Initial]	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone. • If CD/CD-CH/SD/USB/iPod/D. player has been selected as the source, playback pauses during telephone muting. : Cancels.
Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR** • **Off**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to avoid damaging the speakers.) : Deactivates the built-in amplifier.

*5 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, SD, USB, or LINE-IN.*

Selecting timer for the dimmer

You can dim the display at night or as you set the timer.

1 Select "Dimmer" from the PSM menu.

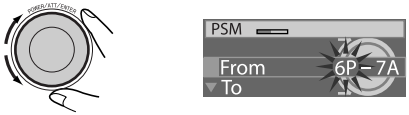
2 Select "Time Set."

3 Adjust the dimmer time.

1 Set the dimmer start time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

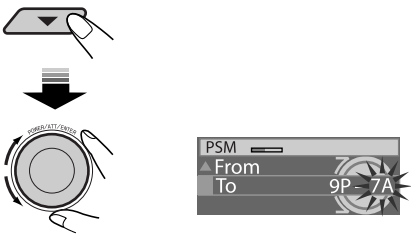
12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]



2 Set the dimmer end time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]



4 Finish the procedure.

Selecting the graphic theme

You can select the graphic theme for large and small display sizes (see also page 5).

1 Select "Theme" from the PSM menu.

2 Select the size of the display.

3 Select the theme.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select the other display size and theme.

5 Finish the procedure.

To show the selected display theme, press DISP repeatedly while playing a source.

ENGLISH

Title assignment

You can assign titles to station frequencies, CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer) and the external components (LINE-IN and EXT-IN).

Sources	Maximum number of characters
Station frequencies	Up to 16 characters (up to 30 station frequencies including both FM and AM)
CDs/CD-CH*	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)
External component	Up to 16 characters

* *You cannot assign names to any discs other than conventional CDs.*

1 Select the sources.

- For FM/AM tuner: Select a station.
- For CDs in this unit: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select "CD-CH," then select a disc number.
- For external component: Select "LINE-IN" or "EXT-IN."

2 Enter the TITLE menu (see page 4).

3 Assign a title.

1 **Select a character set.**

A (A – Z: upper case) → **a** (a – z: lower case) → **0** (numbers and symbols) → **Á** (Accented letters: upper case) → **á** (Accented letters: lower case) → (back to the beginning)

- For available characters, see page 37.

2 **Select a character.**

3 **Move to the next (or previous) character position.**

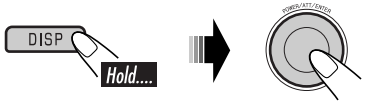
4 **Repeat steps 1 and 3 until you finish entering the title.**

4 Finish the procedure.

- To cancel the title entry without registration, press MENU.

To erase the entire title

In step **3**...



Satellite radio operations

This unit is satellite (SAT) Radio Ready—compatible with both SIRIUS Satellite radio and XM Satellite radio.

Before operating your satellite radio:
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your SIRIUS Satellite radio or XM Satellite radio.

- *"SIRIUS" and the SIRIUS dog logo are registered trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.*
- *XM and its corresponding logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.*
- *"SAT Radio," the SAT Radio logo and all related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc., and XM Satellite Radio, Inc.*

Listening to the satellite radio

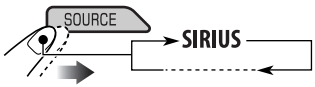
Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.
- **JVC SIRIUS radio DLP**—Down Link Processor, for listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.
- **XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box**—Using a JVC Smart Digital Adapter (XMDJVC100: not supplied), for listening to the XM Satellite radio.

GCI (Global Control Information) update:
- If channels are updated after subscription, updating starts automatically.
  The following appears and no sound can be heard.
  – For SIRIUS Satellite radio: "Channels Updating XX%* Completed"
  – For XM Satellite radio: "UPDATING"
- Update takes a few minutes to complete.
- During update, you cannot operate your satellite radio.

* *Changes every 20% of update is completion, (ex. 20%, 40%, 60%).*

Activate your SIRIUS subscription after connection:

1

2 

JVC DLP starts updating all the SIRIUS channels.

Once completed, JVC DLP tunes in to the preset channel, CH184.

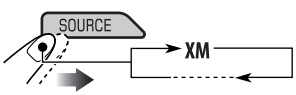
3 **Check your SIRIUS ID, see page 21.**

4 **Contact SIRIUS on the internet at <http://activate.siriusradio.com/> to activate your subscription, or you can call SIRIUS toll-free at 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).**
"Subscription Updated Press Any Key to Continue" appears on the display once subscription has been completed.

Activate your XM subscription after connection:

- Only Channel 0, 1, and 247 are available before activation.

1

2 

XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box starts updating all the XM channels. "Channel 1" is tuned in automatically.

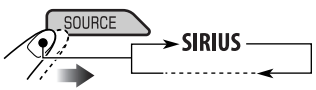
3 **Check your XM Satellite radio ID labelled on the casing of the XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box, or tune in to "Channel 0" (see page 27).**

Continued on the next page

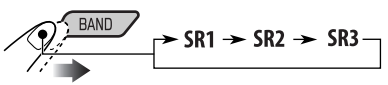
4 **Contact XM Satellite radio on the internet at <http://xmradio.com/activation/> to activate your subscription, or you can call 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346).**
Once completed, the unit tunes in to one of the available channels (Channel 4 or higher).

Listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio

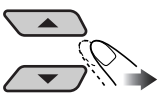
1



2



3 Select a category.



You can tune in to all the channels of every category by selecting "ALL."
Selecting a particular category (SPORTS, ENTERTAINMENT, etc.) allows you to enjoy only the channels from the selected category.
- Holding either of the buttons can display the category list (see page 28).

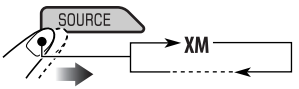
4 Select a channel for listening.

Holding the button changes the channels rapidly.

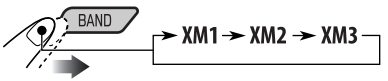
- When changing the category or channel, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped.

Listening to the XM Satellite radio

1



2



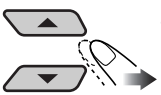
3 Select a channel for listening.

Holding the button changes the channels rapidly.

Searching for category/channel

You can search for programs by category (Category Search) or channel number (Channel Search).
- **In Category Search,** you can tune in to the channels of the selected category. Category Search begins from the currently selected channel.
- **In Channel Search,** you can tune in to all channels (including non-categorised channels).

1 Select a category (Category Search).



- For Channel Search, skip this step.

2 Select a channel for listening.

If no operation is done for about 15 seconds, Category Search is canceled.

In Channel Search, channel name and channel number appear on the display during search.

- While searching, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped.

Checking the XM Satellite radio ID

While selecting "XM1," "XM2," or "XM3," select "Channel 0."

The display alternately shows "RADIO ID" and the 8-digit (alphanumeric) ID number.

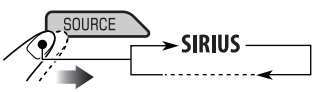
To cancel the ID number display, select any channel other than "Channel 0."

Storing user channels in memory

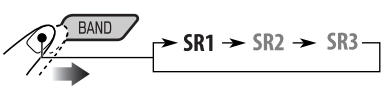
You can preset six channels for each band.

Ex.: Storing a SIRIUS channel into preset number 4 of the SR1 band.

1



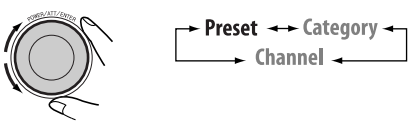
2



- Holding the button displays the User Preset Channel List (see step **6** on the right column).

3 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

4 **Select "Preset."**

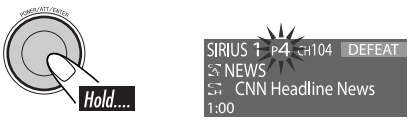


5

6 **Select a user preset number.**

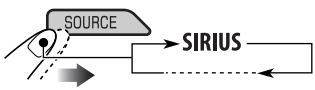
- You can move to the lists of the other SIRIUS bands by turning the control dial.

7 **Store the channel.**

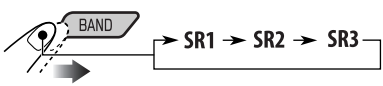


Listening to a user preset channel

1



2



- Holding this button displays the User Preset Channel List (see step **6** above).

3 **Perform steps 3 to 6 (on the left column) to select a user preset channel.**

4 **Finish the procedure.**

ENGLISH

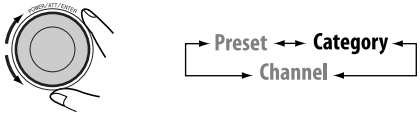
ENGLISH

Selecting a category/channel on the list

Selecting a category from the list

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select "Category."**



3

4 **Select a category you want.**

- You can move to the other lists by turning the control dial.

5 **Finish the procedure.**

The first channel of the selected category is tuned in.

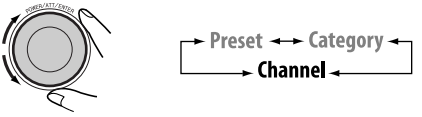
- If you select the current category (highlighted on the display), its channel list appears.

Holding ▲/▼ also shows the Category List while listening to a channel.

Selecting a channel from the list

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select "Channel."**



3

4 **Select a channel you want.**

- You can move to the other lists by turning the control dial.

5 **Finish the procedure.**

To change the display information while listening to a channel

Category name and channel name → Artist/composer* name and song/program name → Clock → Small graphic display → Large graphic display → (back to the beginning)

* *Only for SIRIUS Satellite radio.*

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:
Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **Interface adapter for iPod®**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- **D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Caution:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

Preparations:
Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 22.

1

2

Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused*1 or stopped*2 previously.

3 **Adjust the volume.**

4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)**

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause*1 or stop*2 playback To resume playback, press it again.	
To fast-forward or reverse the track	
To go to the next or previous tracks	

*1 *For iPod*
*2 *For D. player*

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.

Now the ▲/▼/|◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*.

* *The menu selecting mode will be canceled:*
- *– If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.*
- *– When you confirm the selection of a track.*

2 Select the desired menu.

For iPod:
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:
Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔ Genre ↔ Track ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Confirm the selection.

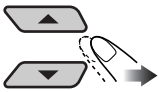
To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.
- Holding |◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ can skip 10 items at a time.

Selecting the playback modes

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



Repeat ↔ Random

3 Select an item (see table below).

4 Finish the procedure.

Repeat play	
One	: Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → One" for the D. player.
All	: Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → All" for the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.
Random play	
Album*	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
Song/On	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod or "Random Play → On" of the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.

* *For iPod: Only if you select "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

Other external component operations

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN plugs on the rear or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

For listening to the SD card/USB memory, see pages 11 – 14; For iPod, or D.player, see pages 29 – 30.

1

LINE-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN plugs.

EXT-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack.

If "EXT-IN" does not appear, see page 22 and select the external input ("Ext In").

2 **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

3 **Adjust the volume.**

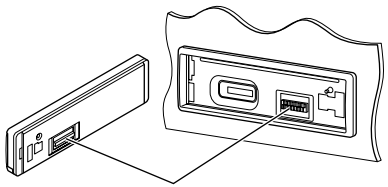
4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)**

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

Continued on the next page

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

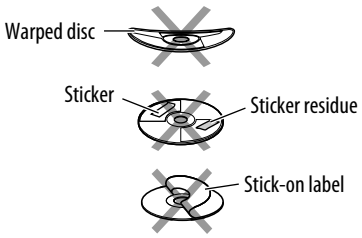
To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

How to handle SD card

SD cards are precision products. DO NOT impact, bend, drop, or wet them.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start from where playback has been stopped previously, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
  - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/ CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA) and MP3/WMA format; MP3/WMA files recorded in an SD card or a USB memory.
- While playing an audio CD: If a title has been assigned to the audio CD (see page 24), it will be shown on the display.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing an MP3/ WMA track, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the control panel moves down, and the disc automatically ejects from the loading slot.
- If you keep the control panel open for about 1 minute, (beeps sound when the "Beep" setting is turned "On"—see page 22) the control panel returns to its previous position.
- Do not insert 8 cm discs (single CD) and unusual shape discs (heart, flower, etc.) into the loading slot.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can play back only files of the same type which are first detected if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/ WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  - Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the unit.
  - The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  - CD-R/CD-RW on which the files are written with "Packet Write" method.
  - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA discs

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files compliant to ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name.
- The maximum number of characters for file/ folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  - Romeo*: up to 128 (72) characters
  - Joliet*: up to 64 (36) characters
  - Windows long file name*: up to 128 (72) characters

  * *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 313 or more.*

- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, of 200 folders, and of 8 hierarchies.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA tracks from an SD card or a USB memory

- While playing from an SD card or a USB memory, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some SD cards or USB memories due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB memories and connection ports, some USB memories may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- It is not recommended to use a USB memory wider than 20 mm as it will block you from pressing some buttons on the control panel.
- If the connected USB memory does not have the correct files, “No Files” appears and the unit returns to the previous source.
- This unit can show Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- For SD card: The maximum number of characters for folder name is 8 characters; file names is 12 characters. This unit cannot recognize folder with period (.) on the folder name.
  For USB memory: The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- For SD card: This unit can recognize a total of 255 files and 63 folders.
  For USB memory: This unit can recognize a total of 2 500 files and 250 folders (999 files per folder).
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops. Next time you select the same source again, playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes—DSP

- Effectiveness of "V.Cancel" depends on the recording condition of the sources:
  - Monaural sources such as AM and monaural FM broadcasting programs.
  - Multiplex sound sources.
  - Sources recorded with duets, strong echo, a chorus, or only a few instruments.
- When "4ch" is selected, rear speakers are used only to reproduce reflections and reverberations in order to create a being-there feeling in your car compartment.
- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate effect may not be obtained.
- You cannot adjust the effect level and speaker number when "Defeat" is selected with crossover network activated.

Storing your own sound modes

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press MENU to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to the center.
- Subwoofer out setting takes effect only when a subwoofer is connected.
- You cannot change the input level—"VolAdjust" of the FM stations. If the source is FM, "Fix" will appear when you try to adjust it.

General settings — PSM

- "Auto Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming. In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any one other than "Auto."
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies or 30 discs, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc in the unit and vice versa.

Satellite radio operations

- You can also connect the JVC SIRIUS radio PnP (Plug and Play), using the JVC SIRIUS radio adapter, KS-U100K (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear.
  By turning on/off the power of the unit, you can turn on/off the JVC PnP. However, you cannot control it from this unit.
- To know more about SIRIUS Satellite radio or to sign up, visit «http://www.sirius.com».
- For the latest channel listings and programming information, or to sign up for XM Satellite radio, visit «http://www.xmradio.com».

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 21). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

For D. player users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>

Available characters

In addition to the Roman alphabets (A – Z, a – z), the following characters will be used.

Accented letters: upper case

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Đ	Ŧ	Ľ	İ	ij	ð	space							

Accented letters: lower case

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ľ	ı	ij	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

Preset frequency level settings for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset equalizing value								
	63 Hz	125 Hz	250 Hz	500 Hz	1 kHz	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12.5 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+06	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+02
R&B	+06	+04	+04	+04	00	+02	+02	+02	+06
Pop	00	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+02	+02	+04
Jazz	+06	+04	+02	+02	+02	+02	+02	+06	+04
Dance	+08	+04	+02	00	–04	–02	00	+02	+02
Country	+04	+02	00	00	00	00	00	+02	+04
Reggae	+06	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+04	+04	+06
Classic	+04	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	00
User 1	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 2	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see pages 4 and 31).
	• "Push Reset" appears on the display and the control panel movement is freezed.	Reset the unit (see page 2). If this does not work, check the installation.
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 14). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "Loading Error," or "Eject Error" appears).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• A longer readout time is required ("File Check" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs while playing. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• "No Music" appears on the display.	Change the disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 37).
SD card/USB memory playback	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not an MP3/WMA track. Skip to another file. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• "File Check" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Play a device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	• The device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the device are corrupted. • Do not pull out or attach the USB memory repeatedly while "File Check" appears on the display.
	• "SD Loading Error" appears on the display while playing tracks from an SD card.	Detach the control panel and reinsert the SD card. The control panel goes back to initial position (Angle 1).
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	MP3/WMA tracks have not been properly copied into the device. Copy MP3/WMA tracks again into the device, and try again.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 37).

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
Sounds	• DSP mode cannot be selected other modes than "Defeat." • Only high range sound or low range sound is reproduced though full range speakers are connected.	Deactivate crossover network (see page 18).
Satellite radio	• "CALL 1-888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" scrolls on the display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	Starts subscribing SIRIUS Satellite radio (see page 25).
	• No sound can be heard. "Channel Updating XX%* Completed" appears on the display.	The unit is updating the channel information and it takes a few minutes to complete.
	• Either "No Signal" or "NO SIGNAL" appears on the display.	Move to an area where signals are stronger.
	• Either "No Antenna" or "CHECK ANTENNA" appears on the display.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "Invalid Channel" appears on the display for about 5 seconds, then returns to the previous display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	No broadcast on the selected channel. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "No Name" appears or scrolls on the display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio. • "---" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	No text information for the selected channel.
	• "---" appears on the display for about 2 seconds, then returns to the previous channel while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is no longer available or is unauthorized. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "OFF AIR" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is not broadcasting at this time.

* *Changes every 20% of update is completion, (ex. 20%, 40%, 60%).*

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Satellite radio	• "LOADING" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	The unit is loading the channel information and audio. Text information are temporarily unavailable.
	• Satellite radio does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the satellite radio correctly and reset this unit.
iPod/D. player playback	• The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press POWER/ATT/ENTER before performing the operation.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/ D. player.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation using the control panel (see page 29).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	• No sound can be heard. • "ERROR 01" appears on the display when connecting a D. player.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "No Files" or "No Track" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/ D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's or D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- *Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.*
- *SD logo is a trademark.*
- *Manufactured under license from BBE Sound, Inc.*
  Licensed by BBE Sound, Inc. under USP5510752 and 5736897. BBE and BBE symbol are registered trademarks of BBE Sound, Inc.
- *iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.*

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Power Output:	20 W RMS × 4 Channels at 4 Ω and ≤ 1% THD+N	
	Signal to Noise Ratio:	80 dBA (reference: 1 W into 4 Ω)	
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies: Graphic EQ: 63 Hz, 125 Hz, 250 Hz, 500 Hz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, 4 kHz, 8 kHz, 12.5 kHz (9 bands) Parametric EQ: 3 bands (Band 1/2/3): 20 Hz, 25 Hz, 31.5 Hz, 40 Hz, 50 Hz, 63 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 125 Hz, 160 Hz, 200 Hz, 250 Hz, 315 Hz, 400 Hz, 500 Hz, 630 Hz, 800 Hz, 1 kHz, 1.2 kHz, 1.6 kHz, 2 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 3.2 kHz, 4 kHz, 5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 8 kHz, 10 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 16 kHz, 20 kHz (31 frequencies)	
		Level:	±10 dB
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Level/Impedance:	Line-In:	1.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Line-Out:	5.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
	Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:		LINE IN, CD changer
TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz (with channel interval set to 200 kHz) 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz (with channel interval set to 50 kHz)
		AM:	530 kHz to 1 710 kHz (with channel interval set to 10 kHz) 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz (with channel interval set to 9 kHz)
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/65 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:	Compact disc player	
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		98 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		102 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
SD CARD	Format:		FAT 12/16
	Storage:		8 MB – 512 MB
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 192 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
USB MEMORY	Format:		FAT 12/16/32
	Storage:		Less than 4 GB (1 partition type)
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	Max. Current:		Less than 500 mA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
			MPEG-2.5: 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	5 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	8 kHz – 48 kHz
GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 162 mm (7-3/16" × 2-1/16" × 6-7/16")
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm (7-7/16" × 2-5/16" × 7/16")
	Mass (approx.):		1.7 kg (3.8 lbs) (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

If a kit is necessary for your car, consult your telephone directory for the nearest car audio speciality shop.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Still having trouble??

USA ONLY

Call 1-800-252-5722

http://www.jvc.com

We can help you!

JVC

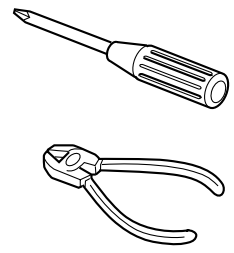
EN, SP, FR

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0206DTSMDTJEIN

KD-SH1000

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual de instalación/conexión
Manuel d'installation/raccordement



GET0364-002A
[J]

0206DTSMDTJEIN
EN, SP, FR

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

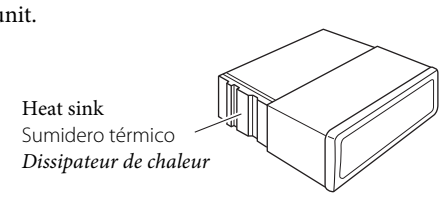
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



ESPAÑOL

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA**. Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

ADVERTENCIAS

Para evitar cortocircuitos, recomendamos que desconecte el terminal negativo de la batería y que efectúe todas las conexiones eléctricas antes de instalar la unidad.

- **Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.**

Notas:

- Reemplace el fusible por uno con la corriente especificada. Si el fusible se quemase frecuentemente consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.
- Se recomienda conectar los altavoces con una potencia máxima de más de 50 W (tanto atrás como adelante, con una impedancia de **4 Ω a 8 Ω**). Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 50 W, cambie "Amp Gain" para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 22 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
- Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los cables NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.
- El sumidero térmico estará muy caliente después del uso. Asegúrese de no tocarlo al desmontar esta unidad.

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. *Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

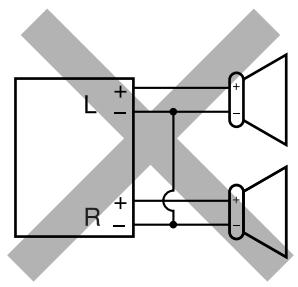
- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques:

- *Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre* **4 Ω et 8 Ω**). *Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amp Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 22 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
- *Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.*
- *Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.*

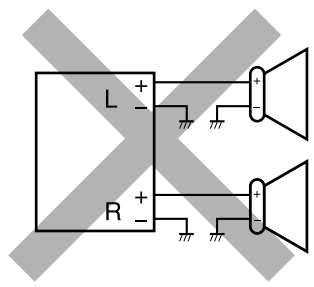
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



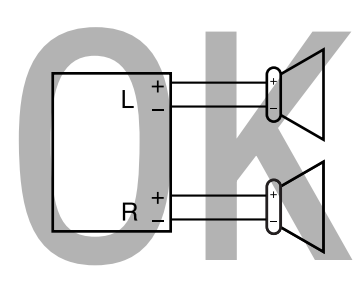
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en la unidad.**
- ANTES de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.



PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*



Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

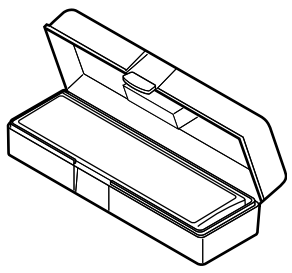
Lista de piezas para instalación y conexión

Con esta unidad se suministran las siguientes piezas. Si hay algún elemento faltante, consulte inmediatamente con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

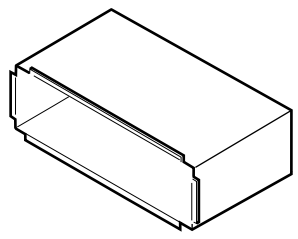
Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Les pièces suivantes sont fournies avec cet appareil. Si quelque chose manquait, consultez votre revendeur autoradio JVC immédiatement.

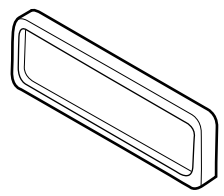
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Estuche duro/Panel de control
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande



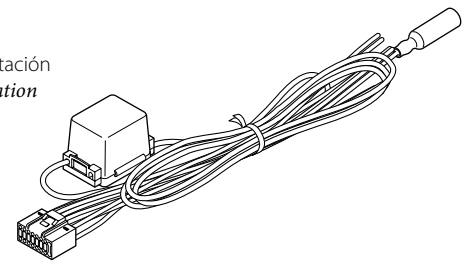
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Cubierta
Manchon



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage



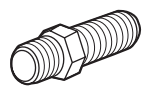
Ⓔ
Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Arandela (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)

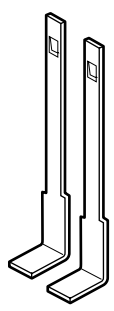
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Tuerca de seguridad (M5)
Ecrou d'arrêt (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt—M5 × 20 mm (M5 × 13/16")
Perno de montaje—M5 × 20 mm (M5 × 13/16 pulgada)
Boulon de montage—M5 × 20 mm (M5 × 13/16 pouces)

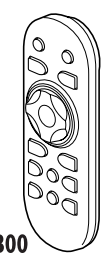


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Cojín de goma
Amortisseur en caoutchouc

Ⓙ
Handles
Manijas
Poignées



Ⓚ
Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommade



Ⓛ
Battery
Pila
Pile

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

INSTALACION (MONTAJE EN EL TABLERO DE INSTRUMENTOS)

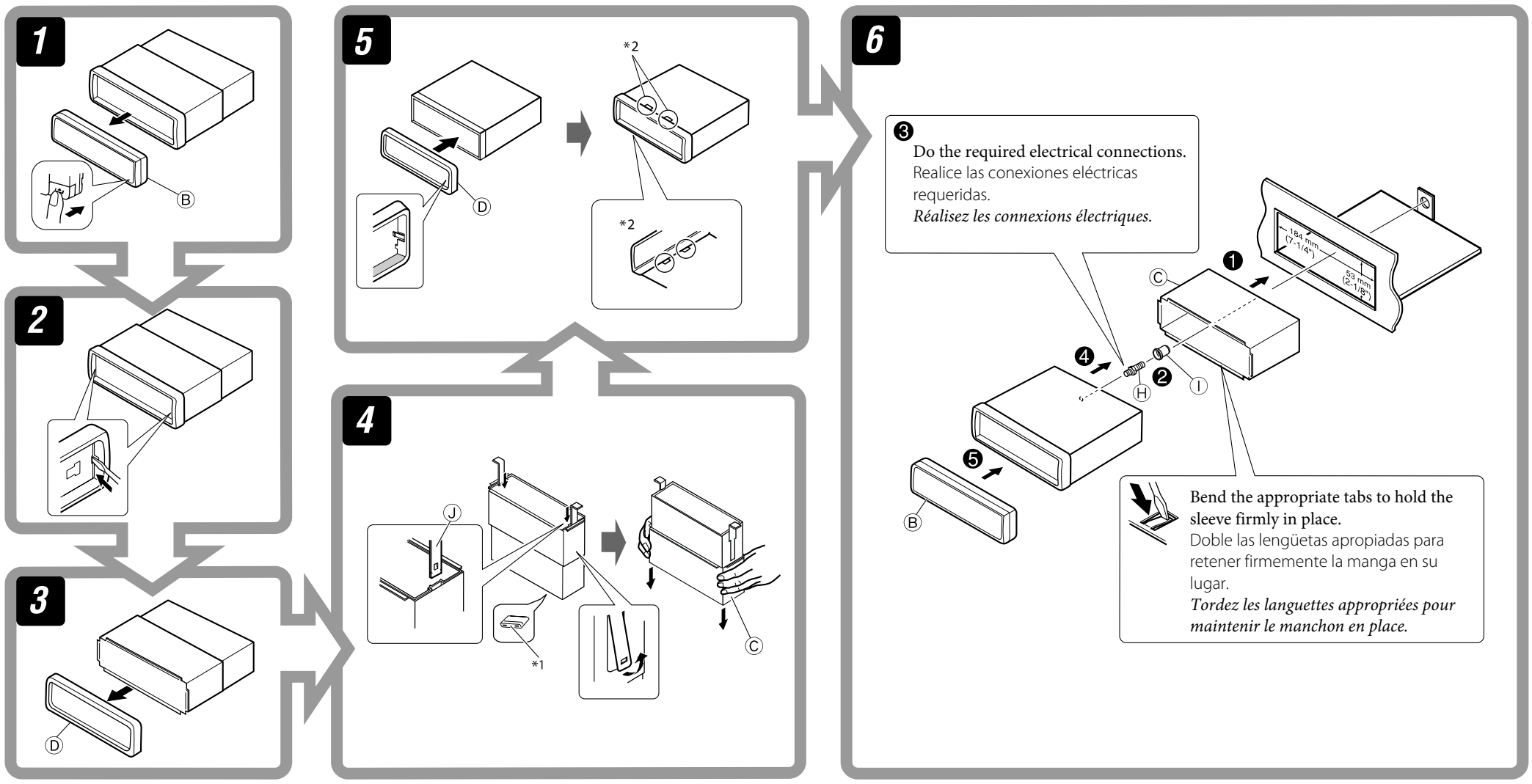
La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

- Si usted no está seguro de cómo instalar correctamente la unidad, hágala instalar por un técnico cualificado.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- *Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.*



*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*1 Al poner la unidad vertical, tenga cuidado de no dañar el fusible provisto en la parte posterior.
*1 *Lorsque vous mettez l'appareil à la verticale, faire attention de ne pas endommager le fusible situé sur l'arrière.*

*2 Fit the protrusions outside the unit.
*2 Haga encajar los salientes del exterior de la unidad.
*2 *Fixez les protubérances à l'extérieur de l'appareil.*

Removing the unit

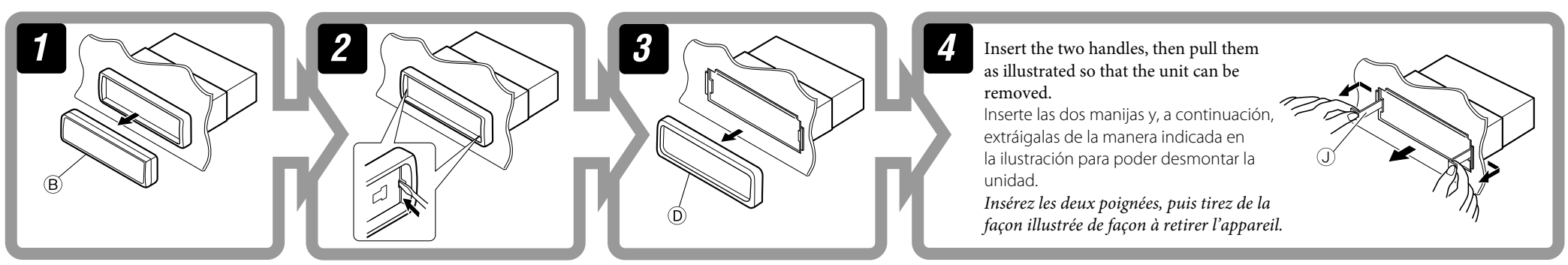
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Extracción de la unidad

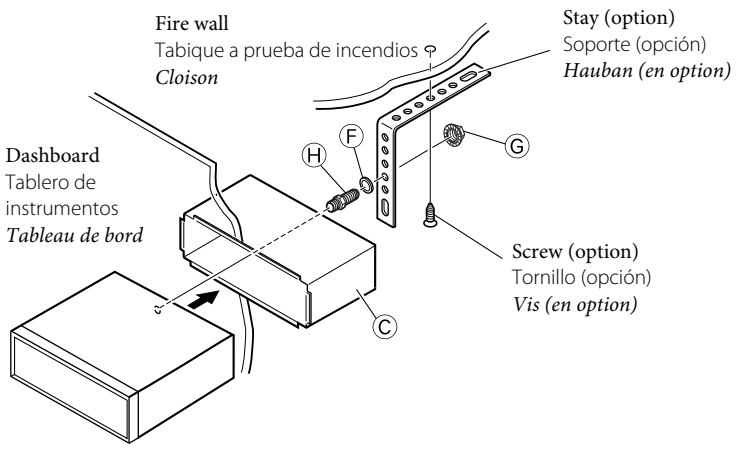
Antes de extraer la unidad, libere la sección trasera.

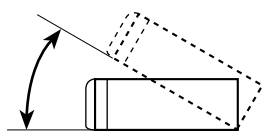
Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.



When using the optional stay / Cuando emplea un soporte opcional / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option

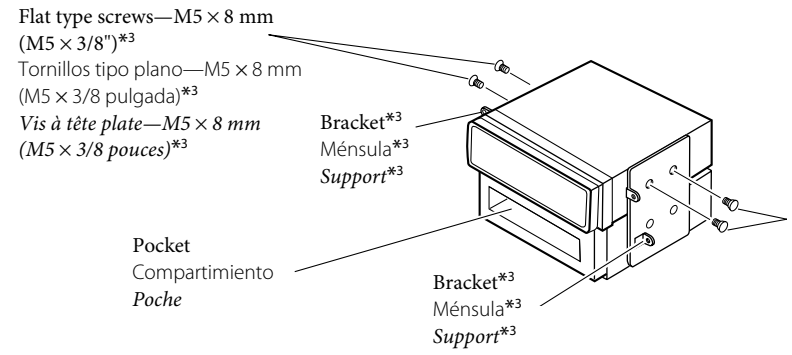




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
Instale la unidad a un ángulo de menos de 30°.
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Instalación de la unidad sin utilizar la cubierta / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil scans utiliser de manchon

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
En un automóvil Toyota, por ejemplo, en primer lugar desmonte el autorradio e instale la unidad en su lugar.
Dans une voiture Toyota, par exemple, retirez d'abord l'autoradio et installez l'appareil à sa place.



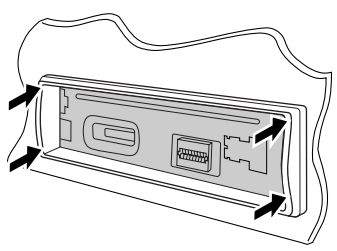
*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 No suministrado con esta unidad.
*3 *Non fourni avec cet autoradio.*

Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm (3/8")-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Nota : Cuando instala la unidad en la ménsula de montaje, asegúrese de utilizar los tornillos de 8 mm (3/8 pulgada) de longitud. Si se utilizan tornillos más largos, éstos pueden dañar la unidad.

Remarque : *Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm (3/8 pouces). Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.*

Caution when installing / Precaución en la instalación / Précautions lors de l'installation



Fit the unit into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.
- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration).

Introduzca el receptor en la manga de montaje utilizando las cuatro esquinas de la placa decorativa.
- NO presione el panel (sombreado en la ilustración).

Fixez l'appareil sur le manchon de montage en utilisant les quatre coins de la plaque de garniture.
- *NE POUSSEZ PAS sur le panneau (en gris sur l'illustration).*

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

A Typical connections / Conexiones tipicas / Raccordements typiques

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

If you have installed 3-way network speaker system in your car, see diagram C for speaker connection.

Antes de la conexión: Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves en la unidad.
Los cordones del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil podrían ser de diferentes en color.

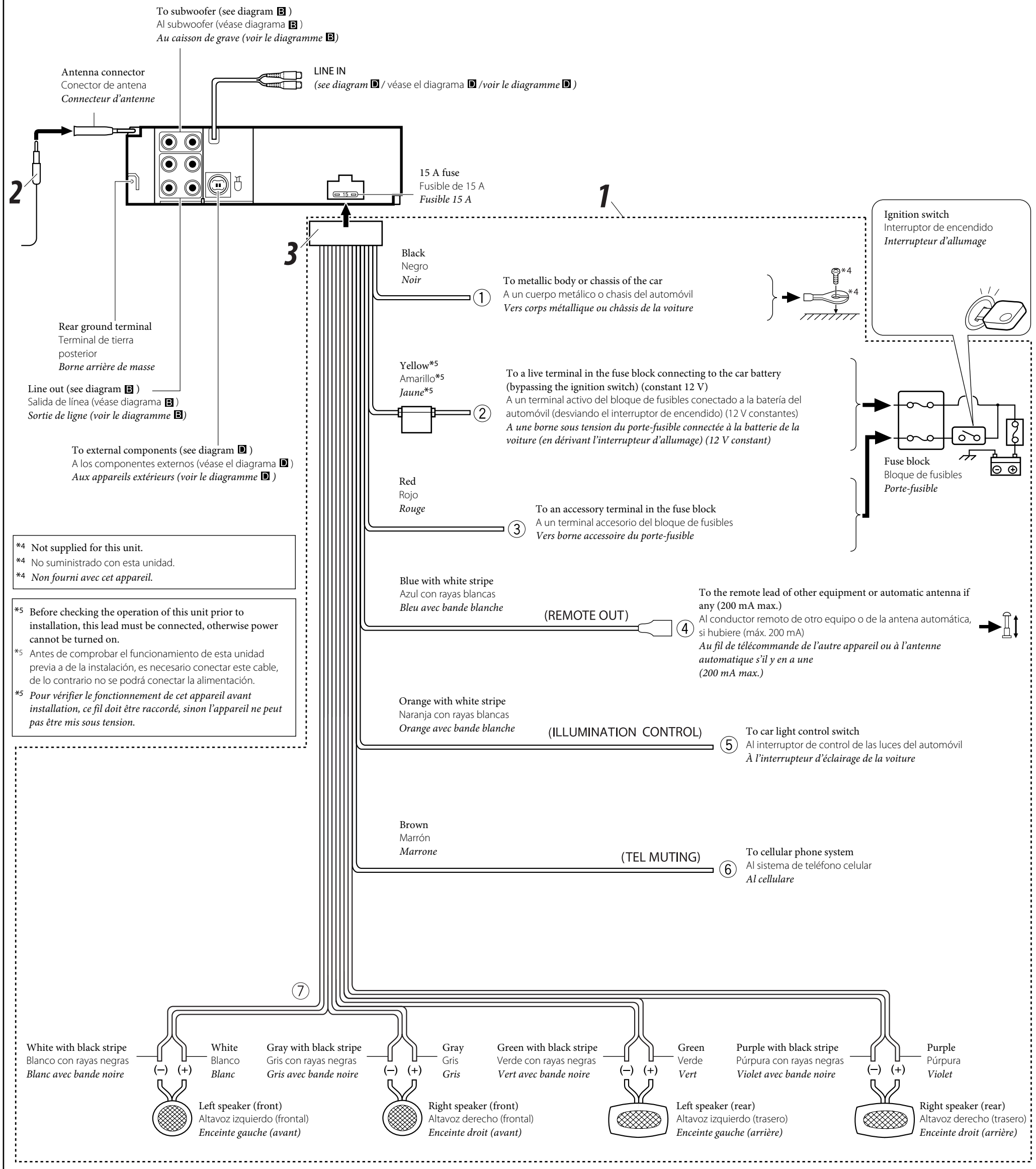
1. Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.
2. Conecte el cable de antena.
3. Por último, conecte el cable de alimentación a la unidad.

Si ha instalado el sistema de altavoces de 3 vías en su automóvil, véase el diagrama C para la conexión de los altavoces.

Avant de commencer la connexion: *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.*
Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*
2. *Connectez le cordon d'antenne.*
3. *Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.*

Si vous avez installé un système d'enceintes à 3 voies, *référez-vous au diagramme C pour la connexion des enceintes.*



*4 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 No suministrado con esta unidad.
*4 *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*

*5 **Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.**
*5 Antes de comprobar el funcionamiento de esta unidad previa a de la instalación, es necesario conectar este cable, de lo contrario no se podrá conectar la alimentación.
*5 ***Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.***

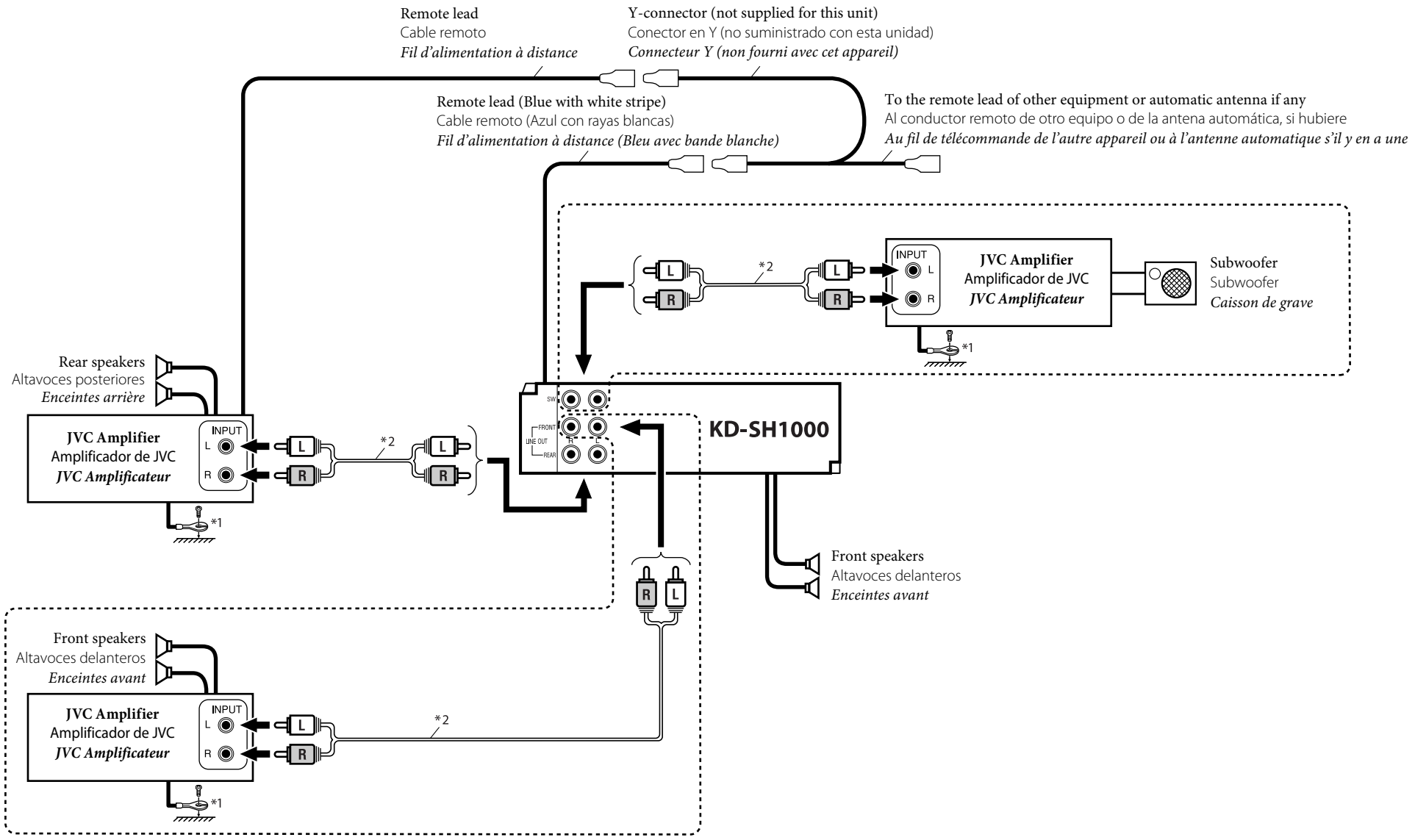
ENGLISH | ESPAÑOL | FRANÇAIS

B Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Conexión de los amplificadores y/o subwoofer externos / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs et/ou d'un caisson de grave

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  - **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
  - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
  - The line output level of this unit is kept high to maintain the hi-fi sounds reproduced from this unit.
    When connecting an external amplifier to this unit, turn down the gain control on the external amplifier to obtain the best performance from this unit.

Usted podrá conectar amplificadores para mejorar el sistema estéreo de su automóvil.
- Conecte el conductor remoto (azul con rayas blancas) al conductor remoto del otro equipo para poderlo controlar a través de esta unidad.
- **Sólo para el amplificador:**
  - **Desconecte los altavoces de esta unidad y conéctelos al amplificador. Los cables de los altavoces de esta unidad quedan sin usar.**
  - Podrá desconectar el amplificador incorporado y enviar las señales de audio solamente al(los) amplificador(es) externo(s) para obtener sonidos nítidos y evitar que se caliente el interior de la unidad. Consulte la página 22 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES (volumen separado).
  - El nivel de salida de línea de esta unidad permanece alto para que corresponda con los sonidos de alta fidelidad reproducidos por esta unidad.
    Cuando conecte un amplificador externo a esta unidad, disminuya el control de ganancia del amplificador externo para obtener un óptimo rendimiento de esta unidad.

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour améliorer votre système autoradio.
- *Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.*
- **Pour l'amplificateur seulement:**
  - **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**
  - *Vous pouvez désactiver l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement à un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs afin d'obtenir un son clair et pour éviter un échauffement interne de l'appareil (voir page 22 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
  - *Le niveau de sortie de ligne de cet appareil est maintenu à un niveau élevé pour maintenir une qualité Hi-Fi pour les sons reproduits par cet appareil.*
    Lors de la connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur à cet appareil, diminuez le réglage du gain sur l'amplificateur extérieur pour obtenir les meilleures performances de cet appareil.



*1 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*1 Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a la carrocería metálica o al chasis—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura (si está cubierto con pintura, quítela antes de fijar el cable). De lo contrario, se podrían producir daños en la unidad.
*1 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*

*2 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*2 Cable de señal (no suministrado con esta unidad)
*2 *Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet autoradio)*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

LOCALIZACION DE AVERIAS

- **El fusible se quema.**
* ¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?

- **No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
* ¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?

- **No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?

- **El sonido presenta distorsión.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
* ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?

- **Perturbación de ruido.**
* ¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?

- **La unidad se calienta.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
* ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?

- **Este receptor no funciona en absoluto.**
* ¿Reinicializó el receptor?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?*

- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* *Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?*

- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*

- **Le son est déformé.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* *La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*

- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* *Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?*

C Speaker connections for 3-way network speaker system / Conexiones de los altavoces para el sistema de altavoces de 3 vías / Connexion des enceintes pour un système d'enceintes à 3 voies

You can enjoy a world of "pure audio" in your car by connecting 3-way network speaker system (high-range/mid-range/subwoofer).

IMPORTANT:
If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following.
- Connect the speaker system as illustrated below.
- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For details about the setting, see pages 18 and 19 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

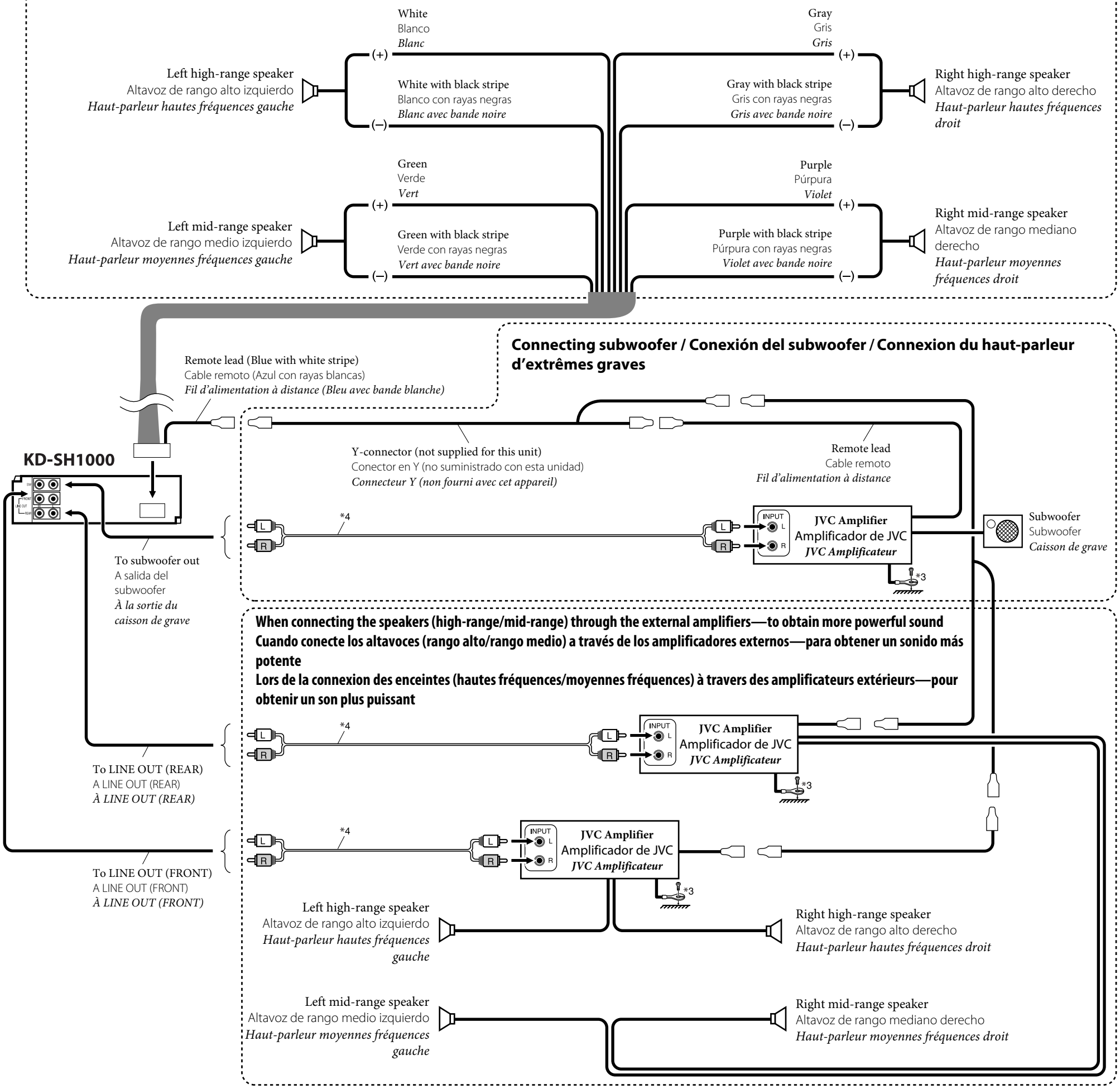
Podrá disfrutar de un "sonido puro" en su automóvil conectando un sistema de altavoces de 3 vías (rango alto/rango medio/subwoofer).

IMPORTANTE:
Si ha instalado el sistema de altavoces de 3 vías en el automóvil, compruebe lo siguiente.
- Conecte el sistema de altavoces de la manera mostrada en la siguiente ilustración.
- Antes de usar el sistema, active la red de cruce y preajuste las frecuencias de corte apropiadas para HPF/LPF (especialmente para HPF); de lo contrario, se podrán dañar los altavoces.
- Para los detalles acerca del ajuste, consulte las páginas 18 y 19 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES.

Vous pouvez recréer un monde de "son pur" dans votre voiture en connectant un système d'enceintes à trois voies (hautes fréquences/moyennes fréquences/extrêmes graves).

IMPORTANT:
Si vous avez installé un système d'enceintes à trois voies dans votre voiture, assurez-vous de ce qui suit.
- *Connectez le système d'enceintes comme montré ci-dessous.*
- *Avant d'utiliser le système, mettez en service le réseau de transition et préréglez les fréquences de coupure appropriées pour HPF/LPF (plus spécialement pour HPF); sinon, les enceintes risqueraient d'être endommagées.*
- *Pour en savoir plus sur les réglages, référez-vous aux pages 18 et 19 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.*

When connecting the speakers (high-range/mid-range) through the speaker output
Cuando conecte los altavoces (rango alto/rango medio) a través de la salida de altavoz
Lors de la connexion des enceintes (hautes fréquences/moyennes fréquences) aux sorties d'enceinte



*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*3 Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a la carrocería metálica o al chasis—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura (si está cubierto con pintura, quítela antes de fijar el cable). De lo contrario, se podrían producir daños en la unidad.
*3 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*

*4 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*4 Cable de señal (no suministrado con esta unidad)
*4 *Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet autoradio)*

D Connecting the external components / Conexión de los componentes externos / Connexion des appareils extérieurs

JVC CD changer, SIRIUS Satellite radio, XM Satellite radio, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / Cambiador de CD de JVC, radio satelital SIRIUS, radio satelital XM, iPod® de Apple o reproductor JVC D. / Changeur de CD JVC, radio satellite SIRIUS, radio satellite XM, iPod® Apple ou lecteur D. JVC

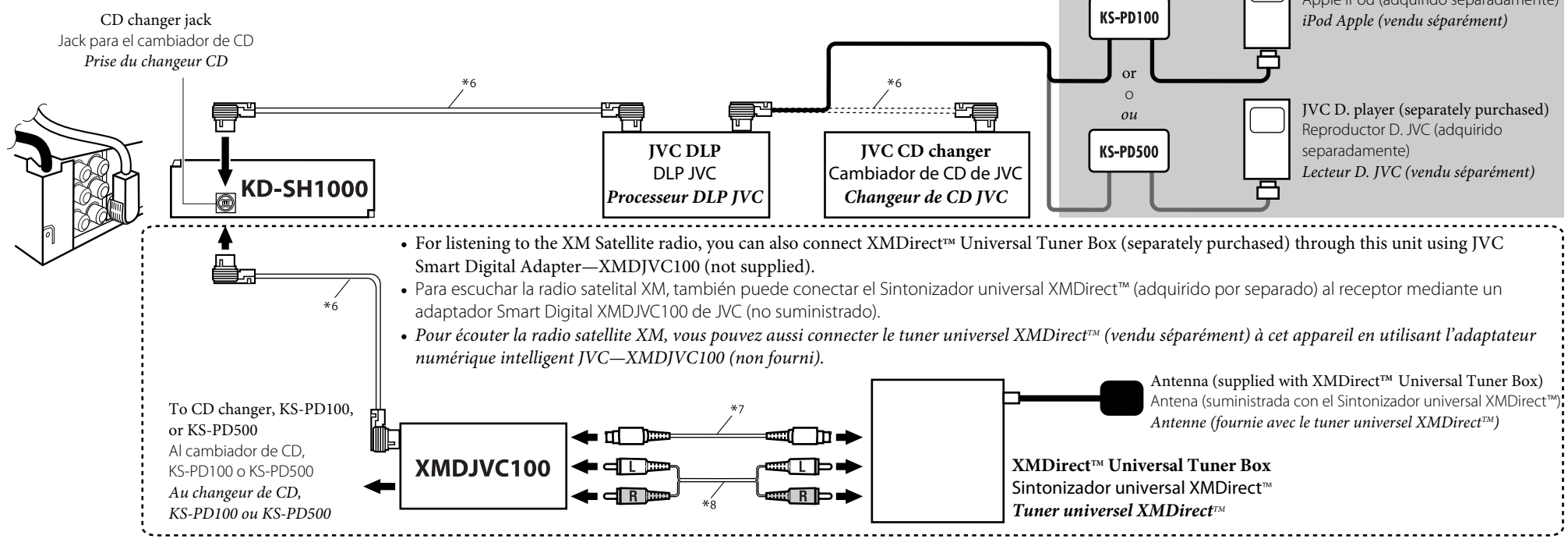
- **Set "Changer" for the external input setting (See page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Seleccione "Changer" para el ajuste de entrada externa (Consulte la página 22 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES.) / Réglez "Changer" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieures (Voir page 22 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)**

You can connect these components in series as illustrated below.
- For listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio, connect a JVC DLP —Down Link Processor (separately purchased) to this unit.
- The iPod*5 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

Estos componentes se pueden conectar en serie, tal como se muestra en la ilustración de abajo.
- Para escuchar la radio satelital SIRIUS, conecte un DLP (Down Link Processor) de JVC (adquirido por separado) al receptor.
- Puede conectar el iPod*5 o el reproductor D. usando un adaptador de interfaz (no suministrado)—KS-PD100 (para iPod) o KS-PD500 (para el reproductor D.).

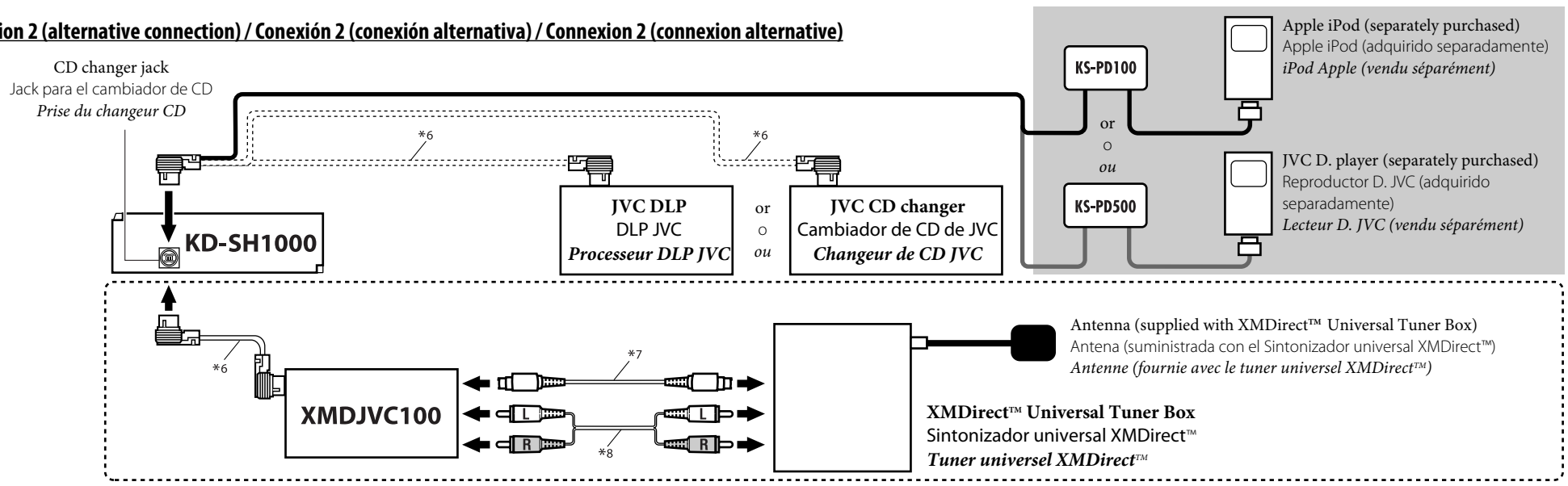
Vous pouvez connecter ces appareils en série comme montrée sur l'illustration.
- *Pour écouter la radio satellite SIRIUS, connectez un processeur DLP JVC —Processeur de signaux satellite-terre (vendu séparément) à cet appareil.*
- *Le iPod*5 ou le lecteur D. peut être connecté en utilisant un adaptateur d'interface (non fourni)—KS-PD100 (pour iPod) ou KS-PD500 (pour le lecteur D.).*

Connection 1 (integrated connection) / Conexión 1 (conexión integrada) / Connexion 1 (connexion intégrée)



- For listening to the XM Satellite radio, you can also connect XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box (separately purchased) through this unit using JVC Smart Digital Adapter—XMDJVC100 (not supplied).
- Para escuchar la radio satelital XM, también puede conectar el Sintonizador universal XMDirect™ (adquirido por separado) al receptor mediante un adaptador Smart Digital XMDJVC100 de JVC (no suministrado).
- *Pour écouter la radio satellite XM, vous pouvez aussi connecter le tuner universel XMDirect™ (vendu séparément) à cet appareil en utilisant l'adaptateur numérique intelligent JVC—XMDJVC100 (non fourni).*

Connection 2 (alternative connection) / Conexión 2 (conexión alternativa) / Connexion 2 (connexion alternative)



CAUTION / PRECAUCION / PRECAUTION:
- Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
- Antes de conectar los componentes externos, asegúrese de que la unidad esté apagada.
- *Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.*

*5 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*5 iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Computer, Inc., registrada en los EE.UU. y otros países.
*5 *iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Computer, Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.*

*6 Connecting cord supplied with your JVC CD changer or DLP
*6 Conexión del cable suministrado para su cambiador de CD o DLP JVC
*6 *Cordon de connexion fourni avec votre changeur CD ou processeur DLP JVC*

*7 Signal cord supplied with your Smart Digital Adapter
*7 Cable de señal suministrado con el adaptador Smart Digital
*7 *Cordon de signal fourni avec votre adaptateur numérique intelligent*

*8 Audio signal cord supplied with your Smart Digital Adapter
*8 Cable de señal de audio suministrado con el adaptador Smart Digital
*8 *Cordon audio fourni avec votre adaptateur numérique intelligent*

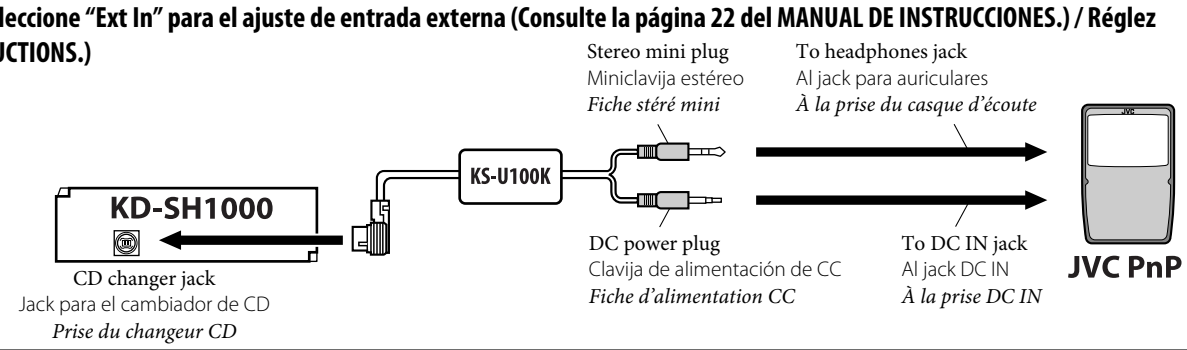
JVC PnP (Plug and Play) / PnP ("Plug and Play") JVC / PnP ("Plug and Play") JVC

- **Set "Ext In" for the external input setting (See page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Seleccione "Ext In" para el ajuste de entrada externa (Consulte la página 22 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES.) / Réglez "Ext In" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieures (Voir page 22 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)**

You can also connect JVC PnP through this unit using JVC SIRIUS radio adapter, KS-U100K (not supplied).
- Turning on/off the unit can also turns on/off the JVC PnP.

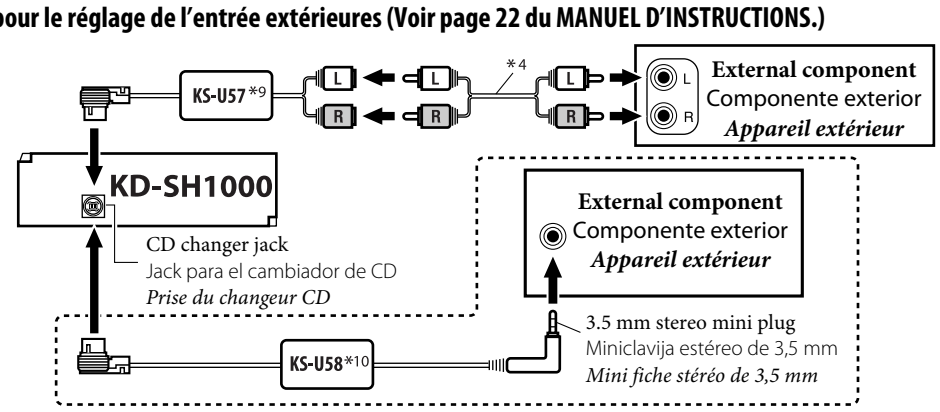
También podrá conectar la PnP JVC a través de este receptor utilizando el adaptador para radio SIRIUS JVC, KS-U100K (no suministrado).
- Al encender/apagar el receptor también se enciende/apaga la PnP JVC.

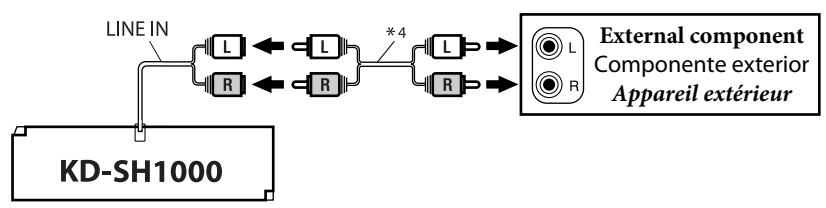
Vous pouvez aussi connecter le PnP JVC à cet autoradio en utilisant l'adaptateur de radio SIRIUS JVC KS-U100K (non fourni).
- *Mettre sous/hors tension l'autoradio peut aussi mettre sous/hors tension le PnP JVC.*



Other external component / Otro componente externo / Autre appareil extérieur

- **Set "Ext In" for the external input setting (See page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Seleccione "Ext In" para el ajuste de entrada externa (Consulte la página 22 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES.) / Réglez "Ext In" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieures (Voir page 22 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)**





*9 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*9 Adaptador de entrada de línea KS-U57 (no suministrado con esta unidad)
*9 *Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne KS-U57 (non fourni avec cet appareil)*

*10 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)
*10 Adaptador de entrada AUX KS-U58 (no suministrado con esta unidad)
*10 *Adaptateur d'entrée AUX KS-U58 (non fourni avec cet autoradio)*

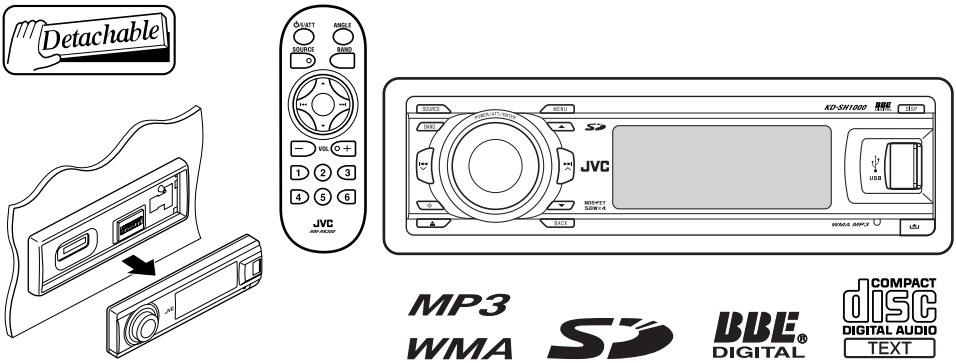
JVC

ENGLISH

ไทย

CD RECEIVER KD-SH1000

เครื่องเล่น CD KD-SH1000



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
ดูที่หน้า 8 เพื่อยกเลิกการสาธิตภาพประกอบ

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
กรุณาดูคู่มือที่แยกต่างหาก ในการติดตั้งและการเชื่อมต่อ

INSTRUCTIONS
คำแนะนำ

GET0365-001A
[U/UH]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	**ADVARSEL :** Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	**VARNING :** Synlig och osynlig laserstrålning när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	**VARO :** Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

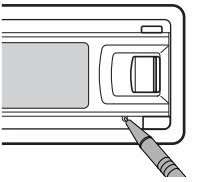
Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Notice:

The display window built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.

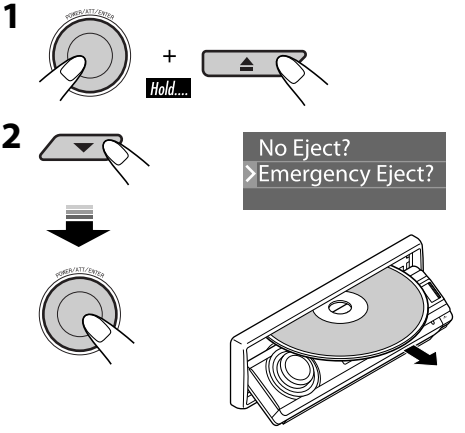
How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc

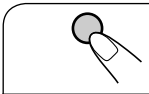
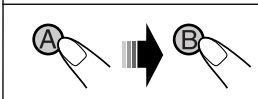
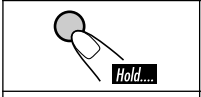
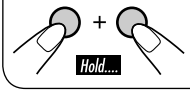
- If an SD card is inserted, eject the SD card first (see page 11).



- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*

How to read this manual

- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations in the table below.
- Some related tips and notes are explained in "More about this unit" (see pages 27 – 31).

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press Ⓐ, then Ⓑ.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.
	Press and hold both buttons at the same time.

The following marks are used to indicate...

: Built-in CD player operations.

: External CD changer operations.

: SD player operations.

: External USB memory operations.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

Control panel 5

Remote controller — RM-RK300 6

Getting started..... 7
- Basic operations 7

Radio operations 8

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations 11
- Playing a disc in the unit 11
- Playing discs in the CD changer 11
- Playing from an SD card..... 11
- Playing from a USB memory..... 12

Sound adjustments..... 15
- Selecting the DSP modes (DSP) 15
- Using the equalizer—EQ 16
- Activating crossover network 18
- Setting the sound modes—SEL 18

General settings — PSM 20

Title assignment 23

iPod®/D. player operations 24

Other external component operations... 26

Maintenance 26

More about this unit 27

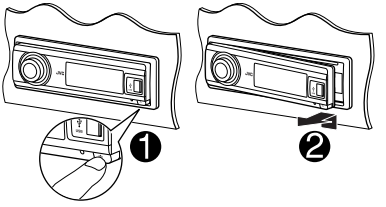
Troubleshooting..... 32

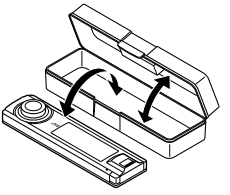
Specifications..... 36

ENGLISH

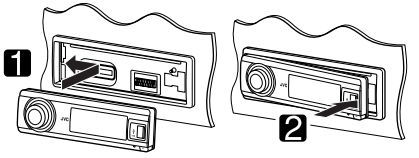
How to detach/attach the control panel

Detaching...



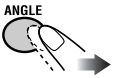


Attaching...

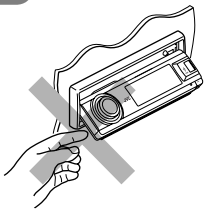


How to change the control panel angle

When using the remote controller



Caution:



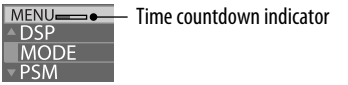
How to enter the various menus

The main menu contains seven menus (MODE, PSM, SEL, TITLE, BBE, EQ, DSP).

- If no operation is done for about 5 seconds, menu screen is canceled.

1

2 Select a menu you want.



3 Enter the selected menu.

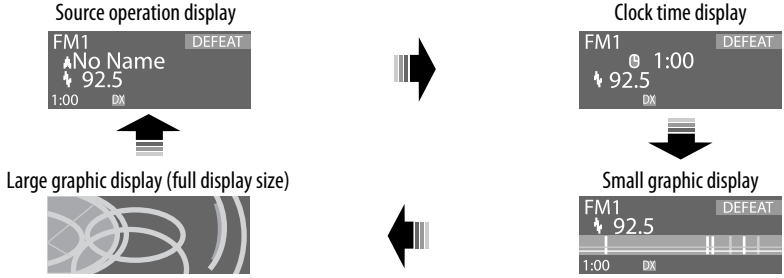
- To go back to the previous screen or exit the MENU screen, press BACK repeatedly.

4 Operate as instructed on the screen.

- To go back to the MENU screen, press MENU.

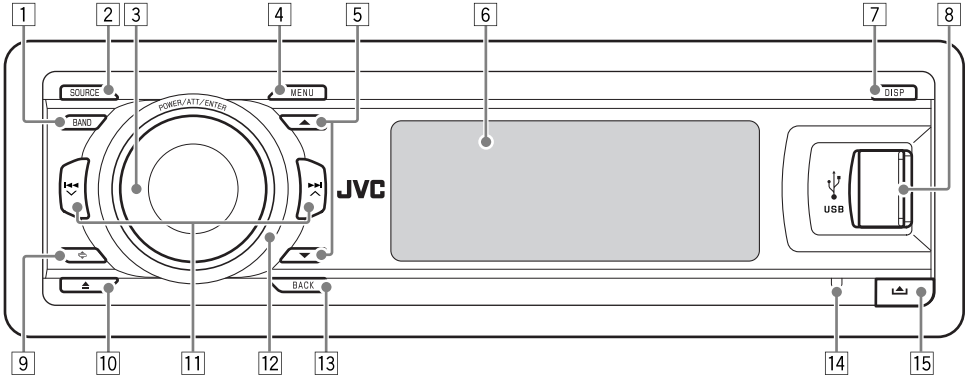
How to change the display information and patterns

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Control panel

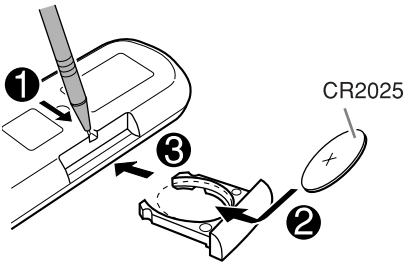
Parts identification



1 BAND button
2 SOURCE button
3 • Control dial
• POWER/ATT (attenuator)/ENTER button
4 MENU button
5 ▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons
6 Display window
7 DISP (display) button
8 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input terminal
9 (angle) button
10 ⏏ (eject) button
11 ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧ buttons
12 Remote sensor
DO NOT expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).
13 BACK button
14 Reset button
15 (control panel release) button

Remote controller — RM-RK300

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)

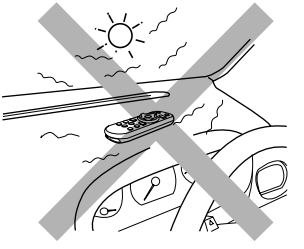


Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.

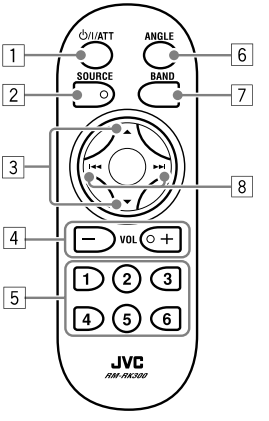
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accident.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
  - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
  - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
  - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
  - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Caution:



Main elements and features



1 **⏻/I/ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button**
- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 **SOURCE button**
Selects the source.

3 **▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Changes the preset stations.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the folders.
- **While listening to an Apple iPod® or a JVC D. player:**
  – Pauses/stops or resumes playback with ▼.
  – Enters the main menu with ▲. (Now ▲/▼/|◄◄/►►| work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

4 **VOL (volume) + / – buttons**
Adjusts the volume level.

5 **Number buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Selects the preset station if pressed, or store a station if pressed and held.
- F**or CD/CD Text:** Selects the tracks.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Selects the folders.
- **For CD changer:** Selects the discs.

6 **ANGLE button**
Adjusts the control panel angle.

7 **BAND button**
Selects the band.

8 **|◄◄ / ►►| buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Searches for stations if pressed, or skips frequencies after pressed and held.
- **For CD/CD Text/MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the tracks if pressed, or fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
- **While listening to an iPod or a D. player (in menu selecting mode):**
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

* ▲ : *Returns to the previous menu.*
▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

Getting started

Activates or deactivates crossover network (see page 18) before turning on the power.

Basic operations

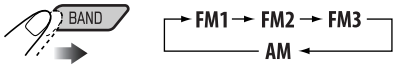
1 Turn on the power.

2

FM/AM → CD* → SD* → USB* → CD-CH*/iPod*/D. player* (or **EXT-IN**) **→ LINE-IN →** (back to the beginning)

* *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

3 For FM/AM tuner



4 Adjust the volume.

5 Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

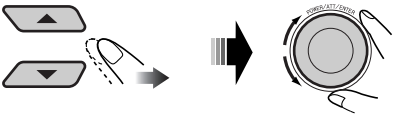
To drop the volume in a moment (ATT) To restore the sound, press it again.	
To turn off the power	

Basic settings

- See also "General settings — PSM" on pages 20 – 22.

1 Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).

2



1 **Canceling the display demonstrations**
Select "Demo," then "Off."

2 **Setting the clock**
Select "Clock H" (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select "Clock M" (minute), then adjust the minute.
Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."

3 Finish the procedure.

To check the current clock time while the power is turned off

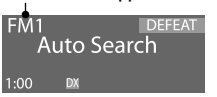
Radio operations

❶

❷

❸ **Start searching for a station.**

Selected band appears.

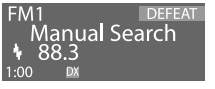


When a station is received, searching stops.
To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

In step ❸ above...

1



2 **Select a desired station frequency.**

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2

3

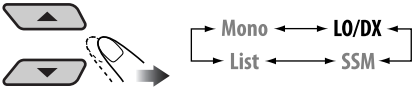
4

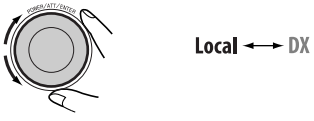
MO indicator lights up.
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure and select "Off" in step **3**. The MO indicator goes off.

Tuning in to FM stations with strong signals only—LO (local)/DX (Distance-Extreme)

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2 

3 

4

DX indicator goes off and LO indicator lights up.
Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure and select "DX" in step **3**. The LO indicator goes off and DX indicator lights up.

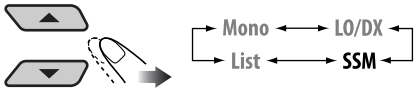
Storing stations in memory

You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

1 **Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store into.**

2 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

3 

4

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1

2

3 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**
- If you hold down ▲/▼, the Preset Station List appears (go to step **6**).

Continued on the next page

4

5

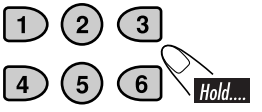
6 Select a preset number.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by turning the control dial.

7 Store the station.

When using the remote controller

After tuning in to a station you want to preset...



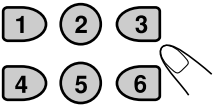
Listening to a preset station

1

2

When using the remote controller

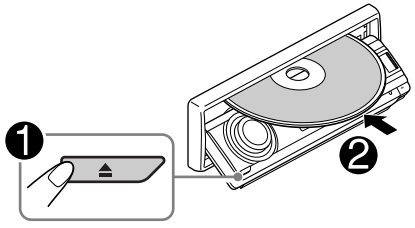
Directly select the preset number.



Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Playing a disc in the unit

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

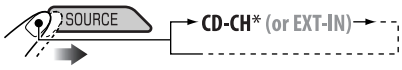


To stop play and eject the disc

Note:
If a USB memory is attached to the unit, you cannot eject the disc. "Please Eject USB" flashes on the display. If this happens, detach the USB memory, then, press ⏏ button again.

Playing discs in the CD changer

All discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source.
- Ejecting the magazine will also stop playback.

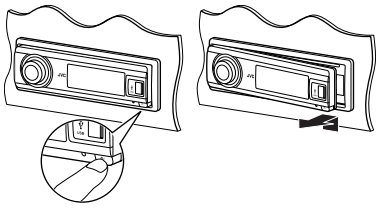


* *If you have changed the external input setting to "Ext In" (see page 21), you cannot select the CD changer.*

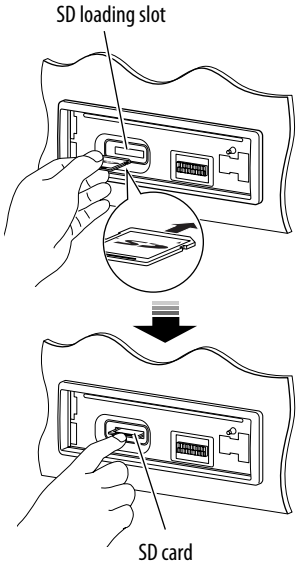
Playing from an SD card

Before detaching the control panel, turn off the power.

1



2

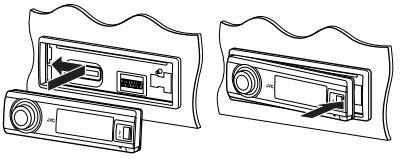


Press in the SD card until you hear a clicking sound.

To eject the SD card, press the SD card again.
- Press the SD card softly (do not release your finger quickly); otherwise, the SD card may pop out from the unit.

Continued on the next page

3 **Attach the control panel.**



4

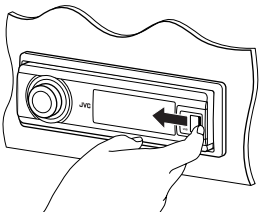
- The control panel goes back to the previous position.

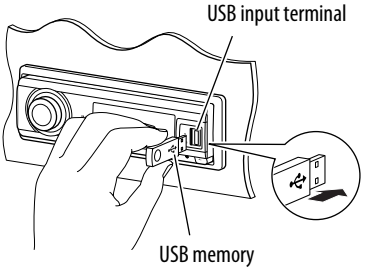
Playback starts automatically if tracks are recorded.

Playing from a USB memory

This unit can play MP3/WMA tracks stored in a USB memory.
All tracks in the USB memory will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

- Removing the USB memory will also stop playback.

1 

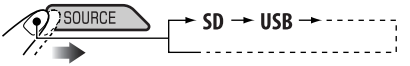
2 

To detach the USB memory, straightly pull it out from the unit.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the SD card/USB memory when it might hinder your safety driving.
- Make sure all important data have been backed up to avoid losing the data.

If an SD card or USB memory has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different SD card or USB memory is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

About MP3 and WMA tracks

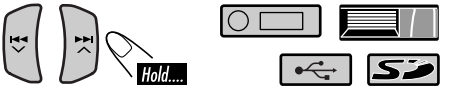
MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."

About the CD changer

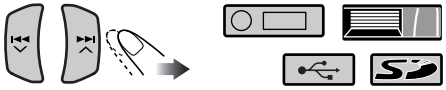
It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can also connect MP3-incompatible CD changers. However, these units are not compatible with MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the CH-X99, CH-X100, and KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.
- You cannot play any WMA disc in the CD changer.
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

To fast-forward or reverse the track



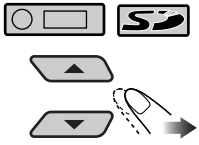
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB)

For MP3 tracks:

For WMA tracks:



- Holding the buttons can display the Disc List ( ) and Folder List (/ /), see the following.

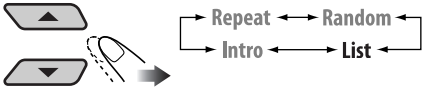
Other main functions

Selecting a disc/folder/track on the list

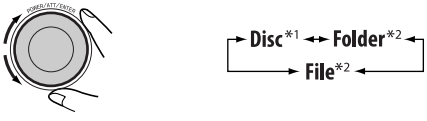
- This function is not available for an audio CD or a CD Text when the source is "CD."

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2



3 **Select a list type.**



*1 *Selectable only when the source is "CD-CH."*

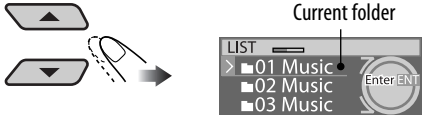
*2 *Appears only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB.*

4 **Confirm the selection.**

The selected list appears on the display.

- You can move to the other list by turning the control dial.

5 **Select a disc/folder/file from the list.**



Ex.: When "Folder" is selected on step **3**

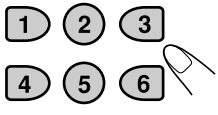
Only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB:
If you select the current disc/folder (highlighted on the screen), its Folder/File List appears.

6 **Starts playback.**

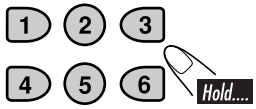
When using the remote controller

- To directly select a disc ( )
- To directly select a track of an audio CD or a CD Text ( )
- To directly select an MP3/WMA folder (/ /)

To select a number from 1 – 6:



To select a number from 7 (1) – 12 (6):

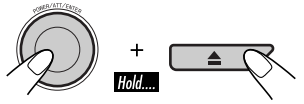


For MP3/WMA folders:
It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

1



2 After making sure "No Eject?" is selected...

- "No Eject" flashes, and the disc cannot be ejected.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure after making sure "Eject OK?" is selected.

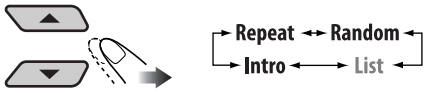
- "Eject OK" flashes on the display.

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



3 Select one of the items (see the following table).

4 Finish the procedure.

Intro	Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...
Track	: All tracks of the current playback media. [▶ INT]
Folder*1	: First track of all folders of the current playback media. [▶ INT]
Disc*2	: First track of all the inserted discs. [▶ INT]
Off	: Cancels.

Repeat	Plays repeatedly
Track	: The current track. [▶ RPT]
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder. [▶ RPT]
Disc*2	: All tracks of the inserted discs. [▶ RPT]
Off	: Cancels.

Random	Plays at random
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. [▶ RND]
Disc	: All tracks of the current disc. [▶ RND]
All*3	: All tracks of the inserted discs/ media. [ALL RND]
Off	: Cancels.

*1 *Only while playing a media (MP3/WMA/SD/USB).*

*2 *Only when the source is CD-CH.*

*3 *Only when the source is CD-CH, SD, or USB.*

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes (DSP)

You can create a more acoustic sound field such as in a theater, hall, etc.

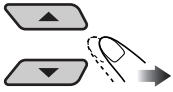
- When crossover network (see page 18) is activated, the DSP mode is fixed to "Defeat."

DSP modes

Defeat (No acoustic effect is applied), Theater, Hall, Club, Dome, Studio, V.Cancel (Voice Cancel: Reduces the vocal sounds. Good for mastering your favorite songs—Karaoke.)

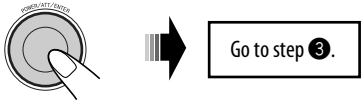
❶ **Enter the DSP menu (see page 4).**

❷ **Select one of the DSP modes.**



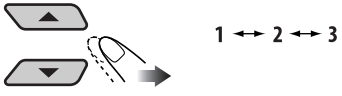
- **To finish the procedure**

- **To adjust the effect level**



For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the effect level is not adjustable.

❸ **Adjust the effect level.**



- **To finish the procedure**

To make more precise settings, see the following.

To cancel the acoustic effect, select "Defeat" in step ❷.

Precise settings for the DSP modes

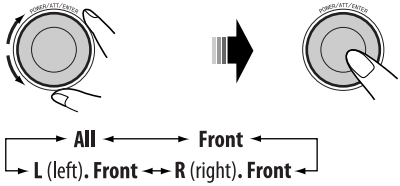
1 Select a DSP mode.

2 Select the number of the built-in speakers.

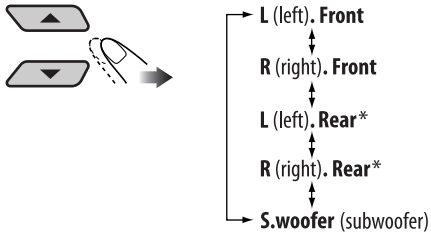
- For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the speaker number is fixed to "4ch."

2ch (channel) ↔ **4ch** (channel)

3 Select your listening seat position.



4 Select the speaker to be adjusted.



* *Appears only when "4ch" is selected in step* **2**.

Continued on the next page

5 Select the distance between the selected speaker and the seat.

0cm (0inch) ↔ 400cm (160inch)

Once you have set the distance, it is memorized for each seat position selected in step **3**. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select the seat position.

To change the measuring unit

6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to adjust the distance for the other speakers.

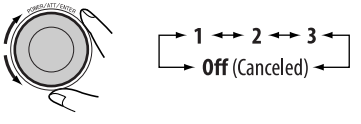
7 Finish the procedure.

Activating BBE Digital

BBE Digital is a digital processing method to restore the brilliance and clarity of the original live sound in recording, broadcasts, etc. When a speaker reproduces sound, it introduces frequency-dependent phase shifting, causing high-frequency sounds to take longer to reach the ear than low frequency sounds.
BBE Digital adjusts the phase relationship between the low, mid, and high frequencies by adding a progressively longer delay time to the low and mid frequencies, so that all frequencies reach the listener's ears at the proper time. A more brilliance and clearer sound is heard.

1 Enter the BBE menu (see page 4).

2 Select the effect level.



3 Finish the procedure.

Using the equalizer—EQ

You can adjust the sound equalization patterns to your preference by using either Graphic EQ or Parametric EQ.

- Adjust the equalizer to match the reproducible frequency range of the connected speakers; otherwise, the adjustments may not be effective.

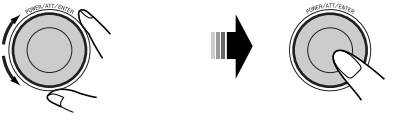
Selecting preset sound modes—Graphic EQ

Sound modes

Flat (No sound mode is applied), HardRock, R&B (Rhythm&Blues), Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User 1, User 2, User 3

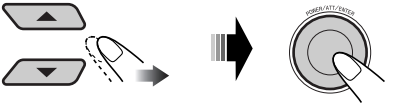
1 Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).

2



Graphic ↔ P.metric

3 Select a sound mode.

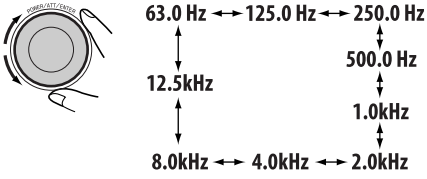


4 Finish the procedure.

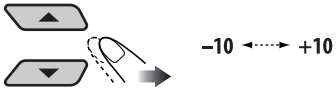
Storing your own sound modes

1 **Select a sound mode.**

2 **Select a frequency band.**



3 **Adjust the enhanced level for the selected frequency band.**



4 **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other frequency bands.**

5

6 **Select one of the user modes.**

7 **Store the adjustments.**

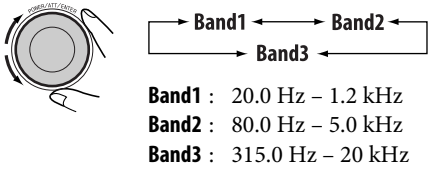
Adjusting Parametric EQ

1 **Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).**

2

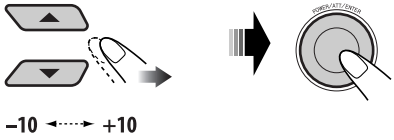
Graphic ⟷ P.metric

3 **Select a band.**



Band1 : 20.0 Hz – 1.2 kHz
Band2 : 80.0 Hz – 5.0 kHz
Band3 : 315.0 Hz – 20 kHz

4 **Adjust the enhanced level for the selected band.**



–10 ⟷ +10

5 **Select the frequency.**

- Band 1/2/3 are required to be preset at least 5 steps (frequencies) away from each other. (Only selectable frequencies are shown on the display.)

6 **Select the band width (Q).**

- To adjust the other bands, press BACK. Then repeat steps **3** to **6**.

7 **Finish the procedure.**

Once you have made adjustments, it is memorized. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select Parametric EQ.

ENGLISH

ENGLISH

Activating crossover network

By activating crossover network, you can allocate different frequency range of sound signals to different speakers to match their characteristic.

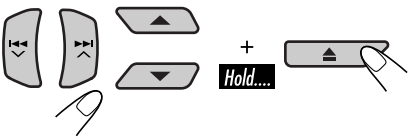
If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following:

- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For 3-way network speaker system, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

You cannot perform other operations until you finish the following procedure.

While the power is turned off...

❶



❷

❸

- **To cancel the procedure,** press and hold POWER/ATT/ENTER. The power turns off.

❹ **Finish the procedure.**

- X-OVER indicator lights up (in sequence with other indicators).

To cancel Crossover, repeat the same procedure. Make sure that "X-Over Off OK?" appears on the display.

- X-OVER indicator goes off.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

❶ **Enter the SEL menu (see page 4).**

❷ **Select a setting item.**

* *Appears only when crossover network is activated (see left column).*

When selecting "Fad/Bal," "X-Over," or "S.woofer," press POWER/ATT/ENTER to enter its submenu.

❸ **Adjust the selected setting item. (See the following for details.)**

- To adjust other SEL settings, press BACK. Then repeat steps ❷ and ❸.

❹ **Finish the procedure.**

To adjust fader and balance—Fad/Bal

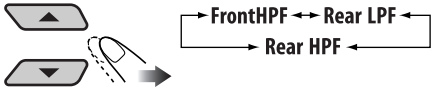
- **Fad (fader)**
  Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.

- **Bal (balance)**
  Adjust the left and right speaker balance.

To adjust reproduced frequency level—X-Over

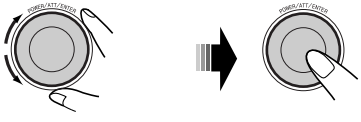
This setting is available only when crossover network (see page 18) is activated.

1 Select a filter.



HPF (Front/Rear)	: Frequencies lower than the selected level are cut-off.
LPF (Rear)	: Frequencies higher than the selected level are cut-off.

2 Select "On" to activate the selected filter.
- If you connect high-range speakers to Front or Rear output, select "On" for the corresponding HPF to prevent the speakers from being damaged.

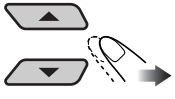


Off ↔ On

3 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected speakers.

1.6kHz – 16.0kHz : Front HPF and Rear LPF
31.5 Hz – 200.0Hz : Rear HPF

4 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).



–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

To adjust subwoofer output—S.woofer

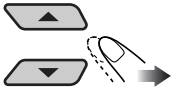
1 Adjust the output level.

00 ↔ 12

2 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected subwoofer.

31.5 Hz ↔ 200.0 Hz

3 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).



–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

To adjust the input level of each source—Vol Adj

This setting is required for each source except for FM.
Once an adjustment is made, it will be memorized. When you change the source the volume level will automatically increase or decrease according to the adjusted level.

1 Select a source before entering the SEL menu.

2 Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.

–5 ↔ +5

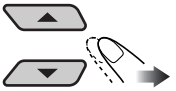
ENGLISH

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).

2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other PSM items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Demo Display demonstration	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [8]. : Cancels.
Anime Animation	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: An animation screen appears when you turn on or off the power, change the source, and when you select an EQ, MENU, or DSP. : Cancels.
Clock H Hour adjustment	**1** – **12** (**0** – **23**) [Initial: 1 (1:00AM)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
Clock M Minute adjustment	**00** – **59** [Initial: 00 (1:00AM)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** [Initial] • **24Hours**	: See also page 8 for setting.
Scroll*1	• **Once** [Initial] • **Auto** • **Off**	: Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (in 5-second intervals in between). : Cancels. • Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
Dimmer	• **Auto** [Initial] • **Time Set** • **Off** • **On**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Sets the timer for dimmer, see page 22 for setting. From: Any hour; To: Any hour : Cancels. : Activates dimmer. (Does not work if "Bright" is set to "1.")

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Bright Display brightness	**1** – **10** [Initial: 8]	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible. (If "Dimmer" is set to "On," selecting "1" to "4" takes no effect.)
ID3 Tag Tag display	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
Theme Display theme	• **Large** (**1** [Initial] or **2**) • **Small** (**1** [Initial] or **2**)	: Select the display theme for large graphic display, [5]. See page 22 for setting. : Select the display theme for small graphic display, [5]. See page 22 for setting.
IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** [Initial] • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between close stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Beep Key-touch tone	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Activates the key-touch tone. : Deactivates the key-touch tone.
Ext In*2 External input	• **Changer** [Initial] • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [14] or an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player, [24]. : To use any other external component, [26].
Tel Telephone muting	• **Muting 1/ Muting 2** • **Off** [Initial]	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone. • If CD/CD-CH/SD/USB/iPod/D. player has been selected as the source, playback pauses during telephone muting. : Cancels.
Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR** • **Off**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to avoid damaging the speakers.) : Deactivates the built-in amplifier.

*1 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

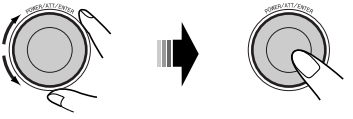
*2 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, SD, USB, or LINE-IN.*

Selecting timer for the dimmer

You can dim the display at night or as you set the timer.

1 Select "Dimmer" from the PSM menu.

2 Select "Time Set."

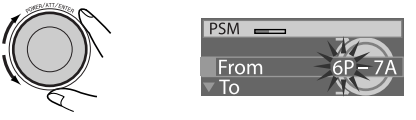


3 Adjust the dimmer time.

1 Set the dimmer start time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

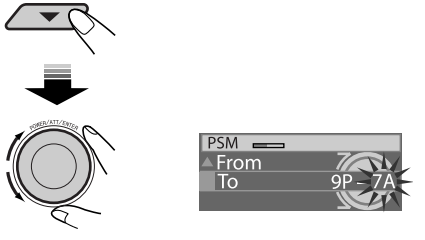
12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]



2 Set the dimmer end time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]



4 Finish the procedure.

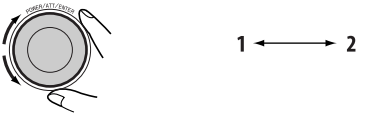
Selecting the graphic theme

You can select the graphic theme for large and small display sizes (see also page 5).

1 Select "Theme" from the PSM menu.

2 Select the size of the display.

3 Select the theme.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select the other display size and theme.

5 Finish the procedure.

To show the selected display theme, press DISP repeatedly while playing a source.

Title assignment

You can assign titles to station frequencies, CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer) and the external components (LINE-IN and EXT-IN).

Sources	Maximum number of characters
Station frequencies	Up to 16 characters (up to 30 station frequencies including bothe FM and AM)
CDs/CD-CH*	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)
External component	Up to 16 characters

* *You cannot assign names to any discs other than conventional CDs.*

1 Select the sources.

- For FM/AM tuner: Select a station.
- For CDs in this unit: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select "CD-CH," then select a disc number.
- For external component: Select "LINE-IN" or "EXT-IN."

2 Enter the TITLE menu (see page 4).

3 Assign a title.

1 **Select a character set.**

A (A – Z: upper case) → **a** (a – z: lower case) → **0** (numbers and symbols) → **Á** (Accented letters: upper case) → **á** (Accented letters: lower case) → (back to the beginning)

- For available characters, see page 31.

2 **Select a character.**

3 **Move to the next (or previous) character position.**

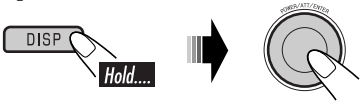
4 **Repeat steps 1 and 3 until you finish entering the title.**

4 Finish the procedure.

- To cancel the title entry without registration, press MENU.

To erase the entire title

In step **3**...



ENGLISH

ENGLISH

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:
Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **Interface adapter for iPod®**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- **D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Caution:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

Preparations:

Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 21.

1

2

Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused*1 or stopped*2 previously.

3 **Adjust the volume.**

4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)**

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause*1 or stop*2 playback To resume playback, press it again.	
To fast-forward or reverse the track	
To go to the next or previous tracks	

*1 *For iPod*
*2 *For D. player*

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.

Now the ▲/▼/|◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*.

* *The menu selecting mode will be canceled:*
- *If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.*
- *When you confirm the selection of a track.*

2 Select the desired menu.

For iPod:
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:
Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔ Genre ↔ Track ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Confirm the selection.

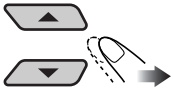
To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.
- Holding |◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ can skip 10 items at a time.

Selecting the playback modes

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



Repeat ↔ Random

3 Select an item (see table below).

4 Finish the procedure.

Repeat play	
One	: Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → One" for the D. player.
All	: Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → All" for the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.
Random play	
Album*	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
Song/On	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod or "Random Play → On" of the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.

* *For iPod: Only if you select "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

Other external component operations

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN plugs on the rear or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

For listening to the SD card/USB memory, see pages 11 – 14; For iPod, or D.player, see pages 24 and 25.

1

LINE-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN plugs.

EXT-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack.

If "EXT-IN" does not appear, see page 21 and select the external input ("Ext In").

2 **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

3 **Adjust the volume.**

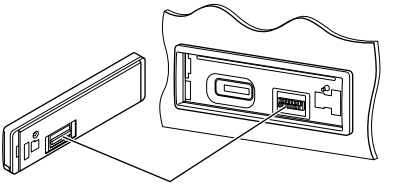
4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)**

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

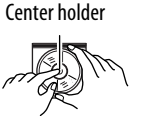
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

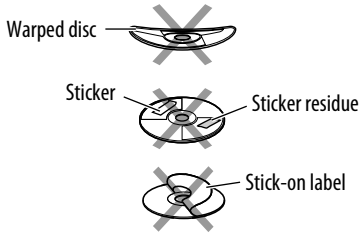
To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

How to handle SD card

SD cards are precision products. DO NOT impact, bend, drop, or wet them.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start from where playback has been stopped previously, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
  - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Continued on the next page

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/ CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA) and MP3/WMA format; MP3/WMA files recorded in an SD card or a USB memory.
- While playing an audio CD: If a title has been assigned to the audio CD (see page 23), it will be shown on the display.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing an MP3/ WMA track, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the control panel moves down, and the disc automatically ejects from the loading slot.
- If you keep the control panel open for about 1 minute, (beeps sound when the "Beep" setting is turned "On"—see page 21) the control panel returns to its previous position.
- Do not insert 8 cm discs (single CD) and unusual shape discs (heart, flower, etc.) into the loading slot.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can play back only files of the same type which are first detected if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/ WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – CD-R/CD-RW on which the files are written with "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA discs

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files compliant to ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name.
- The maximum number of characters for file/ folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 (72) characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 (36) characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 (72) characters

  * *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 313 or more.*
- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, of 200 folders, and of 8 hierarchies.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriated format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA tracks from an SD card or a USB memory

- While playing from an SD card or a USB memory, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some SD cards or USB memories due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB memories and connection ports, some USB memories may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- It is not recommended to use a USB memory wider than 20 mm as it will block you from pressing some buttons on the control panel.
- If the connected USB memory does not have the correct files, "No Files" appears and the unit returns to the previous source.
- This unit can show Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- For SD card: The maximum number of characters for folder name is 8 characters; file names is 12 characters. This unit cannot recognize folder with period (.) on the folder name.
  For USB memory: The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- For SD card: This unit can recognize a total of 255 files and 63 folders.
  For USB memory: This unit can recognize a total of 2 500 files and 250 folders (999 files per folder).
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops. Next time you select the same source again, playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Continued on the next page

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes—DSP

- Effectiveness of "V.Cancel" depends on the recording condition of the sources:
  - Monaural sources such as AM and monaural FM broadcasting programs.
  - Multiplex sound sources.
  - Sources recorded with duets, strong echo, a chorus, or only a few instruments.
- When "4ch" is selected, rear speakers are used only to reproduce reflections and reverberations in order to creates a being-there feeling in your car compartment.
- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate effect may not be obtained.
- You cannot adjust the effect level and speaker number when "Defeat" is selected with crossover network activated.

Storing your own sound modes

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press MENU to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to the center.
- Subwoofer out setting takes effect only when a subwoofer is connected.
- You cannot change the input level—"VolAdjust" of the FM stations. If the source is FM, "Fix" will appear when you try to adjust it.

General settings — PSM

- "Auto Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming. In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any one other than "Auto."
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies or 30 discs, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc in the unit and vise versa.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
  - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 20). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

For D. player users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>

Available characters

In addition to the Roman alphabets (A – Z, a – z), the following characters will be used.

Accented letters: upper case

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ	İ	Ŋ	ð	space							

Accented letters: lower case

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ŀ	ı	ij	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

Preset frequency level settings for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset equalizing value								
	63 Hz	125 Hz	250 Hz	500 Hz	1 kHz	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12.5 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+06	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+02
R&B	+06	+04	+04	+04	00	+02	+02	+02	+06
Pop	00	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+02	+02	+04
Jazz	+06	+04	+02	+02	+02	+02	+02	+06	+04
Dance	+08	+04	+02	00	–04	–02	00	+02	+02
Country	+04	+02	00	00	00	00	00	+02	+04
Reggae	+06	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+04	+04	+06
Classic	+04	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	00
User 1	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 2	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see pages 4 and 26).
	• "Push Reset" appears on the display and the control panel movement is freezed.	Reset the unit (see page 2). If this does not work, check the installation.
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 14). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "Loading Error," or "Eject Error" appears).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("File Check" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs while playing. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• "No Music" appears on the display.	Change the disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 31).
SD card/USB memory playback	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not an MP3/WMA track. Skip to another file. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• "File Check" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Play a device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	• The device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the device are corrupted. • Do not pull out or attach the USB memory repeatedly while "File Check" appears on the display.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
SD card/USB memory playback	• "SD Loading Error" appears on the display while playing tracks from an SD card.	Detach the control panel and reinsert the SD card. The control panel goes back to initial position (Angle 1).
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	MP3/WMA tracks have not been properly copied into the device. Copy MP3/WMA tracks again into the device, and try again.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 31).
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
Sounds	• DSP mode cannot be selected other modes than "Defeat." • Only high range sound or low range sound is reproduced though full range speakers are connected.	Deactivate crossover network (see page 18).
iPod/D. player playback	• The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press POWER/ATT/ENTER before performing the operation.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation using the control panel (see page 24).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. player playback	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	• No sound can be heard. • "ERROR 01" appears on the display when connecting a D. player.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "No Files" or "No Track" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/ D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's or D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- *Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.*
- *SD logo is a trademark.*
- *Manufactured under license from BBE Sound, Inc.*
  Licensed by BBE Sound, Inc. under USP5510752 and 5736897. BBE and BBE symbol are registered trademarks of BBE Sound, Inc.
- *iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.*

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies: Graphic EQ: 63 Hz, 125 Hz, 250 Hz, 500 Hz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, 4 kHz, 8 kHz, 12.5 kHz (9 bands) Parametric EQ: 3 bands (Band 1/2/3): 20 Hz, 25 Hz, 31.5 Hz, 40 Hz, 50 Hz, 63 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 125 Hz, 160 Hz, 200 Hz, 250 Hz, 315 Hz, 400 Hz, 500 Hz, 630 Hz, 800 Hz, 1 kHz, 1.2 kHz, 1.6 kHz, 2 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 3.2 kHz, 4 kHz, 5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 8 kHz, 10 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 16 kHz, 20 kHz (31 frequencies)	
		Level:	±10 dB
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Level/Impedance:	Line-In:	1.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Line-Out:	5.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
	Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:		LINE IN, CD changer

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/65 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:	Compact disc player	
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		98 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		102 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

CD PLAYER SECTION	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

SD CARD	Format:		FAT 12/16
	Storage:		8 MB – 512 MB
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 192 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

USB MEMORY	Format:		FAT 12/16/32
	Storage:		Less than 4 GB (1 partition type)
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	Max. Current:		Less than 500 mA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
			MPEG-2.5: 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	5 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	8 kHz – 48 kHz

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 162 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.7 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

หากมีปัญหาในการใช้งาน

กรุณากดปุ่มตั้งค่าเริ่มต้นใหม่

กรุณาดูหน้าวิธีตั้งค่าเครื่องใหม่

JVC

EN, TH

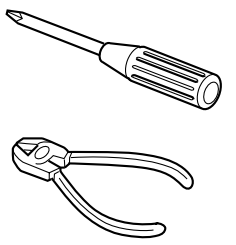
© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0206DTSMDTJEIN

KD-SH1000

Installation/Connection Manual

การติดตั้ง/คู่มือการติดตั้ง



GET0365-006A
[U/UH]

0206DTSMDTJEIN
EN, TH

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.

ไทย

ชุดประกอบนี้ได้รับการออกแบบมาเพื่อใช้งานกับระบบ กระแสไฟฟ้าสายดินขั้วลบกระแสตรง **12 โวลท์ หากรถยนต์ของคุณไม่ได้ใช้ระบบนี้ ต้องใช้เครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟช่วย** ซึ่งสามารถหาซื้อได้จากร้านขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC

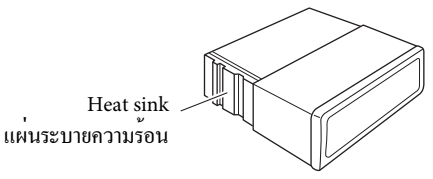
คำเตือน

เพื่อป้องกันการเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรขอแนะนำให้ปลดขั้วแบตเตอรี่ลบออกแล้วจึงต่อสายไฟก่อนติดตั้งเครื่อง

- **ตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าได้เดินสายดินต่อระหว่างเครื่องกับตัวถัง รถยนต์ใหม่แล้วหลังจากติดตั้ง**

หมายเหตุ:

- ใช้พิกัดจำเพาะแทนฟิวส์ หากฟิวส์ขาดบ่อย ให้ปรึกษาร้า นขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC
- ขอแนะนำให้ต่อลำโพง ที่มีกำลังขับสงสุดเกินกว่า 50 W (ทั้งด้านหน้าและด้านหลัง มีค่าความต้านทาน **4 Ω ถึง 8 Ω**) ถ้ากำลังขับต่ำกว่า 50 W ให้เปลี่ยนค่า "Amp Gain" เพื่อป้องกันไม่ให้ลำโพงชำรุด (ดูหน้า 21 คำแนะนำ)
- การป้องกันการลัดวงจร จะต้องพันขั้วสายตะกั่ว **ที่ไม่ใช้แล้วด้วยเท** ปพันสายไฟ
- แผ่นระบายความร้อนจะร้อนมากหลังจากใช้ ระมัดระวังอย่าไป สัมผัสเมื่อถอดชุดประกอบนี้

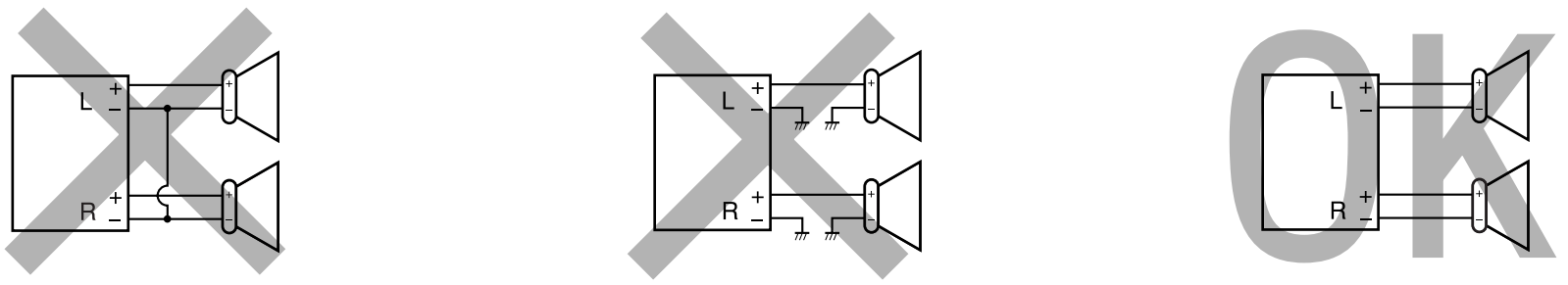


PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

ข้อควรระวังสำหรับการต่อแหล่งจ่ายกำลังและลำโพง:

- **อย่าต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ มิฉะนั้น ชุดประกอบจะได้รับความเสียหายมาก**
- ก่อนที่จะต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับลำโพง ให้ตรวจสอบการเดินสายไฟลำโพงในรถของคุณให้เรียบร้อยเสียก่อน



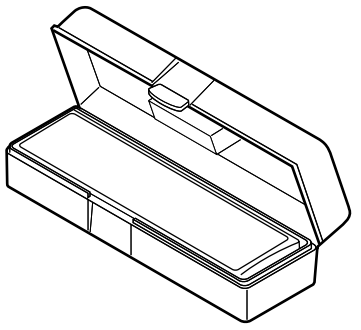
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

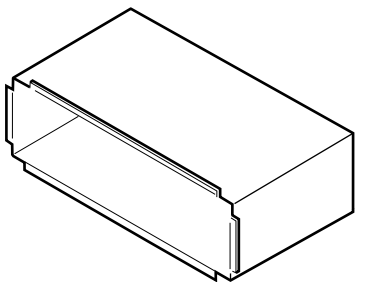
รายการส่วนประกอบสำหรับติดตั้งและเชื่อมต่อกัน

ส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้ หากมีสิ่งใดไม่ครบ กรุณาปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายเครื่องเสียงติดรถยนต์ JVC โดยทันที

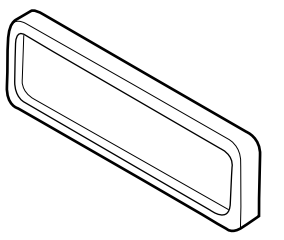
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
ลังบรรจุ/หน้าปัด



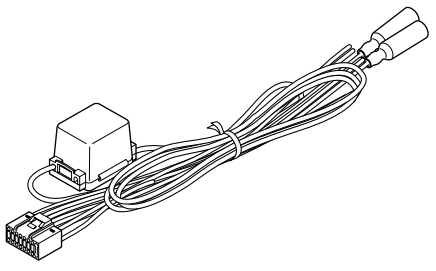
Ⓒ
Sleeve
ปลอกหุ้ม



Ⓓ
Trim plate
แผ่นโลหะขอบแต่ง



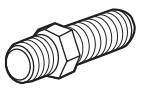
Ⓔ
Power cord
ายเคเบิลกำลัง



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
ประเก็นวงแหวน (ø5)

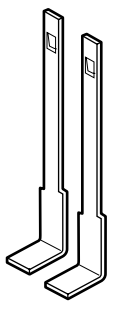
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
นอตล็อค (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
สลักติด (M5 × 20 มม.)

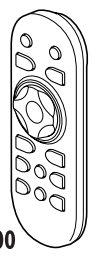


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
ยางกันกระแทก

Ⓙ
Handles
คันบังคับ



Ⓚ
Remote controller
รีโมตคอนโทรล



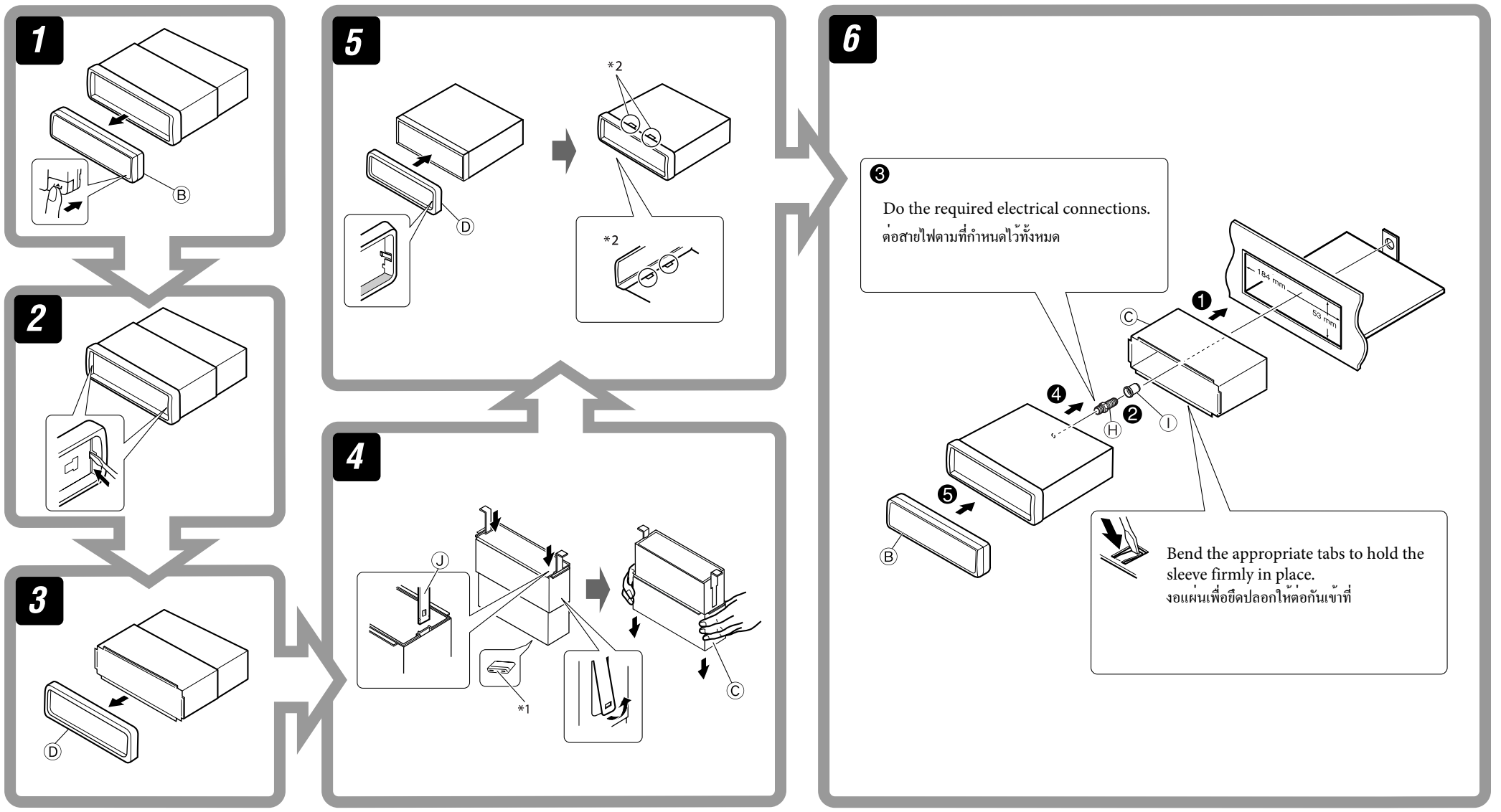
Ⓛ
Battery
แบตเตอร

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.
- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

การติดตั้ง (การประกอบแผงหน้าปัทม์เข้า)

ภาพตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้แสดงถึงการติดตั้งแบบทั่วไป หากคุณมีปัญหาหรือต้องการข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับชุดติดตั้ง กรุณาปรึกษากับผู้ขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC ของท่านหรือบริษัท
- ชุดประกอบ ถ้าคุณไม่แน่ใจว่าติดตั้งชุดประกอบนี้ถูกต้องหรือไม่ ให้หาช่างผู้เชี่ยวชาญเป็นผู้ติดตั้ง



*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*1 เมื่อคุณตั้งชุดประกอบขึ้น ระวังอย่าทำให้ฟิวส์บริเวณส่วนท้ายเสียหาย

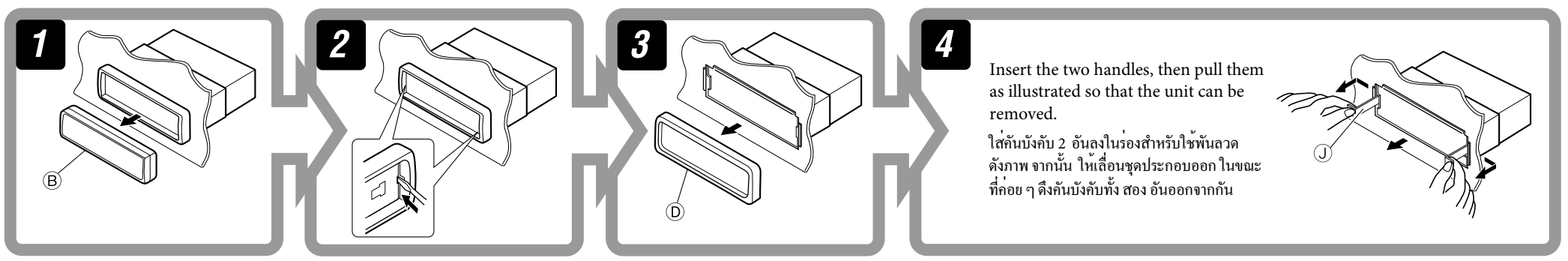
*2 Fit the protrusions outside the unit.
*2 ติดตั้งส่วนที่ยื่นออกมาที่ด้านนอกเครื่อง

Removing the unit

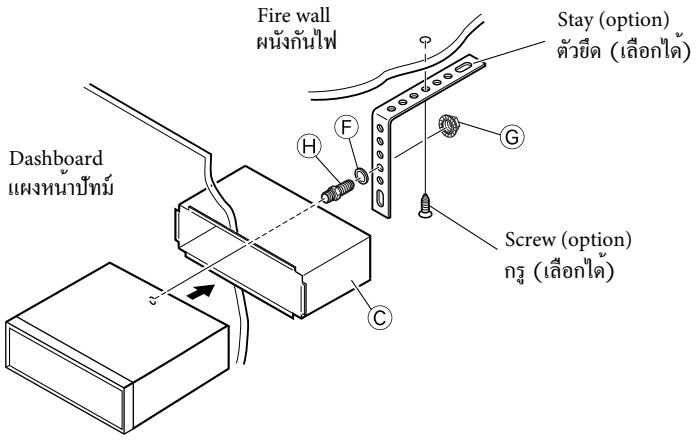
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

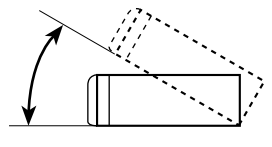
การถอดชุดประกอบ

ก่อนจะถอดชุดประกอบ ให้ปลดหน้าตัดส่วนท้ายก่อน



When using the optional stay / เมื่อใช้ตัวยึดแบบเลือกได้



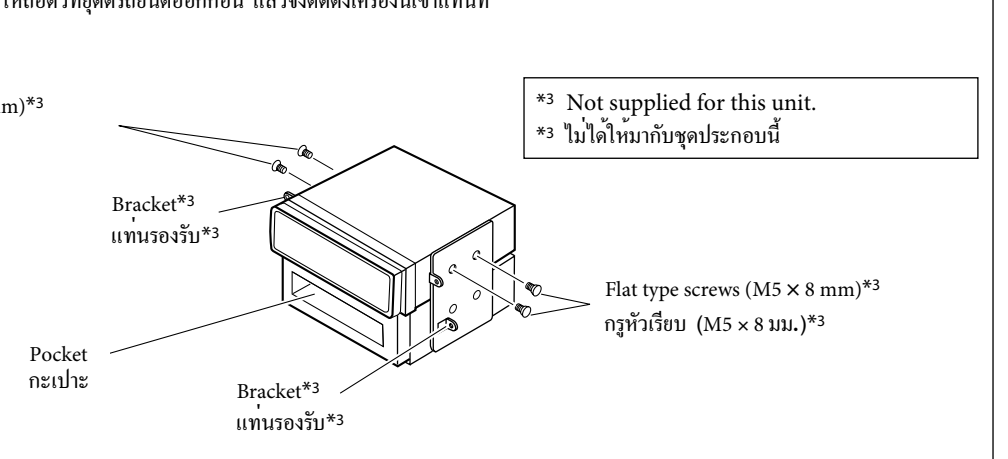


Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
ติดตั้งชุดประกอบที่มุมต่ำกว่า 30° องศา

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / เมื่อติดตั้งชุดประกอบโดยไม่ใช้ปลอกหุ้ม

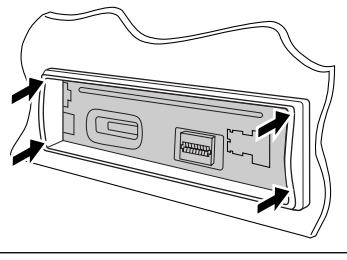
In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
ตัวอย่างเช่น ในรถยนต์โตโยต้า ให้ถอดวิทยุติดรถยนต์ออกก่อน แล้วจึงติดตั้งเครื่องนี้เข้าแทนที่

*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
หมายเหตุ : เมื่อติดตั้งชุดประกอบลงในแท่นรองรับไว้ ให้ใช้สกรูยาวขนาด 8 มม. ถ้าใช้สกรูยาวกว่านี้อาจทำให้ชุดประกอบเสียหายได้

Caution when installing / ข้อควรระวังเมื่อทำการติดตั้ง



Fit the unit into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.
- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration).

ติดตั้งเครื่องเข้าในปลอกหุ้ม ให้ตรงกับขอบของ แผ่นที่ตัดแต่งทั้งสี่
- ห้ามดันที่แผงควบคุม (ส่วนที่ระบายสีในรูป)

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

การเชื่อมโดยใช้ไฟฟ้า

A Typical connections / การเชื่อมต่อแบบปกต

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

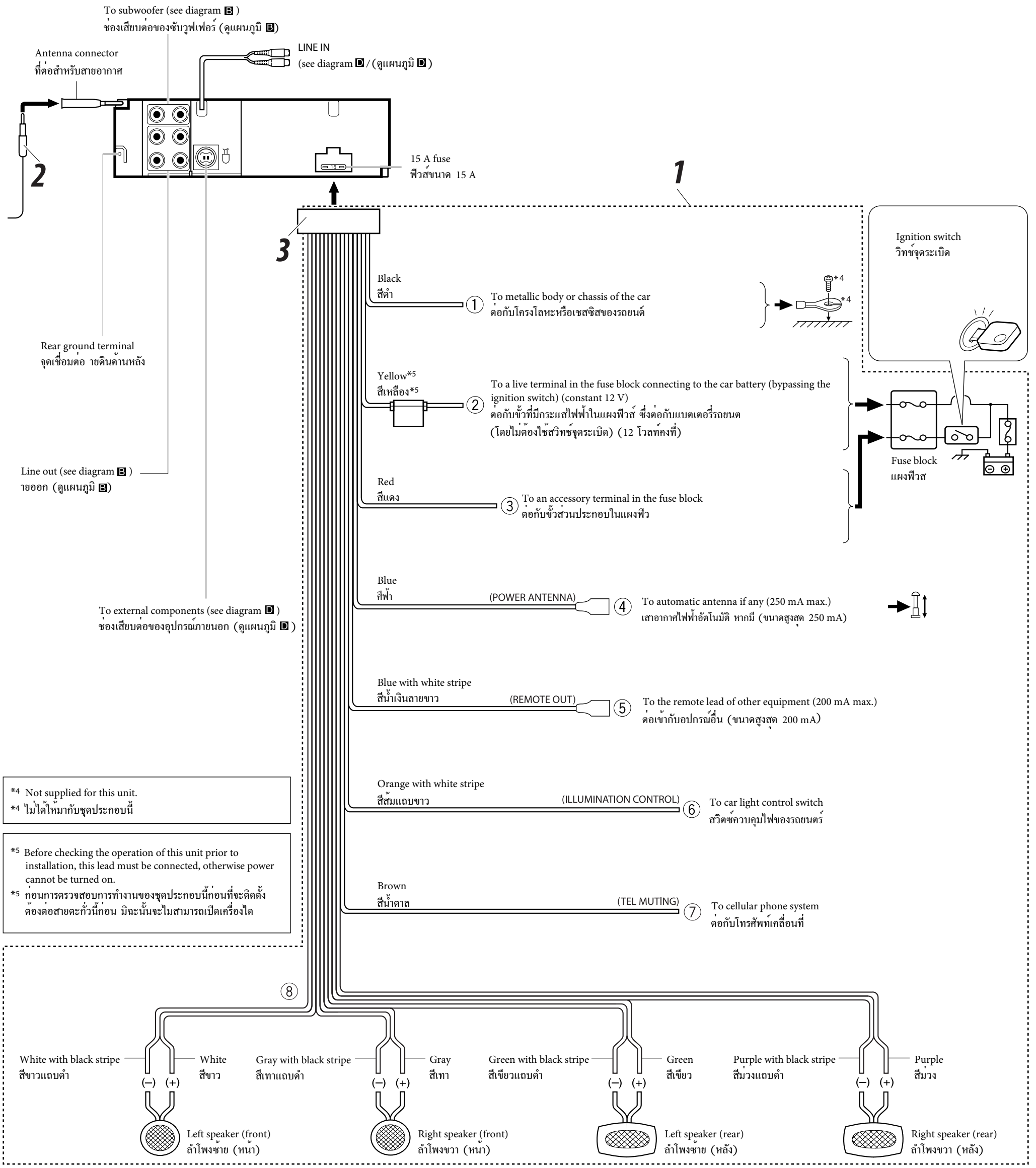
ก่อตทำกาตเชต่อมต่อ: ตตวจ อตกาตเดิต ายไฟใตตยตต์อย่างตะมัดตะวังอย่าให้ผิดพตาดใตกาตเชต่อมต่อชุดปตะกอตชุดตี กาตเชต่อมต่อผิดพตาดอาจทำให้เกิดความเียหายต้ายแตงกัตชุดปตะ
กอตตี้ได้ตตะกั่วของ ายไฟ แตะของอุปกตต์ต่อเชต่อมจากตัวต งตตอาจมี ที่ไม่เหมตอตกั

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2 Connect the antenna cord.
3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

1 ต่อสายไฟสีตามลำดับที่ระบุในรูปด้านล่าง
2 เชื่อมต่อกับายอากาศ
3 สุดท้าย ต่อส่วนควบคุมการเดินสายไฟเข้ากับชุดประกอบชุดนี้

If you have installed 3-way network speaker system in your car, see diagram C for speaker connection.

หากติดตั้งระบบลำโพงสามทิศทางในรถยนต์ ขอให้ดูแผนผัง C ในการต่อลำโพงด้วย



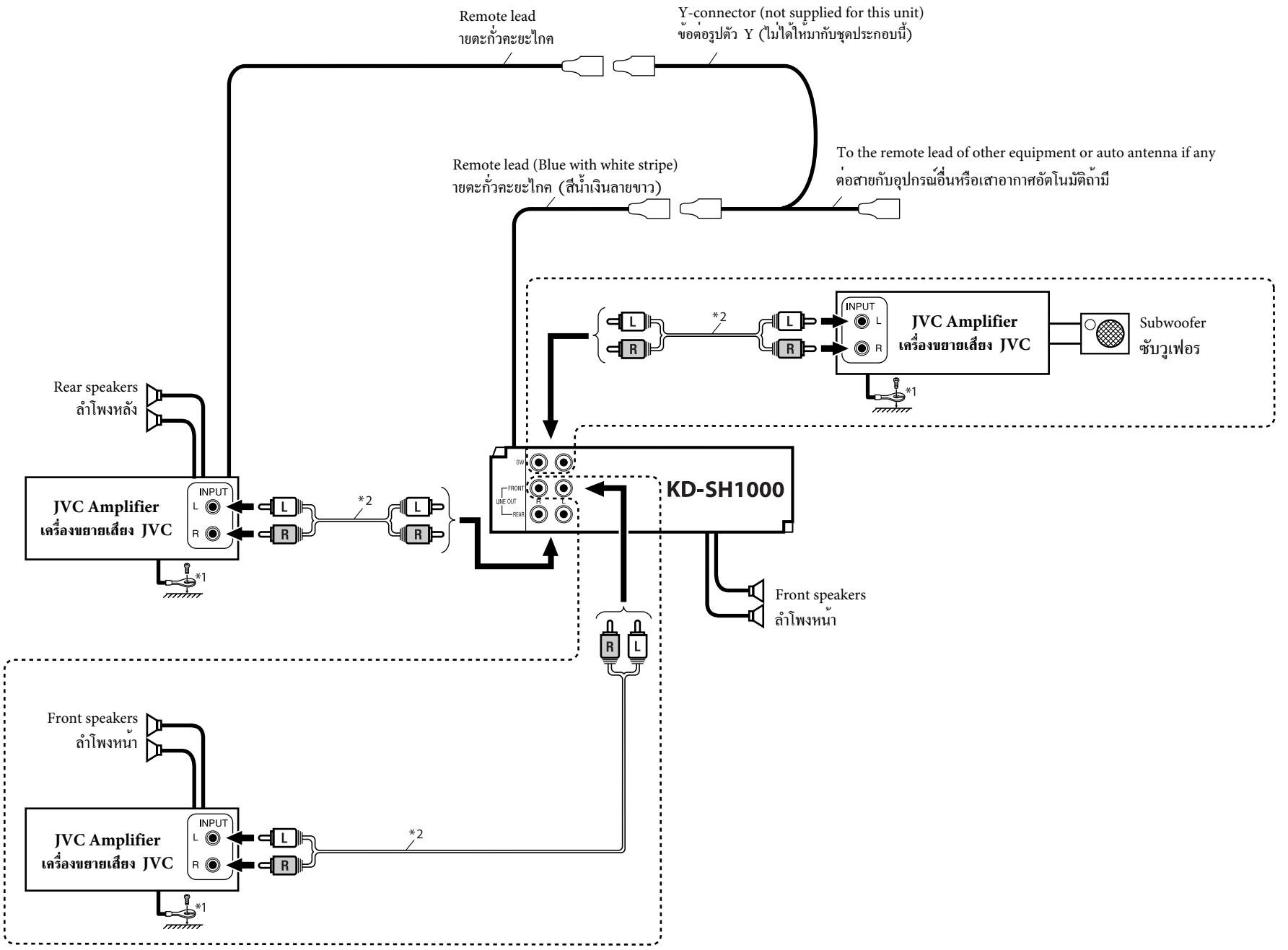
*4 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้

*5 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
*5 ก่อนการตรวจสอบการทำงานของชุดประกอบนี้ก่อนที่จะติดตั้ง ต้องต่อสายตะกั่วนี้ก่อน มิฉะนั้นจะไมสามารถเปิดเครื่องได

B Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / ต่อแอมพลิฟายเออร์และ/หรือซับวูฟเฟอร์ด้านนอก

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  - **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
  - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
  - The line output level of this unit is kept high to maintain the hi-fi sounds reproduced from this unit. When connecting an external amplifier to this unit, turn down the gain control on the external amplifier to obtain the best performance from this unit.

คุณสามารถต่อกับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ได้หลายตัวเพื่อเพิ่มคุณภาพเสียงให้กับระบบสเตอริโอในรถยนต์
- ต่อสายตะกั่วระยะไกล (สีน้ำเงินลายขาว) เข้ากับสายตะกั่วระยะไกลของอุปกรณ์อื่น ๆ เพื่อจะสามารถควบคุมโดยชุดประกอบนี้ได้
- **สำหรับแอมพลิฟายเออร์เท่านั้น:**
  - **ถอดลำโพงออกจากจากชุดประกอบนี้ แล้ววต่อเข้ากับเครื่องขยาย ทิ้งายตะกั่วลำโพงของชุดประกอบนี้ไว**
  - ท่านสามารถปิดแอมพลิฟายเออร์ ที่ติดตั้งอยู่ในเครื่อง แล้วส่งสัญญาณเสียงไปยัง แอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอกเพียงอย่างเดียวได้ เพื่อให้เสียงที่ได้คมชัด และป้องกันเครื่องไม่ให้ร้อน (ดูหน้า 21 คำแนะนำ)
  - ลัญญาณออกจากเครื่องจะยังคงอยู่ในระดับลูง เพื่อให้เลียงที่ได้เป็นเลียงไฮ–ไฟ เมื่อต่อกับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอก ให้ปิดปุ่มควบคุมอัตราขยาย ที่แอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอก เพื่อให้เครื่องมีประลิทธิภาพการทำงานลูงลุด้



*1 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*1 ต่อลวดสายดินให้แน่นเข้ากับตัวถังเหล็ก หรือตัวถังรถตรงส่วนที่ไม่มีสีเคลือบ (หากมีสีเคลือบอยู่ ให้ขูดสีออกก่อน ก่อนต่อลวดสายดิน) หากไม่ปฏิบัติตามคำแนะนำนี้ เครื่องอาจชำรุดหรือเสียหายได้

*2 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*2 ายเคเบิลสัญญาณ (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

การตรวจสอบปัญหาขัดข้อง

- **ฟิวส์ขาด**
* มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีดำและสีแดงอย่างถูกต้องหรือไม่

- **ไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได้**
* มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีเหลืองหรือไม่

- **ไม่มีเสียงออกจากลำโพง**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือไม่

- **เสียงเพี้ยน**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบ "–" ของลำโพงด้านซ้ายและขวาตอลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่

- **เสียงรบกวน**
* มีการใช้สายสั้นๆ หรือหนาๆ ต่อจากเครื่องสวนที่ติดตั้ง ไว้บนพื้นด้านหลังกับตัวถังรถยนต์หรือไม่

- **ชุดประกอบร้อนขึ้น**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบ "–" ของลำโพงด้านซ้ายและขวาตอลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่

- **เครื่องรับนี้ทำงานไม่**
* ท่านได้ตั้งเครื่องใหม่แล้วหรือยัง

C Speaker connections for 3-way network speaker system / การต่อลำโพงสำหรับระบบลำโพงสามทิศทาง

You can enjoy a world of "pure audio" in your car by connecting 3-way network speaker system (high-range/mid-range/subwoofer).

คุณสามารถเพลิดเพลินกับโลกของ ระบบเสียงสมบูรณ์แบบ ในรถยนต์ได้ ด้วยการต่อระบบลำโพงสามทิศทาง (พิสัยสูง/พิสัยกลาง/ซับวูฟเอร)

IMPORTANT:

If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following.

- Connect the speaker system as illustrated below.
- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For details about the setting, see pages 18 and 19 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

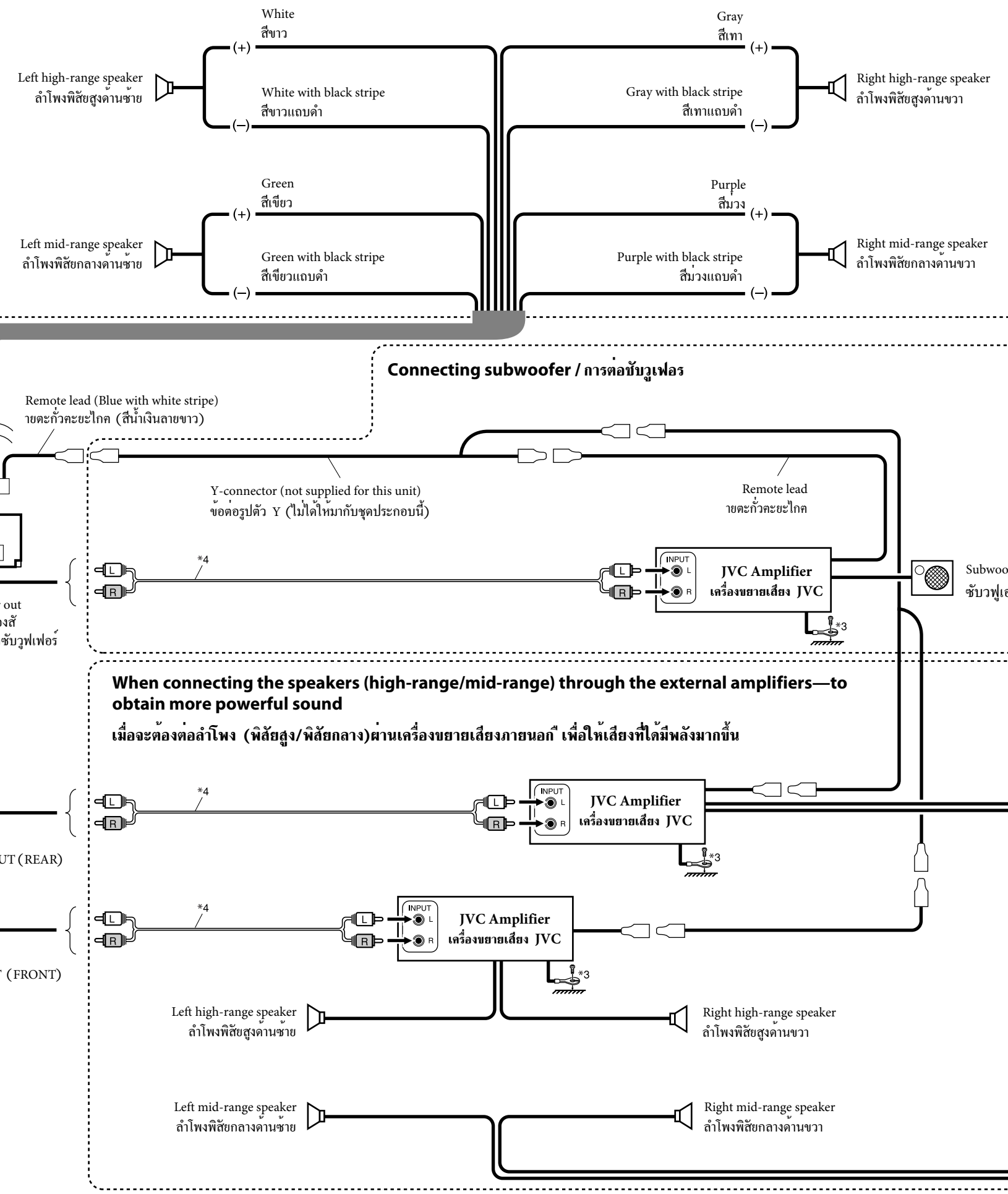
ข้อควรทราบที่สำคัญ:

หากติดตั้งระบบลำโพงสามทิศทางในรถยนต์ ขอให้ดูจุดต่อไปนี้ให้ดี

- การต่อสายระบบลำโพงตามรูป
- ก่อนใช้งานระบบ ขอให้เปิดระบบข้ามเครือข่าย และตั้งคลื่นความถี่ตัดสำหรับ HPF/LPF ก่อน (โดยเฉพาะสำหรับ HPF) ไม่เช่นนั้นลำโพงอาจเสียได้
- ดูรายละเอียดในการตั้งค่าได้ในคู่มือการใช้งานหน้า 18 – 19

When connecting the speakers (high-range/mid-range) through the speaker output

เมื่อจะต่อลำโพง (พิสัยสูง/พิสัยกลาง)ผ่านขั้วส่งสัญญาณออกลำโพง



*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*3 ต่อลวดสายดินให้แน่นเข้ากับตัวถังเหล็ก หรือตัวถังรถ ตรงส่วนที่ไม่มีสีเคลือบ (หากมีสีเคลือบอยู่ ให้ขูดสีออกก่อน ก่อนต่อลวดสายดิน) หากไม่ปฏิบัติตามคำแนะนำนี้ เครื่องอาจชำรุดหรือเสียหายได้

*4 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*4 ายเคเบิลสัญญาณ (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้)

D Connecting the external components / การต่อเพิ่มเติมเข้ากับอุปกรณ์อื่นๆ

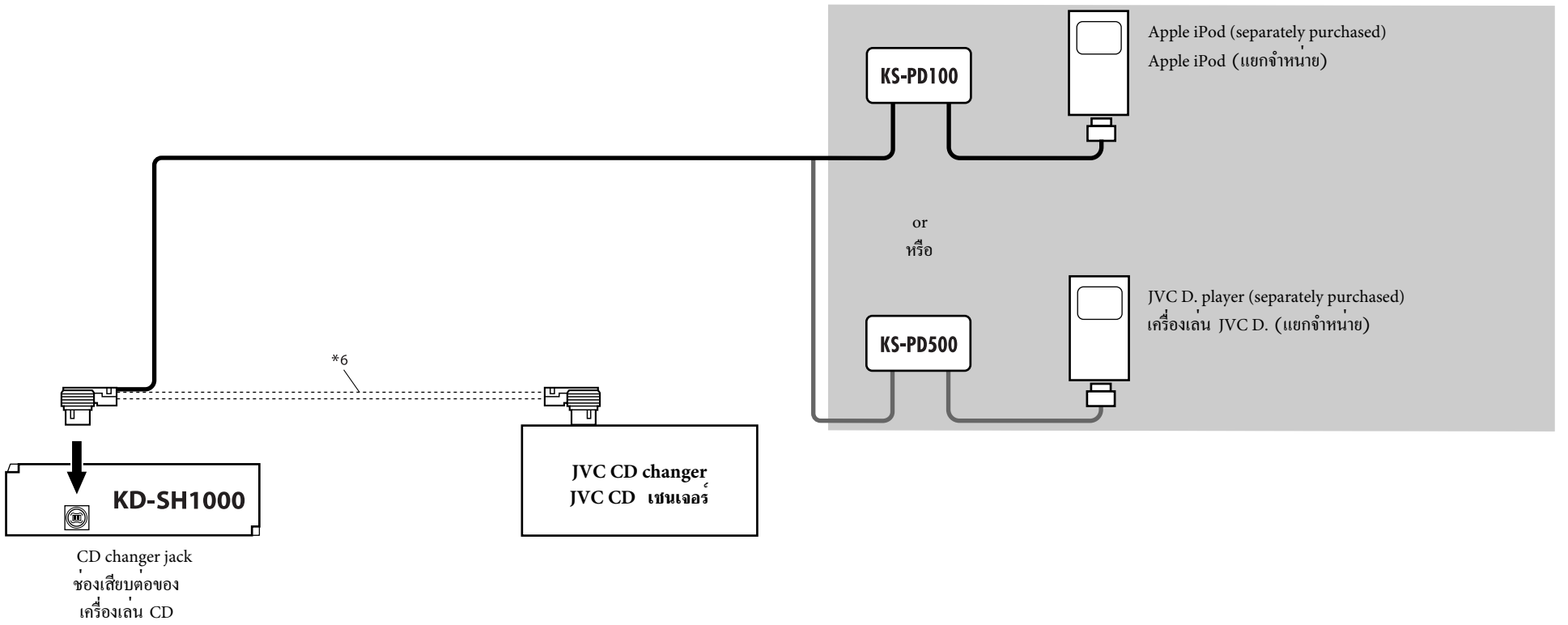
CD changer, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / CD เชนเจอร์, Apple iPod® หรือเครื่องเล่น JVC D.

• Set "Changer" for the external input setting (See page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / ตั้งค่า "Changer" เป็นการค่ารับสัญญาณอุปกรณ์ภายนอก (ดูหน้า 21 คำแนะนำ)

You can connect these components as illustrated below. The iPod*5 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

ท่านสามารถต่ออุปกรณ์ดังกล่าวตามภาพแสดงด้านล่าง
ท่านสามารถเชื่อมต่อ iPod*5 หรือเครื่องเล่น D. โดยใช้อินเทอร์เฟสอะแดปเตอร์ (ไม่มีมาให้)—KS-PD100 (สำหรับ iPod) หรือ KS-PD500 (สำหรับเครื่องเล่น D.)

CAUTION / ข้อควรระวัง
- Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
- ก่อนจะเชื่อมต่อกับอุปกรณ์ภายนอก กรุณาตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าปิดเครื่องอยู่

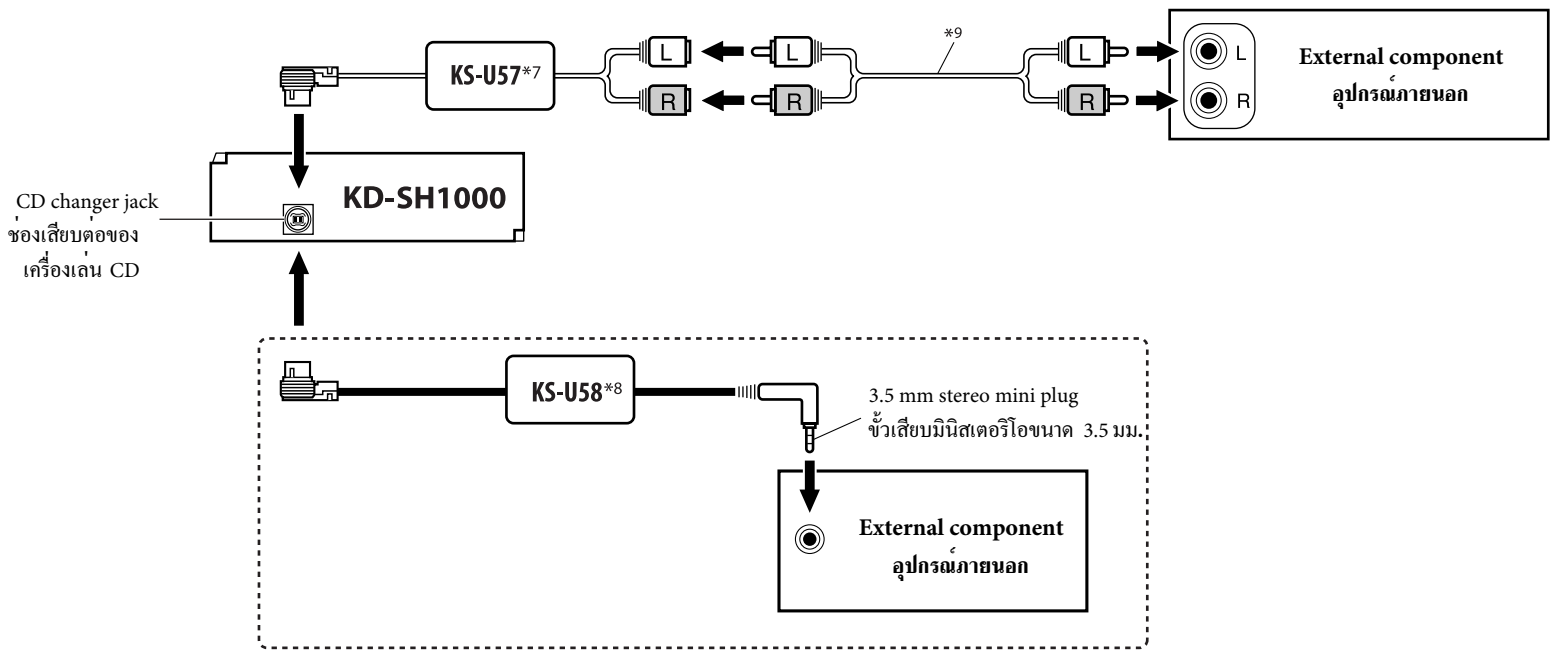


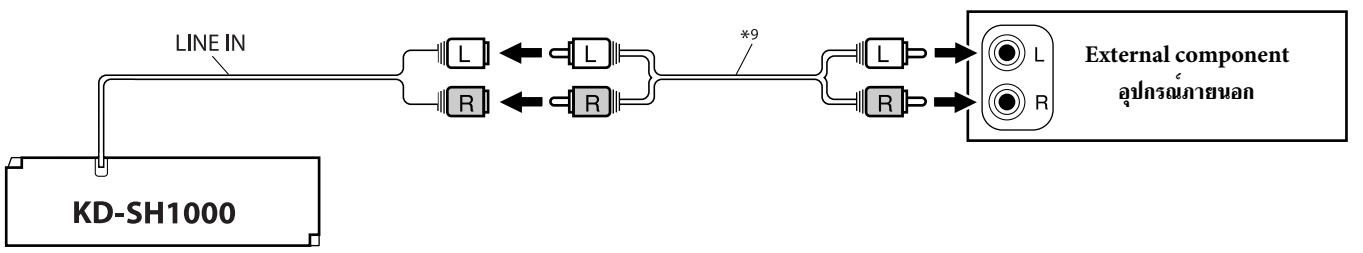
*5 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*5 iPod เป็นเครื่องหมายการค้าของ Apple Computer, Inc. ซึ่งจดทะเบียนการค้าในประเทศสหรัฐอเมริกาและประเทศอื่นๆ

*6 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer
*6 ต่อสายที่ให้มาสำหรับ CD เชนเจอร์

Other external component / อุปกรณ์ภายนอกอื่นๆ

• Set "Ext In" for the external input setting (See page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / ตั้งค่า "Ext In" เบป็นการค่ารับสัญญาณอุปกรณ์ภายนอก (ดูหน้า 21 คำแนะนำ)





*7 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*7 อแดปเตอร์ ายสัญญาณเข้า KS-U57 (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้)

*8 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)
*8 อะแดปเตอร์รับสัญญาณ AUX รุ่น KS-U58 (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้)

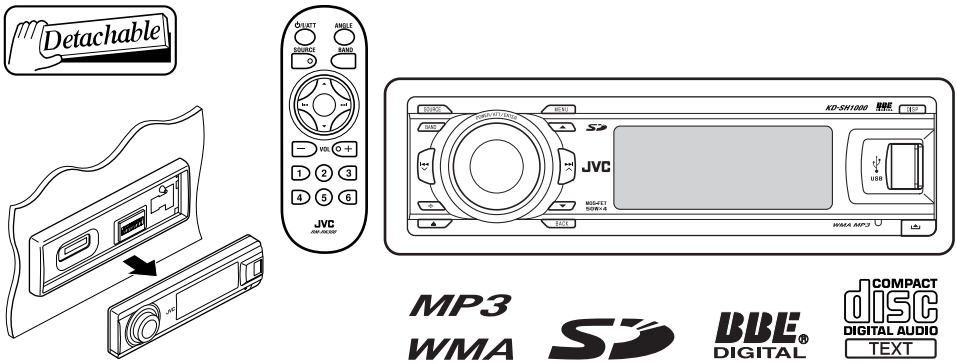
*9 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*9 ายเคเบิลสัญญาณ (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้)

ENGLISH

INDONESIA

CD RECEIVER KD-SH1000

ALAT PENERIMA CD KD-SH1000



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
Untuk membatalkan tampilan demonstrasi, lihat halaman 8.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Untuk instalasi dan penyambungan, lihat buku pedoman terpisah.

INSTRUCTIONS
BUKU PETUNJUK

GET0365-004A
[UN]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	**ADVARSEL :** Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	**VARNING :** Synlig och osynlig laserstrålning när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	**VARO :** Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

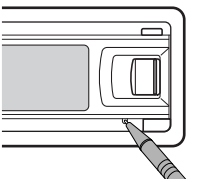
Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Notice:

The display window built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.

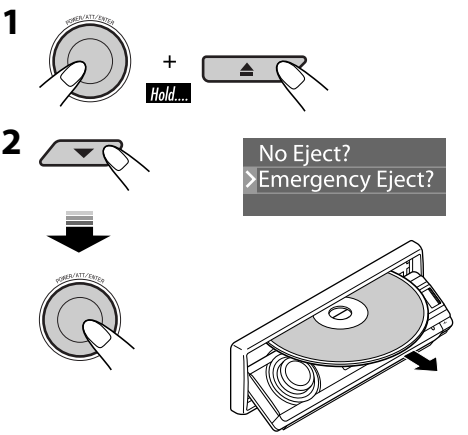
How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc

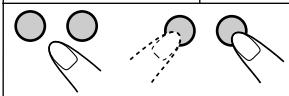
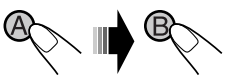
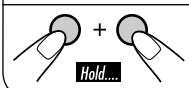
- If an SD card is inserted, eject the SD card first (see page 11).



- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*

How to read this manual

- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations in the table below.
- Some related tips and notes are explained in "More about this unit" (see pages 27 – 31).

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press Ⓐ, then Ⓑ.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.
	Press and hold both buttons at the same time.

The following marks are used to indicate...

: Built-in CD player operations.

: External CD changer operations.

: SD player operations.

: External USB memory operations.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

Control panel 5

Remote controller — RM-RK300 6

Getting started 7
- Basic operations 7

Radio operations 8

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations 11
- Playing a disc in the unit 11
- Playing discs in the CD changer 11
- Playing from an SD card 11
- Playing from a USB memory 12

Sound adjustments 15
- Selecting the DSP modes (DSP) 15
- Using the equalizer—EQ 16
- Activating crossover network 18
- Setting the sound modes—SEL 18

General settings — PSM 20

Title assignment 23

iPod®/D. player operations 24

Other external component operations... 26

Maintenance 26

More about this unit 27

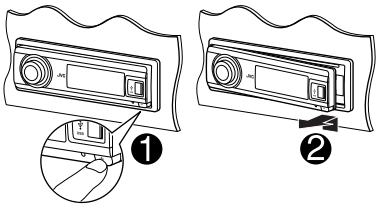
Troubleshooting 32

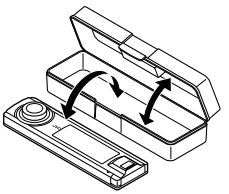
Specifications 36

ENGLISH

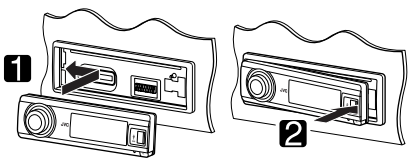
How to detach/attach the control panel

Detaching...



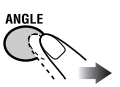


Attaching...

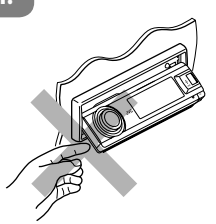


How to change the control panel angle

When using the remote controller



Caution:



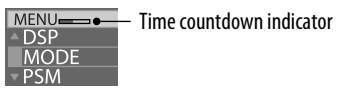
How to enter the various menus

The main menu contains seven menus (MODE, PSM, SEL, TITLE, BBE, EQ, DSP).

- If no operation is done for about 5 seconds, menu screen is canceled.

1

2 Select a menu you want.



3 Enter the selected menu.

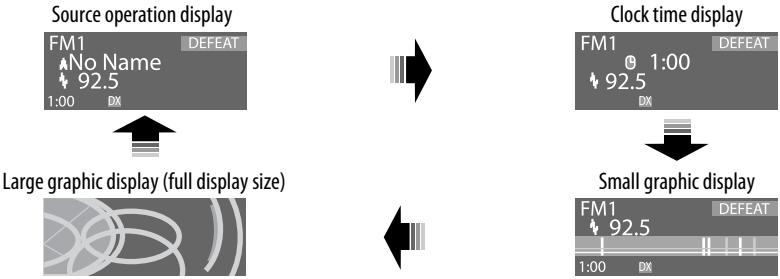
- To go back to the previous screen or exit the MENU screen, press BACK repeatedly.

4 Operate as instructed on the screen.

- To go back to the MENU screen, press MENU.

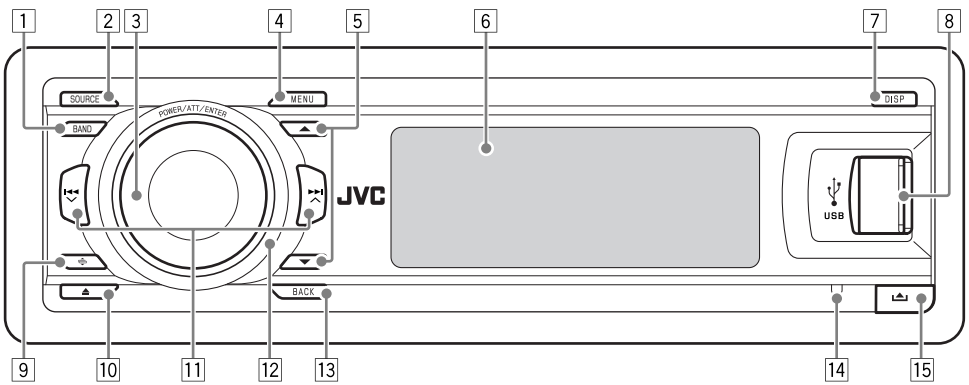
How to change the display information and patterns

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Control panel

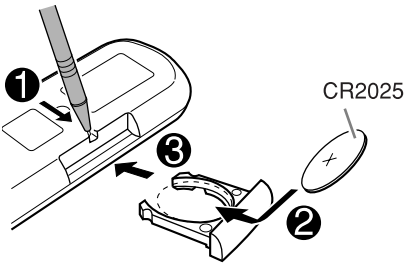
Parts identification



1 BAND button
2 SOURCE button
3 • Control dial
• POWER/ATT (attenuator)/ENTER button
4 MENU button
5 ▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons
6 Display window
7 DISP (display) button
8 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input terminal
9 (angle) button
10 ⏏ (eject) button
11 ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧ buttons
12 Remote sensor
DO NOT expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).
13 BACK button
14 Reset button
15 (control panel release) button

Remote controller — RM-RK300

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)

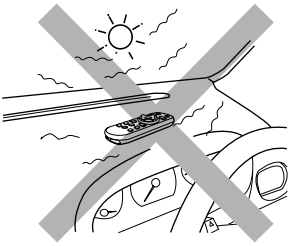


Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.

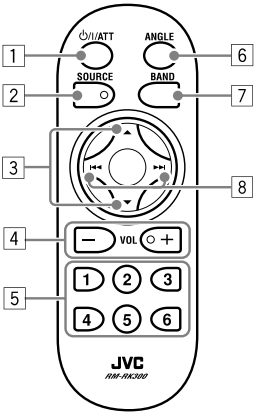
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accident.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
  - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
  - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
  - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
  - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Caution:



Main elements and features



1 **⏻/I/ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button**
- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 **SOURCE button**
Selects the source.

3 **▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Changes the preset stations.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the folders.
- **While listening to an Apple iPod® or a JVC D. player:**
  – Pauses/stops or resumes playback with ▼.
  – Enters the main menu with ▲. (Now ▲/▼/|◄◄/►►| work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

4 **VOL (volume) + / – buttons**
Adjusts the volume level.

5 **Number buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Selects the preset station if pressed, or store a station if pressed and held.
- F**or CD/CD Text:** Selects the tracks.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Selects the folders.
- **For CD changer:** Selects the discs.

6 **ANGLE button**
Adjusts the control panel angle.

7 **BAND button**
Selects the band.

8 **|◄◄ / ►►| buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Searches for stations if pressed, or skips frequencies after pressed and held.
- **For CD/CD Text/MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the tracks if pressed, or fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
- **While listening to an iPod or a D. player (in menu selecting mode):**
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

* ▲ : *Returns to the previous menu.*
▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

Getting started

Activates or deactivates crossover network (see page 18) before turning on the power.

Basic operations

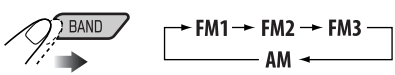
1 Turn on the power.

2

FM/AM → CD* → SD* → USB* → CD-CH*/iPod*/D. player* (or **EXT-IN**) **→ LINE-IN →** (back to the beginning)

* *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

3 For FM/AM tuner



4 Adjust the volume.

5 Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

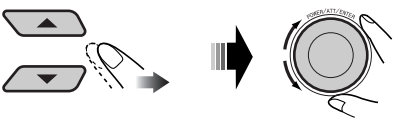
To drop the volume in a moment (ATT) To restore the sound, press it again.	
To turn off the power	

Basic settings

- See also "General settings — PSM" on pages 20 – 22.

1 Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).

2



1 **Canceling the display demonstrations**
Select "Demo," then "Off."

2 **Setting the clock**
Select "Clock H" (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select "Clock M" (minute), then adjust the minute.
Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."

3 Finish the procedure.

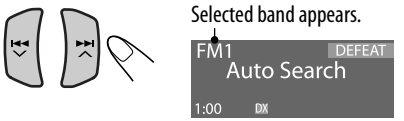
To check the current clock time while the power is turned off

Radio operations

❶

❷

❸ **Start searching for a station.**



When a station is received, searching stops.
To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

In step ❸ above...

1

2 **Select a desired station frequency.**

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2

3

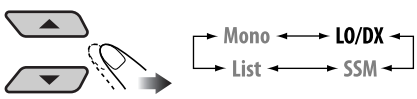
4

MO indicator lights up.
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure and select "Off" in step **3**. The MO indicator goes off.

Tuning in to FM stations with strong signals only—LO (local)/DX (Distance-Extreme)

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 

3

4

DX indicator goes off and LO indicator lights up.
Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure and select "DX" in step **3**. The LO indicator goes off and DX indicator lights up.

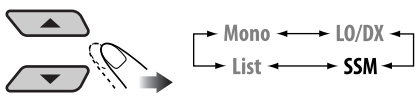
Storing stations in memory

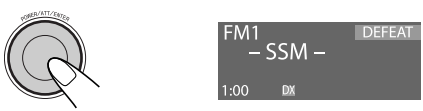
You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

1 Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store into.

2 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

3 

4 

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1

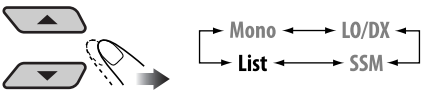
2

3 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).
- If you hold down ▲/▼, the Preset Station List appears (go to step **6**).

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

4

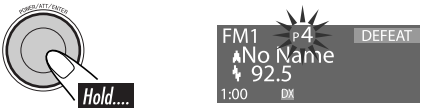


5

6 Select a preset number.

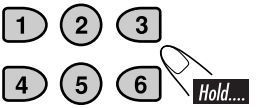
- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by turning the control dial.

7 Store the station.



When using the remote controller

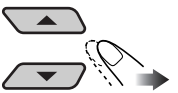
After tuning in to a station you want to preset...



Listening to a preset station

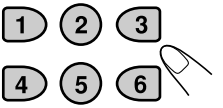
1

2



When using the remote controller

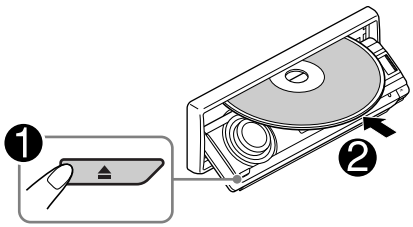
Directly select the preset number.



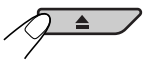
Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Playing a disc in the unit

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.



To stop play and eject the disc

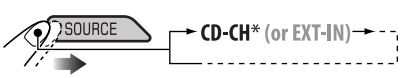


Note:
If a USB memory is attached to the unit, you cannot eject the disc. "Please Eject USB" flashes on the display. If this happens, detach the USB memory, then, press ⏏ button again.

Playing discs in the CD changer

All discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

- Ejecting the magazine will also stop playback.

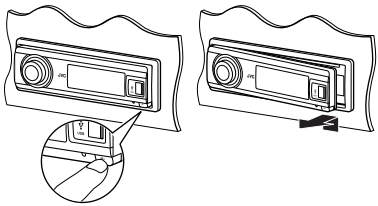


* *If you have changed the external input setting to "Ext In" (see page 21), you cannot select the CD changer.*

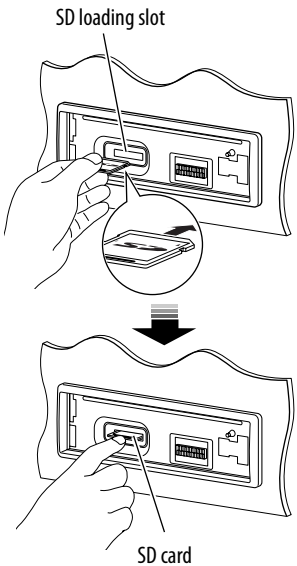
Playing from an SD card

Before detaching the control panel, turn off the power.

1



2



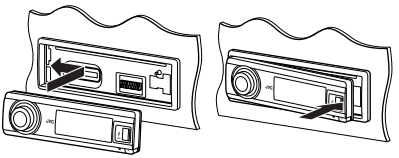
Press in the SD card until you hear a clicking sound.

To eject the SD card, press the SD card again.

- Press the SD card softly (do not release your finger quickly); otherwise, the SD card may pop out from the unit.

Continued on the next page

❸ **Attach the control panel.**



❹

- The control panel goes back to the previous position.

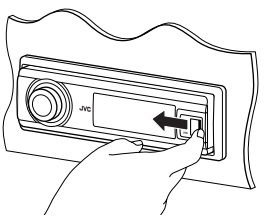
Playback starts automatically if tracks are recorded.

Playing from a USB memory

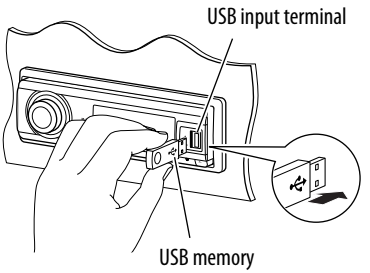
This unit can play MP3/WMA tracks stored in a USB memory.
All tracks in the USB memory will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

- Removing the USB memory will also stop playback.

❶



❷

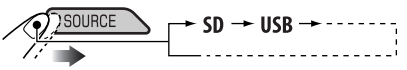


To detach the USB memory, straightly pull it out from the unit.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the SD card/USB memory when it might hinder your safety driving.
- Make sure all important data have been backed up to avoid losing the data.

If an SD card or USB memory has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different SD card or USB memory is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

About MP3 and WMA tracks

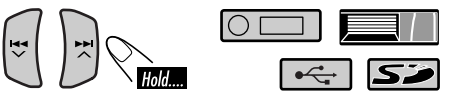
MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."

About the CD changer

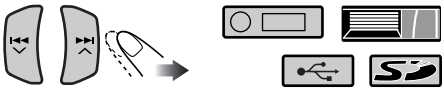
It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can also connect MP3-incompatible CD changers. However, these units are not compatible with MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the CH-X99, CH-X100, and KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.
- You cannot play any WMA disc in the CD changer.
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

To fast-forward or reverse the track



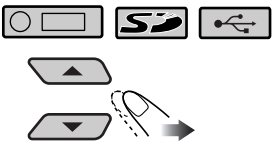
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB)

For MP3 tracks:

For WMA tracks:



- Holding the buttons can display the Disc List ( ) and Folder List (/ /), see the following.

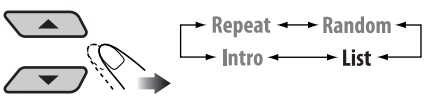
Other main functions

Selecting a disc/folder/track on the list

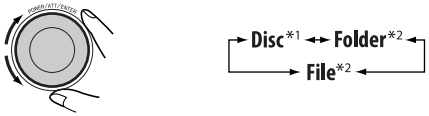
- This function is not available for an audio CD or a CD Text when the source is "CD."

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2



3 **Select a list type.**



*1 *Selectable only when the source is "CD-CH."*

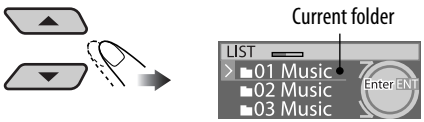
*2 *Appears only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB.*

4 **Confirm the selection.**

The selected list appears on the display.

- You can move to the other list by turning the control dial.

5 **Select a disc/folder/file from the list.**



Ex.: When "Folder" is selected on step **3**

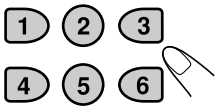
Only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB:
If you select the current disc/folder (highlighted on the screen), its Folder/File List appears.

6 **Starts playback.**

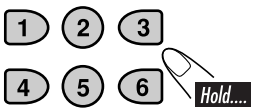
When using the remote controller

- To directly select a disc ( )
- To directly select a track of an audio CD or a CD Text ( )
- To directly select an MP3/WMA folder (/ /)

To select a number from 1 – 6:



To select a number from 7 (1) – 12 (6):

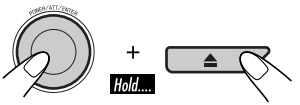


For MP3/WMA folders:
It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

1



2 After making sure "No Eject?" is selected...

- "No Eject" flashes, and the disc cannot be ejected.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure after making sure "Eject OK?" is selected.

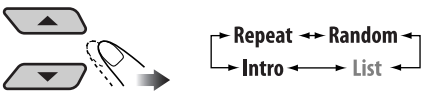
- "Eject OK" flashes on the display.

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



3 Select one of the items (see the following table).

4 Finish the procedure.

Intro	Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...
Track	: All tracks of the current playback media. [INT]
Folder*1	: First track of all folders of the current playback media. [F.INT]
Disc*2	: First track of all the inserted discs. [D.INT]
Off	: Cancels.

Repeat	Plays repeatedly
Track	: The current track. [RPT]
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder. [F.RPT]
Disc*2	: All tracks of the inserted discs. [D.RPT]
Off	: Cancels.

Random	Plays at random
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. [F.RND]
Disc	: All tracks of the current disc. [D.RND]
All*3	: All tracks of the inserted discs/ media. [ALL RND]
Off	: Cancels.

*1 *Only while playing a media (MP3/WMA/SD/USB).*

*2 *Only when the source is CD-CH.*

*3 *Only when the source is CD-CH, SD, or USB.*

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes (DSP)

You can create a more acoustic sound field such as in a theater, hall, etc.

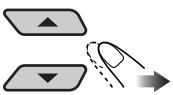
- When crossover network (see page 18) is activated, the DSP mode is fixed to "Defeat."

DSP modes

Defeat (No acoustic effect is applied), Theater, Hall, Club, Dome, Studio, V.Cancel (Voice Cancel: Reduces the vocal sounds. Good for mastering your favorite songs—Karaoke.)

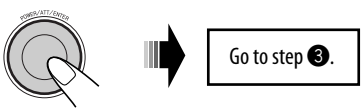
❶ **Enter the DSP menu (see page 4).**

❷ **Select one of the DSP modes.**



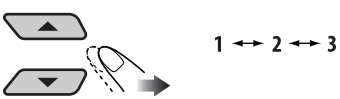
- **To finish the procedure**

- **To adjust the effect level**



For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the effect level is not adjustable.

❸ **Adjust the effect level.**



- **To finish the procedure**

To make more precise settings, see the following.

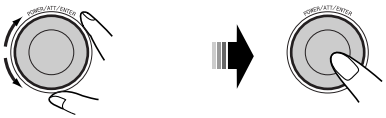
To cancel the acoustic effect, select "Defeat" in step ❷.

Precise settings for the DSP modes

1 Select a DSP mode.

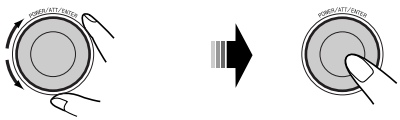
2 Select the number of the built-in speakers.

- For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the speaker number is fixed to "4ch."



2ch (channel) ↔ **4ch** (channel)

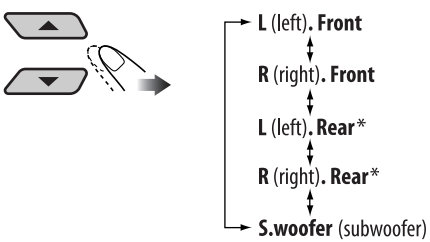
3 Select your listening seat position.



All ↔ **Front**

L (left)**. Front** ↔ **R** (right)**. Front**

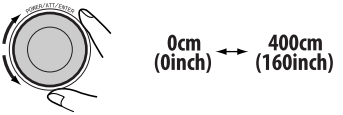
4 Select the speaker to be adjusted.



* *Appears only when "4ch" is selected in step* **2**.

Continued on the next page

5 Select the distance between the selected speaker and the seat.



Once you have set the distance, it is memorized for each seat position selected in step **3**. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select the seat position.

To change the measuring unit

6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to adjust the distance for the other speakers.

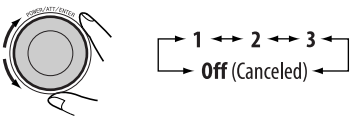
7 Finish the procedure.

Activating BBE Digital

BBE Digital is a digital processing method to restore the brilliance and clarity of the original live sound in recording, broadcasts, etc. When a speaker reproduces sound, it introduces frequency-dependent phase shifting, causing high-frequency sounds to take longer to reach the ear than low frequency sounds.
BBE Digital adjusts the phase relationship between the low, mid, and high frequencies by adding a progressively longer delay time to the low and mid frequencies, so that all frequencies reach the listener's ears at the proper time. A more brilliance and clearer sound is heard.

1 Enter the BBE menu (see page 4).

2 Select the effect level.



3 Finish the procedure.

Using the equalizer—EQ

You can adjust the sound equalization patterns to your preference by using either Graphic EQ or Parametric EQ.

- Adjust the equalizer to match the reproducible frequency range of the connected speakers; otherwise, the adjustments may not be effective.

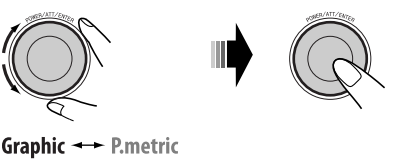
Selecting preset sound modes—Graphic EQ

Sound modes

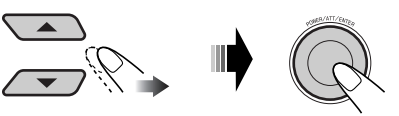
Flat (No sound mode is applied), HardRock, R&B (Rhythm&Blues), Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User 1, User 2, User 3

1 Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).

2



3 Select a sound mode.

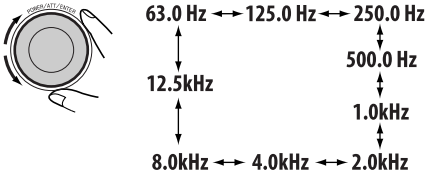


4 Finish the procedure.

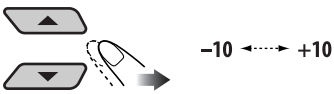
Storing your own sound modes

1 **Select a sound mode.**

2 **Select a frequency band.**



3 **Adjust the enhanced level for the selected frequency band.**



4 **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other frequency bands.**

5

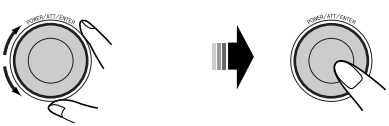
6 **Select one of the user modes.**

7 **Store the adjustments.**

Adjusting Parametric EQ

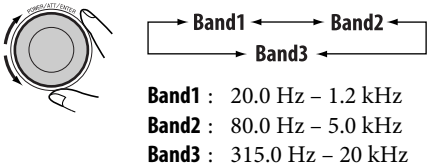
1 **Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).**

2



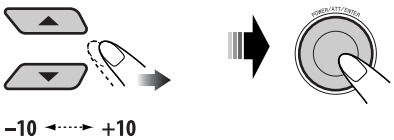
Graphic ⟷ P.metric

3 **Select a band.**



Band1 : 20.0 Hz – 1.2 kHz
Band2 : 80.0 Hz – 5.0 kHz
Band3 : 315.0 Hz – 20 kHz

4 **Adjust the enhanced level for the selected band.**



5 **Select the frequency.**

- Band 1/2/3 are required to be preset at least 5 steps (frequencies) away from each other. (Only selectable frequencies are shown on the display.)

6 **Select the band width (Q).**

- To adjust the other bands, press BACK. Then repeat steps **3** to **6**.

7 **Finish the procedure.**

Once you have made adjustments, it is memorized. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select Parametric EQ.

ENGLISH

Activating crossover network

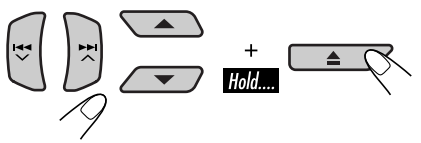
By activating crossover network, you can allocate different frequency range of sound signals to different speakers to match their characteristic.

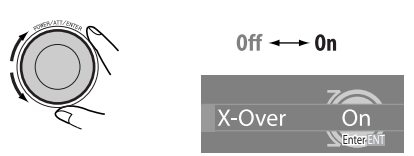
If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following:

- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For 3-way network speaker system, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

You cannot perform other operations until you finish the following procedure.

While the power is turned off...

1 

2 

3

- **To cancel the procedure,** press and hold POWER/ATT/ENTER. The power turns off.

4 **Finish the procedure.**

- X-OVER indicator lights up (in sequence with other indicators).

To cancel Crossover, repeat the same procedure. Make sure that "X-Over Off OK?" appears on the display.

- X-OVER indicator goes off.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

1 **Enter the SEL menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select a setting item.**

* *Appears only when crossover network is activated (see left column).*

When selecting "Fad/Bal," "X-Over," or "S.woofer," press POWER/ATT/ENTER to enter its submenu.

3 **Adjust the selected setting item. (See the following for details.)**

- To adjust other SEL settings, press BACK. Then repeat steps 2 and 3.

4 **Finish the procedure.**

To adjust fader and balance—Fad/Bal

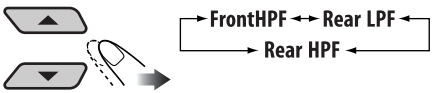
- **Fad (fader)**
  Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.

- **Bal (balance)**
  Adjust the left and right speaker balance.

To adjust reproduced frequency level—X-Over

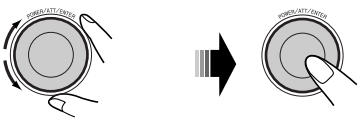
This setting is available only when crossover network (see page 18) is activated.

1 Select a filter.



HPF (Front/Rear)	: Frequencies lower than the selected level are cut-off.
LPF (Rear)	: Frequencies higher than the selected level are cut-off.

2 Select "On" to activate the selected filter.
- If you connect high-range speakers to Front or Rear output, select "On" for the corresponding HPF to prevent the speakers from being damaged.

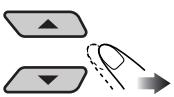


Off ↔ On

3 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected speakers.

1.6kHz – 16.0kHz : Front HPF and Rear LPF
31.5 Hz – 200.0Hz : Rear HPF

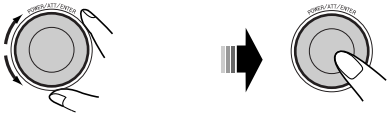
4 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).



–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

To adjust subwoofer output—S.woofer

1 Adjust the output level.

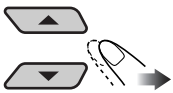


00 ↔ 12

2 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected subwoofer.

31.5 Hz ↔ 200.0 Hz

3 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).



–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

To adjust the input level of each source—Vol Adj

This setting is required for each source except for FM.
Once an adjustment is made, it will be memorized. When you change the source the volume level will automatically increase or decrease according to the adjusted level.

1 Select a source before entering the SEL menu.

2 Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.

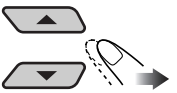
–5 ↔ +5

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 **Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select a PSM item.**



3 **Select or adjust the selected PSM item.**

4 **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other PSM items if necessary.**

5 **Finish the procedure.**

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Demo Display demonstration	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [8]. : Cancels.
Anime Animation	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: An animation screen appears when you turn on or off the power, change the source, and when you select an EQ, MENU, or DSP. : Cancels.
Clock H Hour adjustment	**1** – **12** (**0** – **23**) [Initial: 1 (1:00AM)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
Clock M Minute adjustment	**00** – **59** [Initial: 00 (1:00AM)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** [Initial] • **24Hours**	: See also page 8 for setting.
Scroll*1	• **Once** [Initial] • **Auto** • **Off**	: Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (in 5-second intervals in between). : Cancels. • Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
Dimmer	• **Auto** [Initial] • **Time Set** • **Off** • **On**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Sets the timer for dimmer, see page 22 for setting. From: Any hour; To: Any hour : Cancels. : Activates dimmer. (Does not work if "Bright" is set to "1.")

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Bright Display brightness	**1** – **10** [Initial: 8]	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible. (If "Dimmer" is set to "On," selecting "1" to "4" takes no effect.)
ID3 Tag Tag display	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
Theme Display theme	• **Large** (**1** [Initial] or **2**) • **Small** (**1** [Initial] or **2**)	: Select the display theme for large graphic display, [5]. See page 22 for setting. : Select the display theme for small graphic display, [5]. See page 22 for setting.
IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** [Initial] • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between close stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Beep Key-touch tone	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Activates the key-touch tone. : Deactivates the key-touch tone.
Ext In*2 External input	• **Changer** [Initial] • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [14] or an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player, [24]. : To use any other external component, [26].
Tel Telephone muting	• **Muting 1/ Muting 2** • **Off** [Initial]	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone. • If CD/CD-CH/SD/USB/iPod/D. player has been selected as the source, playback pauses during telephone muting. : Cancels.
Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR** • **Off**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to avoid damaging the speakers.) : Deactivates the built-in amplifier.

*1 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*2 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, SD, USB, or LINE-IN.*

Selecting timer for the dimmer

You can dim the display at night or as you set the timer.

1 **Select "Dimmer" from the PSM menu.**

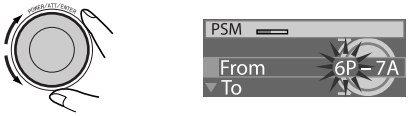
2 **Select "Time Set."**

3 **Adjust the dimmer time.**

1 **Set the dimmer start time.**

24Hours: **[0 – 23]**

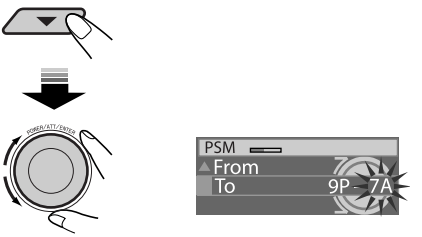
12Hours: **[1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]**



2 **Set the dimmer end time.**

24Hours: **[0 – 23]**

12Hours: **[1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]**



4 **Finish the procedure.**

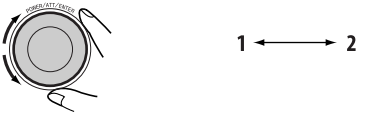
Selecting the graphic theme

You can select the graphic theme for large and small display sizes (see also page 5).

1 **Select "Theme" from the PSM menu.**

2 **Select the size of the display.**

3 **Select the theme.**



4 **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select the other display size and theme.**

5 **Finish the procedure.**

To show the selected display theme, press DISP repeatedly while playing a source.

Title assignment

You can assign titles to station frequencies, CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer) and the external components (LINE-IN and EXT-IN).

Sources	Maximum number of characters
Station frequencies	Up to 16 characters (up to 30 station frequencies including bothe FM and AM)
CDs/CD-CH*	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)
External component	Up to 16 characters

* *You cannot assign names to any discs other than conventional CDs.*

1 Select the sources.

- For FM/AM tuner: Select a station.
- For CDs in this unit: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select "CD-CH," then select a disc number.
- For external component: Select "LINE-IN" or "EXT-IN."

2 Enter the TITLE menu (see page 4).

3 Assign a title.

1 **Select a character set.**

A (A – Z: upper case) → **a** (a – z: lower case) → **0** (numbers and symbols) → **Á** (Accented letters: upper case) → **á** (Accented letters: lower case) → (back to the beginning)

- For available characters, see page 31.

2 **Select a character.**

3 **Move to the next (or previous) character position.**

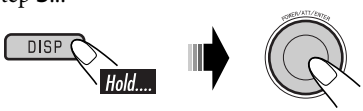
4 **Repeat steps 1 and 3 until you finish entering the title.**

4 Finish the procedure.

- To cancel the title entry without registration, press MENU.

To erase the entire title

In step **3**...



iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

Before operating your iPod or D. player: Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **Interface adapter for iPod®**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- **D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Caution:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

Preparations:

Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 21.

1

2

Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused*1 or stopped*2 previously.

3 **Adjust the volume.**

4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)**

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause*1 or stop*2 playback To resume playback, press it again.	
To fast-forward or reverse the track	
To go to the next or previous tracks	

*1 *For iPod*
*2 *For D. player*

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.

Now the ▲/▼/|◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*.

* *The menu selecting mode will be canceled:*
- *– If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.*
- *– When you confirm the selection of a track.*

2 Select the desired menu.

For iPod:
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:
Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔ Genre ↔ Track ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Confirm the selection.

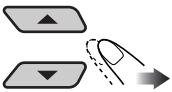
To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.
- Holding |◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ can skip 10 items at a time.

Selecting the playback modes

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



Repeat ↔ Random

3 Select an item (see table below).

4 Finish the procedure.

Repeat play	
One	: Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → One" for the D. player.
All	: Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → All" for the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.
Random play	
Album*	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
Song/On	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod or "Random Play → On" of the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.

* *For iPod: Only if you select "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

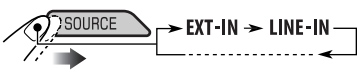
ENGLISH

Other external component operations

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN plugs on the rear or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

For listening to the SD card/USB memory, see pages 11 – 14; For iPod, or D.player, see pages 24 and 25.

1 

LINE-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN plugs.

EXT-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack.

If "EXT-IN" does not appear, see page 21 and select the external input ("Ext In").

2 **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

3 **Adjust the volume.**

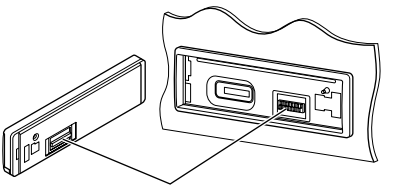
4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)**

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

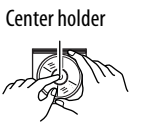
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

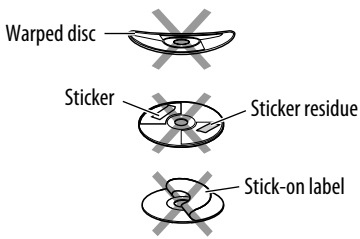
To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

How to handle SD card

SD cards are precision products. DO NOT impact, bend, drop, or wet them.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start from where playback has been stopped previously, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
  - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Continued on the next page

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/ CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA) and MP3/WMA format; MP3/WMA files recorded in an SD card or a USB memory.
- While playing an audio CD: If a title has been assigned to the audio CD (see page 23), it will be shown on the display.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing an MP3/ WMA track, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the control panel moves down, and the disc automatically ejects from the loading slot.
- If you keep the control panel open for about 1 minute, (beeps sound when the "Beep" setting is turned "On"—see page 21) the control panel returns to its previous position.
- Do not insert 8 cm discs (single CD) and unusual shape discs (heart, flower, etc.) into the loading slot.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can play back only files of the same type which are first detected if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/ WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  - Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the unit.
  - The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  - CD-R/CD-RW on which the files are written with "Packet Write" method.
  - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA discs

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files compliant to ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name.
- The maximum number of characters for file/ folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  - Romeo*: up to 128 (72) characters
  - Joliet*: up to 64 (36) characters
  - Windows long file name*: up to 128 (72) characters

  * *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 313 or more.*
- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, of 200 folders, and of 8 hierarchies.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriated format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA tracks from an SD card or a USB memory

- While playing from an SD card or a USB memory, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some SD cards or USB memories due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB memories and connection ports, some USB memories may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- It is not recommended to use a USB memory wider than 20 mm as it will block you from pressing some buttons on the control panel.
- If the connected USB memory does not have the correct files, "No Files" appears and the unit returns to the previous source.
- This unit can show Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- For SD card: The maximum number of characters for folder name is 8 characters; file names is 12 characters. This unit cannot recognize folder with period (.) on the folder name.
  For USB memory: The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- For SD card: This unit can recognize a total of 255 files and 63 folders.
  For USB memory: This unit can recognize a total of 2 500 files and 250 folders (999 files per folder).
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops. Next time you select the same source again, playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Continued on the next page

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes—DSP

- Effectiveness of "V.Cancel" depends on the recording condition of the sources:
  - Monaural sources such as AM and monaural FM broadcasting programs.
  - Multiplex sound sources.
  - Sources recorded with duets, strong echo, a chorus, or only a few instruments.
- When "4ch" is selected, rear speakers are used only to reproduce reflections and reverberations in order to creates a being-there feeling in your car compartment.
- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate effect may not be obtained.
- You cannot adjust the effect level and speaker number when "Defeat" is selected with crossover network activated.

Storing your own sound modes

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press MENU to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to the center.
- Subwoofer out setting takes effect only when a subwoofer is connected.
- You cannot change the input level—"VolAdjust" of the FM stations. If the source is FM, "Fix" will appear when you try to adjust it.

General settings — PSM

- "Auto Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming. In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any one other than "Auto."
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies or 30 discs, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc in the unit and vise versa.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
  - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 20). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

For D. player users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>

Available characters

In addition to the Roman alphabets (A – Z, a – z), the following characters will be used.

Accented letters: upper case

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ	İ	Ų	ð	space							

Accented letters: lower case

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ŀ	ı	ij	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

Preset frequency level settings for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset equalizing value								
	63 Hz	125 Hz	250 Hz	500 Hz	1 kHz	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12.5 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+06	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+02
R&B	+06	+04	+04	+04	00	+02	+02	+02	+06
Pop	00	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+02	+02	+04
Jazz	+06	+04	+02	+02	+02	+02	+02	+06	+04
Dance	+08	+04	+02	00	–04	–02	00	+02	+02
Country	+04	+02	00	00	00	00	00	+02	+04
Reggae	+06	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+04	+04	+06
Classic	+04	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	00
User 1	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 2	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see pages 4 and 26).
	• "Push Reset" appears on the display and the control panel movement is freezed.	Reset the unit (see page 2). If this does not work, check the installation.
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 14). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "Loading Error," or "Eject Error" appears).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("File Check" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs while playing. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• "No Music" appears on the display.	Change the disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 31).
SD card/USB memory playback	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not an MP3/WMA track. Skip to another file. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• "File Check" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Play a device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	• The device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the device are corrupted. • Do not pull out or attach the USB memory repeatedly while "File Check" appears on the display.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
SD card/USB memory playback	• "SD Loading Error" appears on the display while playing tracks from an SD card.	Detach the control panel and reinsert the SD card. The control panel goes back to initial position (Angle 1).
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	MP3/WMA tracks have not been properly copied into the device. Copy MP3/WMA tracks again into the device, and try again.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 31).
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
Sounds	• DSP mode cannot be selected other modes than "Defeat." • Only high range sound or low range sound is reproduced though full range speakers are connected.	Deactivate crossover network (see page 18).
iPod/D. player playback	• The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press POWER/ATT/ENTER before performing the operation.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation using the control panel (see page 24).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. player playback	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	• No sound can be heard. • "ERROR 01" appears on the display when connecting a D. player.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "No Files" or "No Track" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/ D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's or D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- *Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.*
- *SD logo is a trademark.*
- *Manufactured under license from BBE Sound, Inc.*
  Licensed by BBE Sound, Inc. under USP5510752 and 5736897. BBE and BBE symbol are registered trademarks of BBE Sound, Inc.
- *iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.*

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies: Graphic EQ: 63 Hz, 125 Hz, 250 Hz, 500 Hz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, 4 kHz, 8 kHz, 12.5 kHz (9 bands) Parametric EQ: 3 bands (Band 1/2/3): 20 Hz, 25 Hz, 31.5 Hz, 40 Hz, 50 Hz, 63 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 125 Hz, 160 Hz, 200 Hz, 250 Hz, 315 Hz, 400 Hz, 500 Hz, 630 Hz, 800 Hz, 1 kHz, 1.2 kHz, 1.6 kHz, 2 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 3.2 kHz, 4 kHz, 5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 8 kHz, 10 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 16 kHz, 20 kHz (31 frequencies)	
		Level:	±10 dB
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Level/Impedance:	Line-In:	1.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Line-Out:	5.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
	Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:		LINE IN, CD changer

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/65 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:	Compact disc player	
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		98 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		102 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

CD PLAYER SECTION	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

SD CARD	Format:		FAT 12/16
	Storage:		8 MB – 512 MB
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 192 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

USB MEMORY	Format:		FAT 12/16/32
	Storage:		Less than 4 GB (1 partition type)
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	Max. Current:		Less than 500 mA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
			MPEG-2.5: 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	5 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	8 kHz – 48 kHz

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 162 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.7 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Ada MASALAH dengan cara pengoperasian?

Setel kembali unit Anda

Lihat halaman mengenai Bagaimana mereset unit anda

JVC

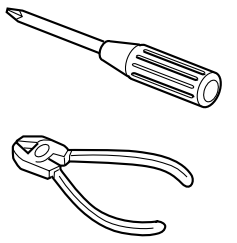
EN, IN

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0206DTSMDTJEIN

KD-SH1000

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual Pemasangan/Penyambungan



GET0365-009A
[UN]

0206DTSMDTJEIN
EN, IN

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

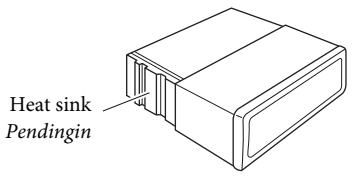
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

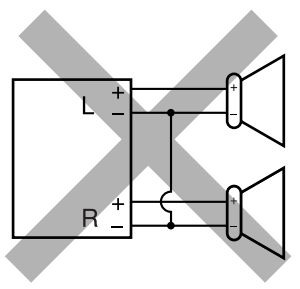
Notes:

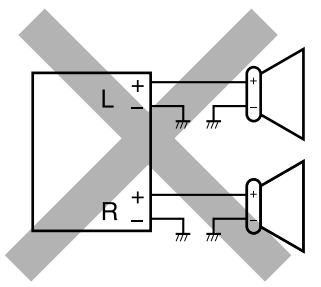
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.

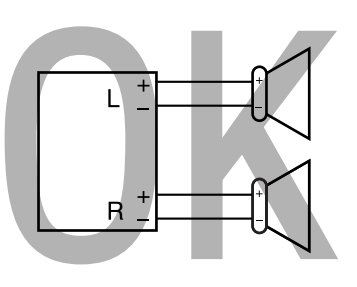


PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



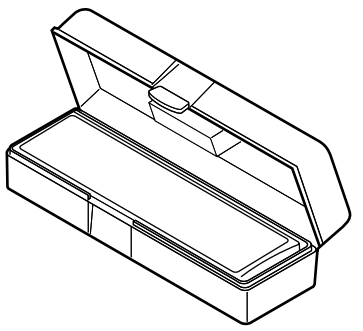




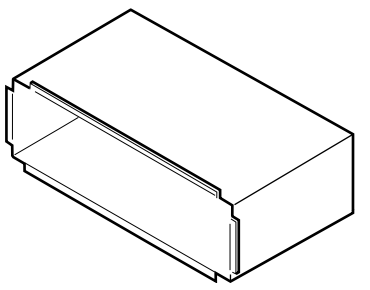
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

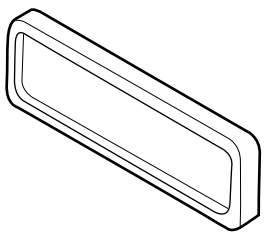
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Kotak keras/Panel kontrol



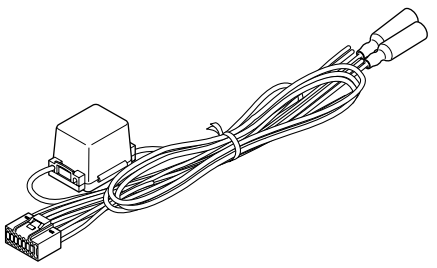
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Selongsong



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Plat rapi



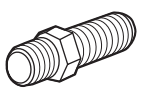
Ⓔ
Power cord
Kabel power



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Perapat sambungan (ø5)

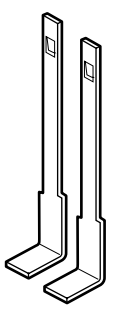
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Mur kunci (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
Baut bingkai (M5 × 20 mm)

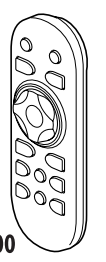


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Bantalan karet

Ⓙ
Handles
Pegangan-pegangan



Ⓚ
Remote controller
Pengontrol jauh



Ⓛ
Battery
Baterai

INDONESIA

Alat penerima ini didisain untuk beroperasi hanya pada **12 V DC, sistem listrik tanah NEGATIVE.** *Jika kendaraan anda tidak memiliki sistem ini, sebuah pembalik tegangan diperlukan, yang mana dapat dibeli di penyalur-penyalur audio mobil JVC.*

PERINGATAN

Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, kami menyarankan anda memutuskan sambungan terminal negatif baterai dan membuat semua sambungan-sambungan listrik sebelum memasang alat penerima.

- **Pastikan untuk mentanahkan alat penerima ini ke casis mobil kembali setelah pemasangan.**

Catatan:

- *Ganti sekring dengan voltase yang sudah ditetapkan. Jika sekring sering meledak, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC anda.*
- *Disarankan untuk menghubungkan speaker-speaker dengan maksimum power lebih dari 50 W (keduanya di belakang dan di depan, dengan sebuah impedansi* **4 Ω sampai 8 Ω***). Jika maksimum power kurang dari 50 W, ganti pengaturan "Amp Gain" ("PENAMBAH PENGUAT") untuk mencegah speaker-speaker dari kerusakan (lihat halaman 21 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).*
- *Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, tutup ujung-ujung terminal-terminal TIDAK DIGUNAKAN dengan pita isolasi.*
- *Pendingin menjadi sangat panas setelah digunakan. Hati-hati untuk tidak menyentuhnya ketika memindahkan alat penerima ini.*

TINDAKAN-TINDAKAN PENCEGAHAN pada suplai power dan sambungan-sambungan speaker:

- **JANGAN sambungkan ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke baterai mobil; sebaliknya, alat penerima tersebut akan secara serius rusak.**
- *SEBELUM menyambung ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke speaker-speaker, cek perkabelan speaker dalam mobil anda.*

Daftar bagian-bagian untuk pemasangan dan penyambungan

Bagian-bagian berikut disediakan untuk alat penerima ini. Jika ada item yang hilang, segera hubungi dealer audio mobil JVC anda.

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

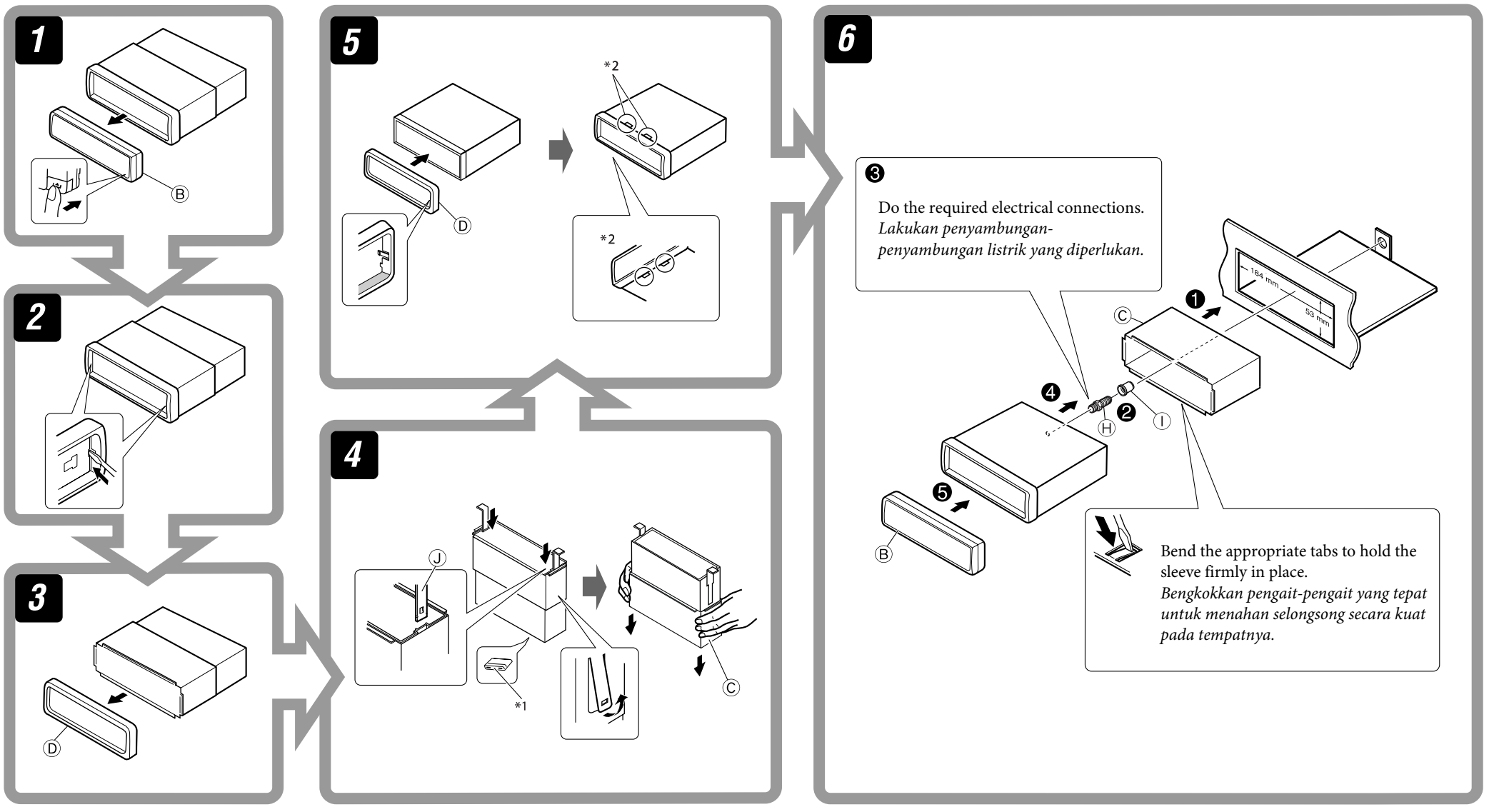
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

PEMASANGAN (BINGKAI-DALAM DASH)

Ilustrasi berikut menunjukkan sebuah tipe pemasangan. Jika anda mempunyai suatu pertanyaan atau informasi yang diperlukan mengenai alat-alat pemasangan, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC atau sebuah perusahaan yang mensuplai alat-alat.

- *Jika anda tidak yakin bagaimana memasang alat penerima ini dengan benar, biarkan dipasang dengan teknisi yang berkualitas.*



*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*1 *Ketika anda memberdirikan alat penerima, hati-hati untuk tidak merusak sekring di belakang.*

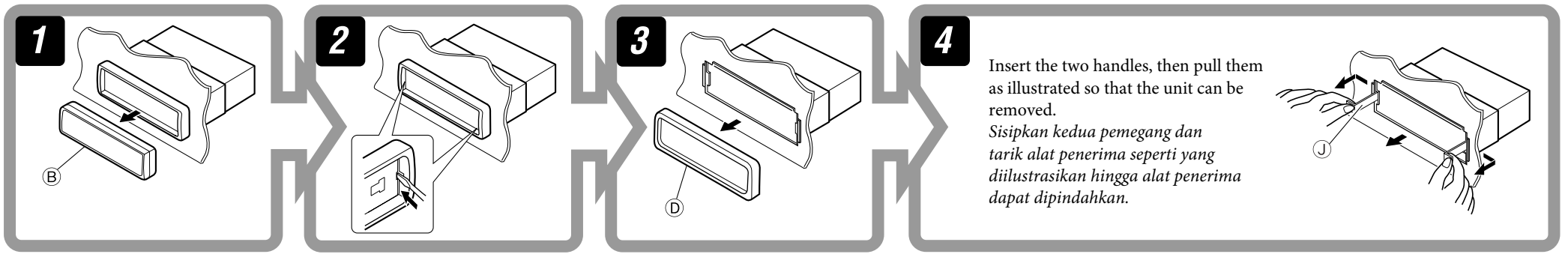
*2 Fit the protrusions outside the unit.
*2 *Pasangkan tonjolan keluar di sebelah luar radio.*

Removing the unit

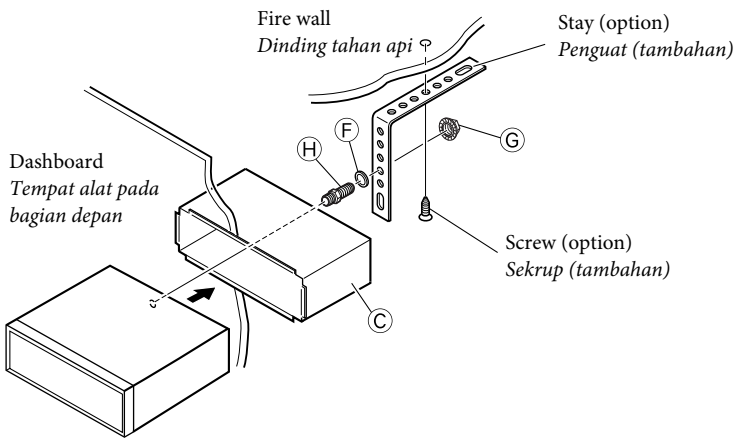
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

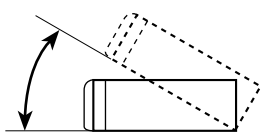
Memindahkan alat penerima

Sebelum memindahkan alat penerima, lepaskan seksi belakang.



When using the optional stay / Ketika menggunakan penguat tambahan

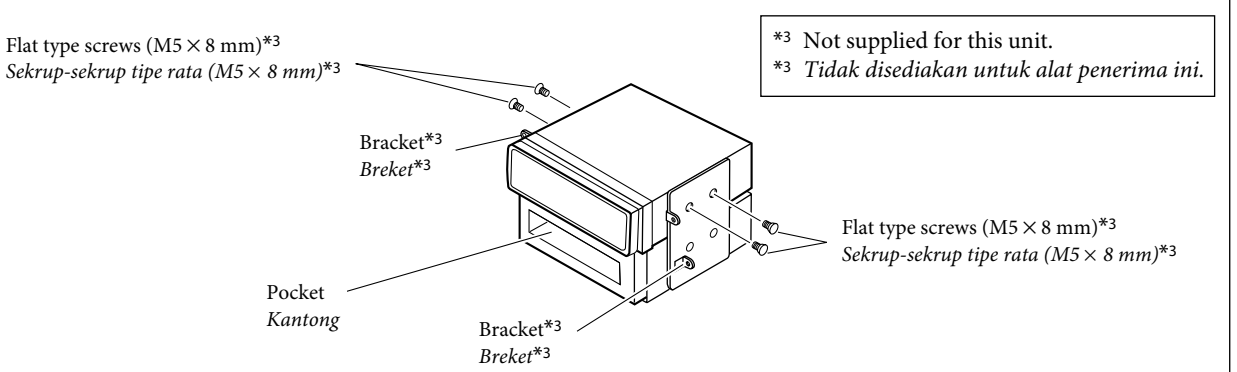




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
Pasang penerima pada suatu sudut kurang dari 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Ketika memasang alat penerima tanpa menggunakan selongsong

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
Dalam sebuah kereta Toyota misalnya, pertama pindahkan radio mobil dan pasang alat penerima tersebut ke dalam tempatnya.

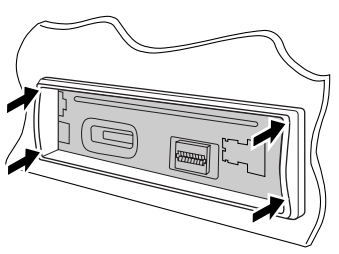


*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 *Tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini.*

Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Catatan : *Ketika memasang alat penerima pada breket bingkai, pastikan untuk menggunakan sekrup-skerup panjang–8 mm. Jika sekrup yang lebih panjang digunakan, maka dapat merusak alat penerima.*

Caution when installing / Pasangkan tonjolan keluar di sebelah luar radio



Fit the unit into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.

- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration).

Pasangkan radio ke dalam selongsong dengan menggunakan empat sudut dari plat.

- *JANGAN menekan panel (yang berbayang di dalam ilustrasi).*

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

SAMBUNGAN-SAMBUNGAN LISTRIK

A Typical connections / Ciri khas sambungan-sambungan

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

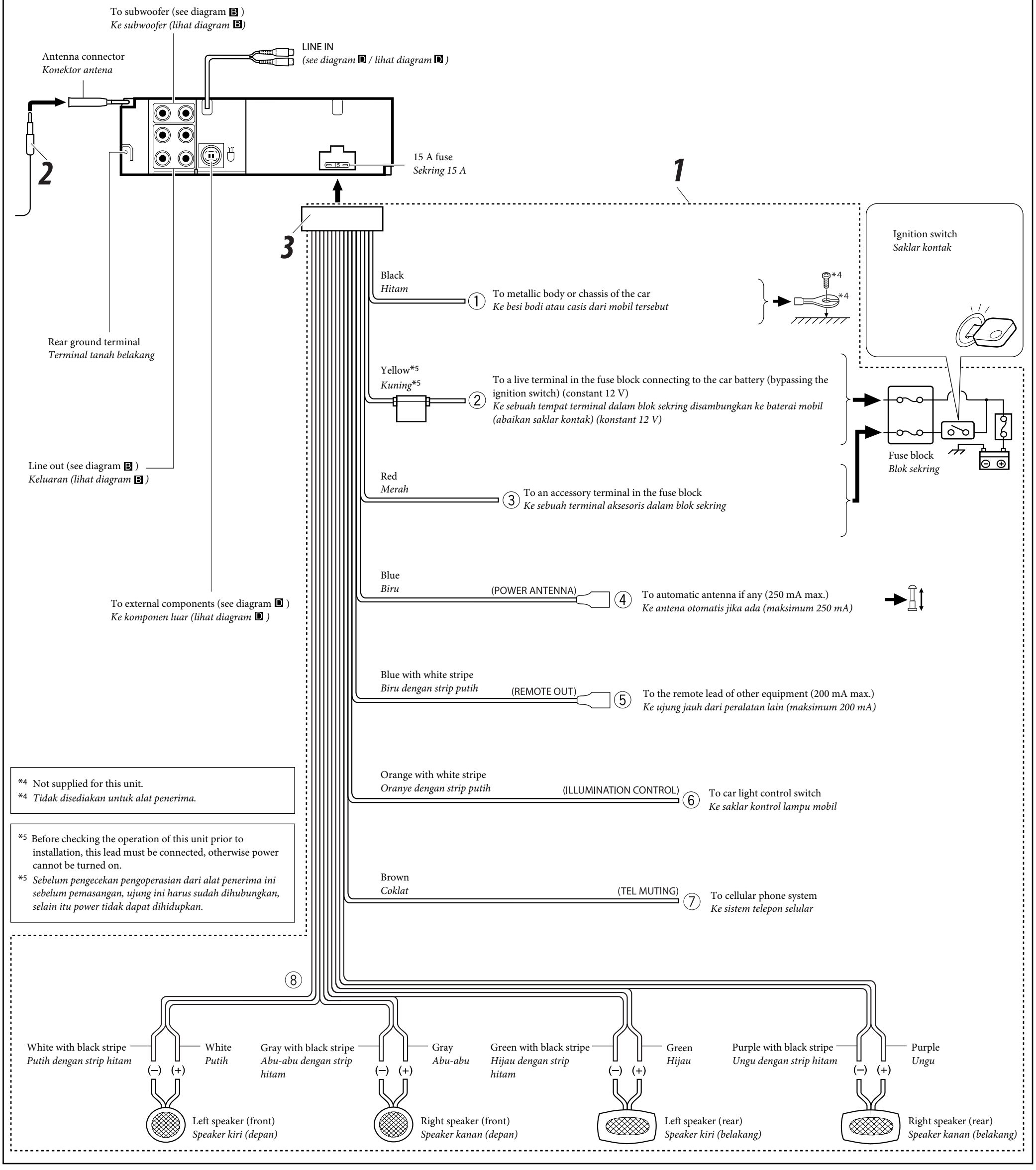
1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2 Connect the antenna cord.
3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

If you have installed 3-way network speaker system in your car, see diagram C for speaker connection.

Sebelum penyambungan: *Cek perkabelan dalam mobil dengan hati-hati. Penyambungan yang tidak benar mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan serius pada alat penerima.*
Ujung dari kabel power dan beberapa konektor dari bodi mobil mungkin berbeda dalam warna.

1 *Sambungkan ujung berwarna dari kabel power dalam urutan spesifikasi pada ilustrasi di bawah.*
2 *Sambungkan kabel antena.*
3 *Akhirnya sambungkan dudukan kabel ke alat penerima.*

Jika Anda telah memasang sistem speaker 3-arah di dalam mobil Anda, lihat diagram C untuk penyambungan speaker.



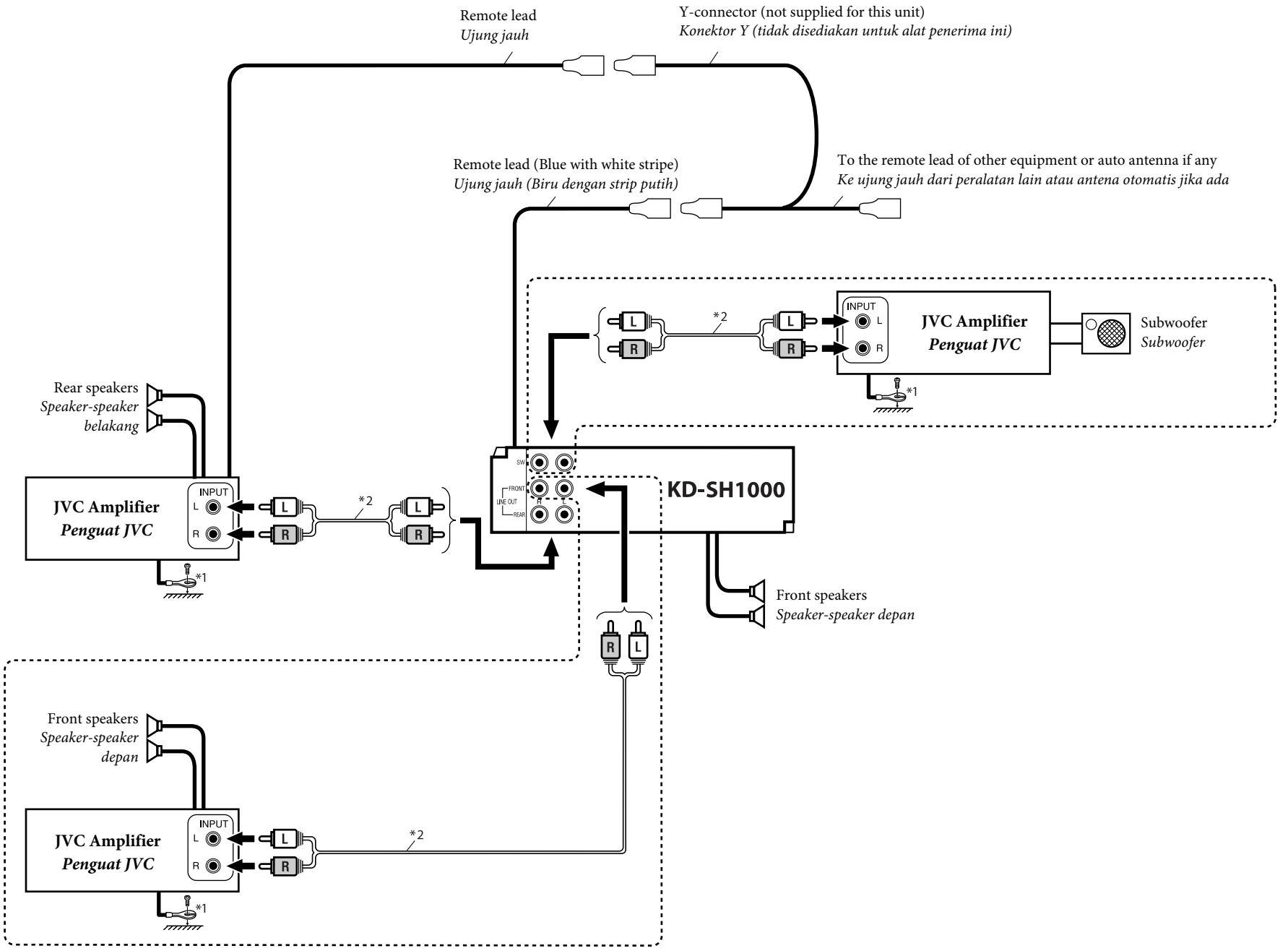
*4 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 *Tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima.*

*5 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
*5 *Sebelum pengecekan pengoperasian dari alat penerima ini sebelum pemasangan, ujung ini harus sudah dihubungkan, selain itu power tidak dapat dihidupkan.*

B Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Penyambungan penguat eksternal dan/atau subwoofer

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  - **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
  - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
  - The line output level of this unit is kept high to maintain the hi-fi sounds reproduced from this unit. When connecting an external amplifier to this unit, turn down the gain control on the external amplifier to obtain the best performance from this unit.

Anda dapat menyambungkan penguat untuk meningkatkan sistem stereo mobil anda.
- *Sambungkan ujung jauh (biru dengan strip putih) ke ujung jauh dari peralatan lain sehingga dapat dikontrol melalui alat penerima ini.*
- **Hanya untuk penguat saja:**
  - **Putuskan sambungan speaker-speaker dari alat penerima ini, sambungkan ini ke penguat. Biarkan ujung speaker dari alat penerima ini tidak digunakan.**
  - *Anda dapat mematikan penguat yang terpasang tetap di dalam dan mengirim sinyal audio hanya ke penguat eksternal untuk mendapatkan suara yang jelas dan mencegah bertambahnya panas di dalam radio (lihat halaman 21 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).*
  - *Level jalur output dari alat penerima ini tetap tinggi untuk memelihara suara hi-fi yang telah di hasilkan dari alat penerima ini. Ketika menyambung sebuah penguat eksternal ke alat penerima ini, kecilkan kontrol gain pada penguat eksternal untuk mendapatkan hasil terbaik dari alat penerima ini.*



*1 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*1 *Pasangkan dengan kuat kabel tanah ke bodi besi atau ke casis dari mobil—pada tempat yang tidak dilapisi cat (jika dilapisi cat, hilangkan cat sebelum memasang kabel). Kegagalan melakukan ini mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan pada alat penerima tersebut.*

*2 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*2 *Kabel sinyal (tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini)*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

PEMECAHAN MASALAH

- **Sekring meledak.**
* *Apakah ujung-ujung merah dan hitam tersambung dengan benar?*

- **Power tidak dapat dihidupkan.**
* *Apakah ujung kuning sudah tersambung?*

- **Tidak ada suara dari speaker.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker terhubung pendek?*

- **Suara terdistorsi.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?*
* *Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?*

- **Berisik yang mengganggu suara-suara.**
* *Apakah terminal tanahan belakang tersambung ke casis mobil menggunakan kabel-kabel terpendek dan tertebal?*

- **Alat penerima menjadi panas.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?*
* *Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?*

- **Alat penerima ini tidak bekerja secara keseluruhan.**
* Apakah anda sudah reset (memasang kembali) alat penerima anda?

C Speaker connections for 3-way network speaker system / Penyambungan speaker untuk sistem speaker 3-arah

You can enjoy a world of "pure audio" in your car by connecting 3-way network speaker system (high-range/mid-range/subwoofer).

Anda dapat menikmati sebuah dunia dari "audio murni" dalam mobil Anda dengan menyambungkan sistem speaker 3-arah (cakupan-tinggi/cakupan-sedang/subwoofer).

IMPORTANT:

If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following.

- Connect the speaker system as illustrated below.
- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For details about the setting, see pages 18 and 19 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

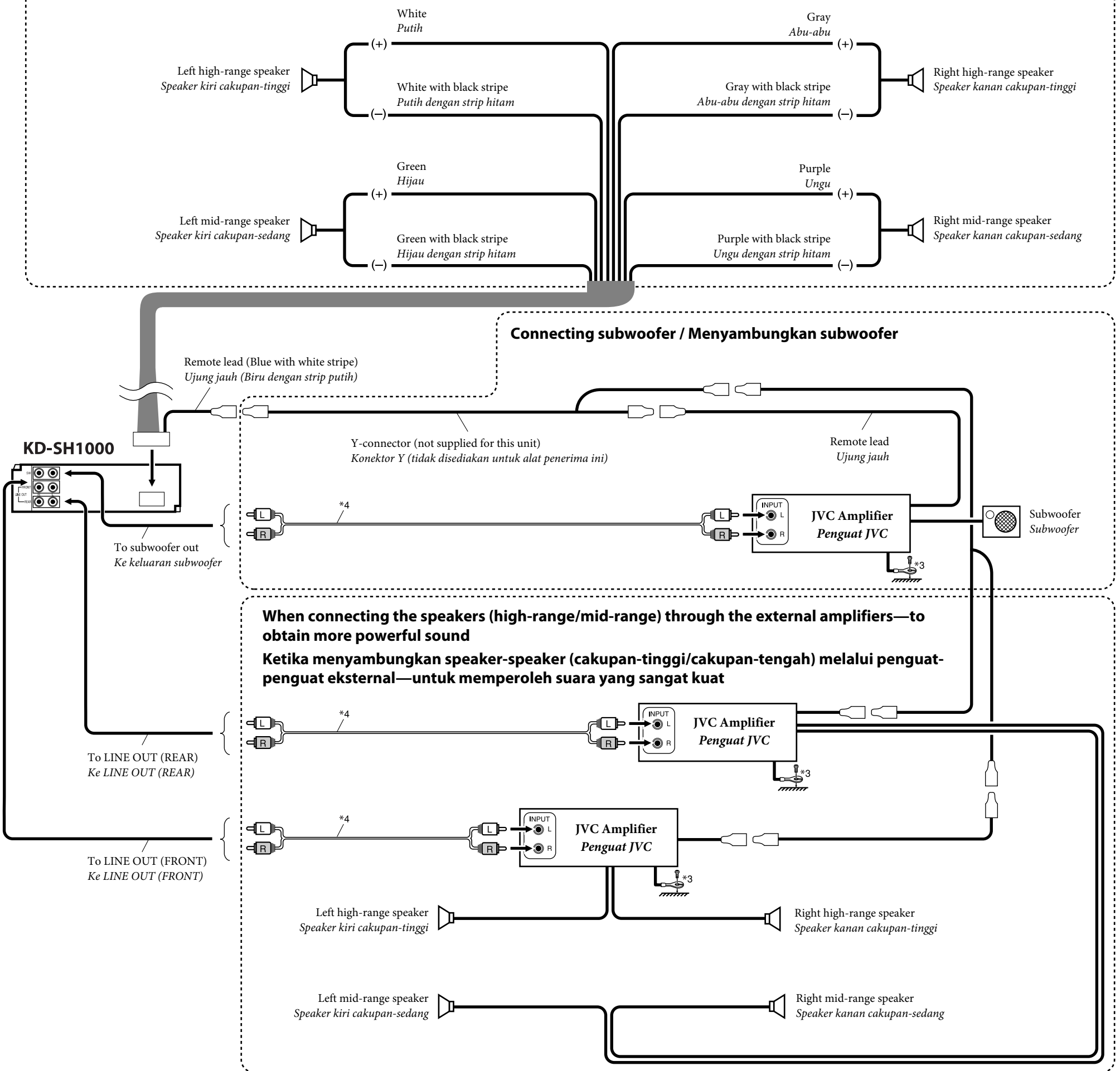
PENTING:

Jika Anda telah memasang sistem speaker 3-arah dalam mobil Anda, pastikan hal-hal berikut:

- *Sambungkan sistem speaker, seperti diilustrasikan di bawah.*
- *Sebelum menggunakan sistem, aktifkan jaringan seberangan (crossover network) dan atur awal frekuensi-frekuensi pancung yang tepat untuk HPF/LPF (khususnya untuk HPF); sebaliknya, hal tersebut dapat merusak speaker-speaker.*
- *Untuk lebih jelas mengenai pengaturan, lihat halaman 18 dan 19 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.*

When connecting the speakers (high-range/mid-range) through the speaker output

Ketika menyambungkan speaker-speaker (cakupan-tinggi/cakupan-sedang) melalui keluaran speaker



*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*3 *Pasangkan dengan kuat kabel tanah ke bodi besi atau ke casis dari mobil—pada tempat yang tidak dilapisi cat (jika dilapisi cat, hilangkan cat sebelum memasang kabel). Kegagalan melakukan ini mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan pada alat penerima tersebut.*

*4 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*4 *Kabel sinyal (tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini)*

D Connecting the external components / Menyambung komponen eksternal

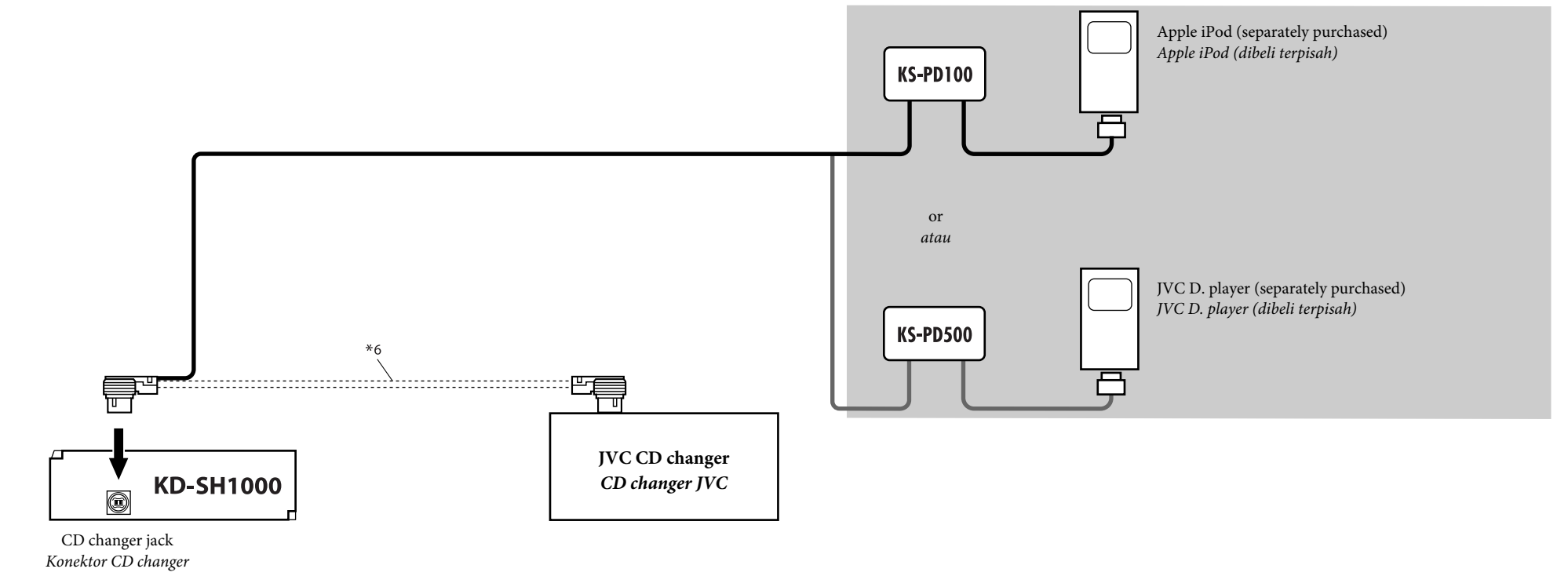
CD changer, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / CD changer, Apple iPod® atau JVC D. player

• Set "Changer" for the external input setting (See page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Aturlah "Changer" untuk pengaturan input eksternal (Lihat halaman 21 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.)

You can connect these components as illustrated below. The iPod*5 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

*Anda bisa menyambungkan komponen-komponen ini seperti yang diilustrasikan di bawah. iPod*5 atau D. player bisa disambungkan dengan mengunakan adaptor antarmuka (tidak disediakan)—KS-PD100 (untuk iPod) atau KS-PD500 (untuk D. player).*

CAUTION / PERINGATAN:
- Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
- *Sebelum menyambungkan komponen eksternal, pastikan bahwa alat penerima sudah dimatikan.*

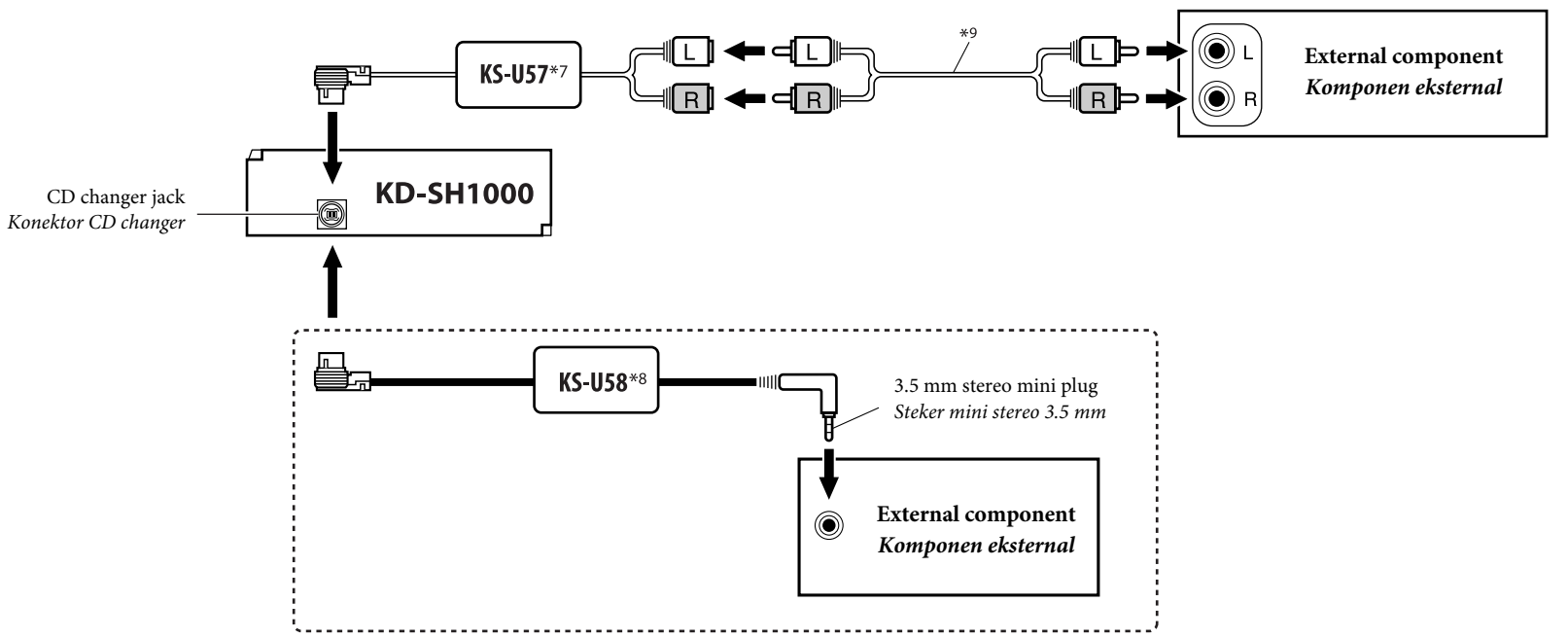


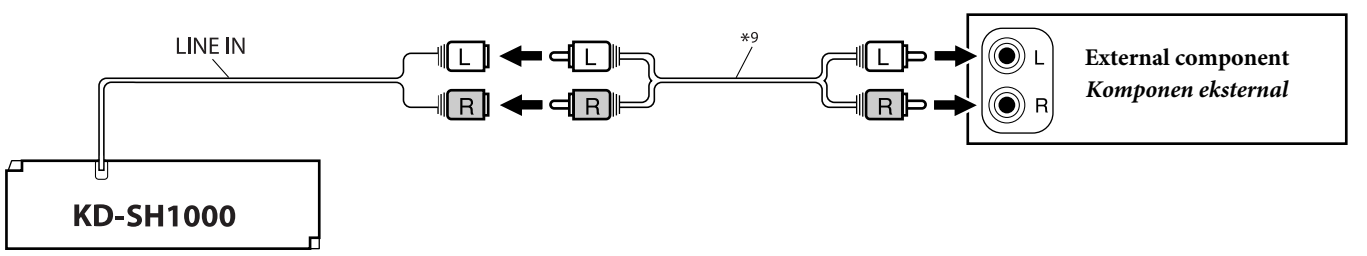
*5 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*5 *iPod adalah merek dagang dari Apple Computer, Inc., terdaftar di Amerika Serikat dan di negara-negara lain.*

*6 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer
*6 *Penyambung sinyal disediakan untuk CD changer anda*

Other external component / Komponen eksternal lainnya

• Set "Ext In" for the external input setting (See page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Aturlah "Ext In" untuk pengaturan input eksternal (Lihat halaman 21 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.)





*7 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*7 *Adapter Input Saluran KS-U57 (tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini)*

*8 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)
*8 *Adapter Input AUX KS-U58 (tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini)*

*9 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*9 *Kabel sinyal (tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini)*

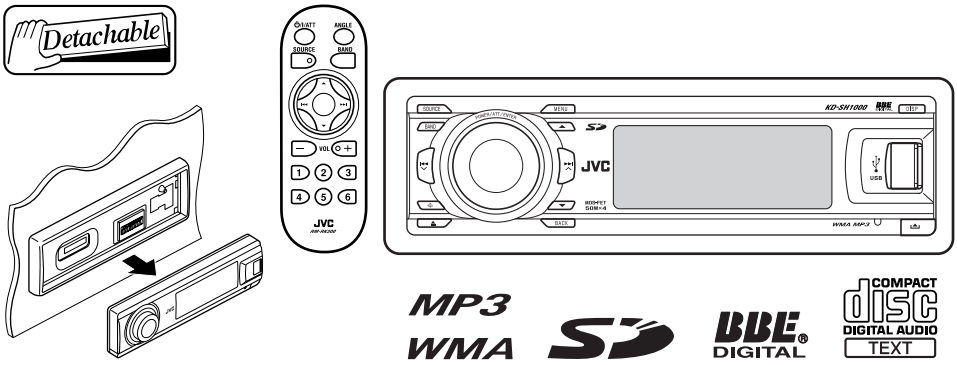
JVC

ENGLISH

中文

CD RECEIVER KD-SH1000

CD 收音組合機 KD-SH1000



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
取消屏幕演示功能，參閱第 8 頁。

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
有關安裝和連接方法，分別參閱操作手冊。

INSTRUCTIONS
使用說明書

GET0365-005A
[UT]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	**ADVARSEL :** Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	**VARNING :** Synlig och osynlig laserstrålning när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	**VARO :** Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Välitä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

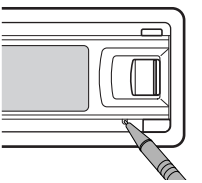
Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Notice:

The display window built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.

How to reset your unit

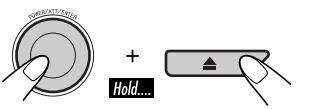


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

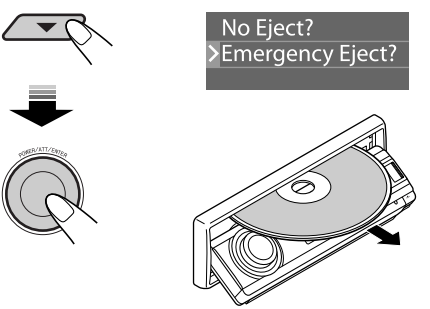
How to forcibly eject a disc

- If an SD card is inserted, eject the SD card first (see page 11).

1



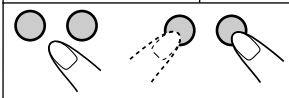
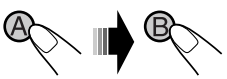
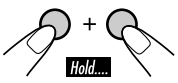
2



- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*

How to read this manual

- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations in the table below.
- Some related tips and notes are explained in "More about this unit" (see pages 27 – 31).

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press Ⓐ, then Ⓑ.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.
	Press and hold both buttons at the same time.

The following marks are used to indicate...

: Built-in CD player operations.

: External CD changer operations.

: SD player operations.

: External USB memory operations.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

Control panel 5

Remote controller — RM-RK300 6

Getting started..... 7
- Basic operations 7

Radio operations 8

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations 11
- Playing a disc in the unit 11
- Playing discs in the CD changer 11
- Playing from an SD card..... 11
- Playing from a USB memory..... 12

Sound adjustments..... 15
- Selecting the DSP modes (DSP) 15
- Using the equalizer—EQ 16
- Activating crossover network 18
- Setting the sound modes—SEL 18

General settings — PSM 20

Title assignment 23

iPod®/D. player operations 24

Other external component operations... 26

Maintenance 26

More about this unit 27

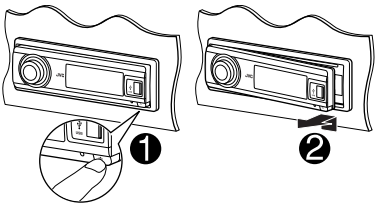
Troubleshooting..... 32

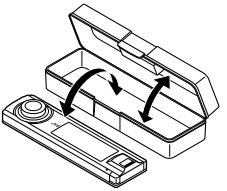
Specifications..... 36

ENGLISH

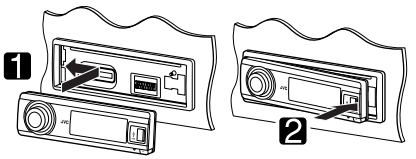
How to detach/attach the control panel

Detaching...



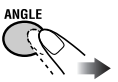


Attaching...

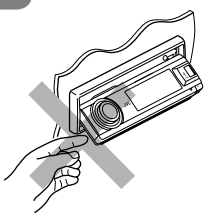


How to change the control panel angle

When using the remote controller



Caution:



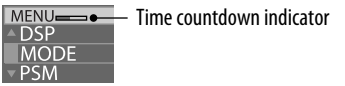
How to enter the various menus

The main menu contains seven menus (MODE, PSM, SEL, TITLE, BBE, EQ, DSP).

- If no operation is done for about 5 seconds, menu screen is canceled.

1

2 Select a menu you want.



3 Enter the selected menu.

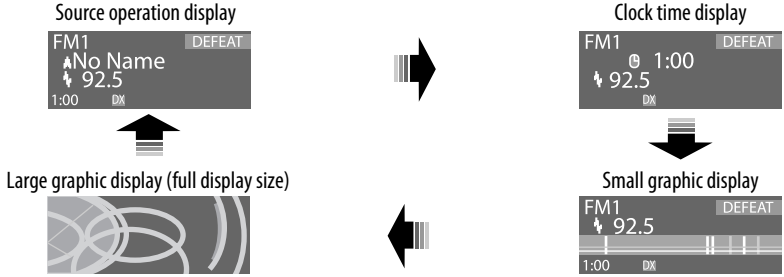
- To go back to the previous screen or exit the MENU screen, press BACK repeatedly.

4 Operate as instructed on the screen.

- To go back to the MENU screen, press MENU.

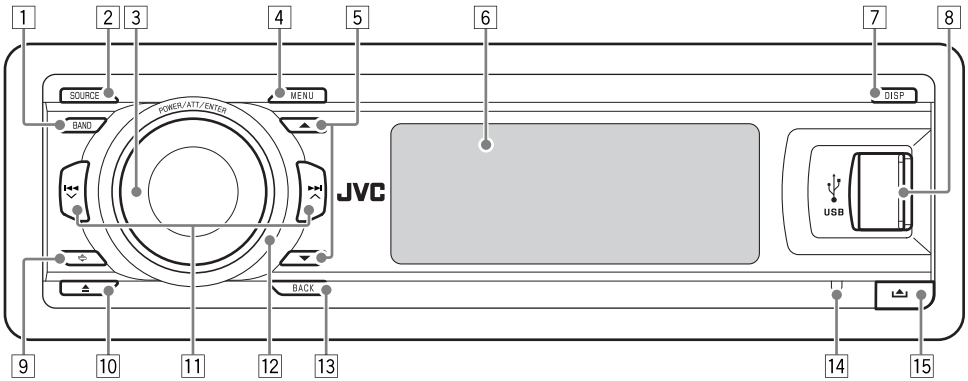
How to change the display information and patterns

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Control panel

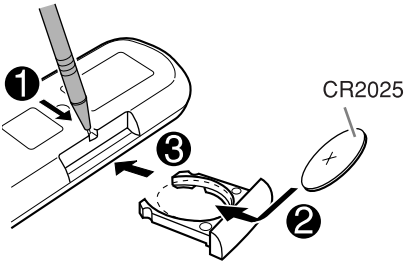
Parts identification



1 BAND button
2 SOURCE button
3 • Control dial
• POWER/ATT (attenuator)/ENTER button
4 MENU button
5 ▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons
6 Display window
7 DISP (display) button
8 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input terminal
9 (angle) button
10 ⏏ (eject) button
11 ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧ buttons
12 Remote sensor
DO NOT expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).
13 BACK button
14 Reset button
15 (control panel release) button

Remote controller — RM-RK300

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)

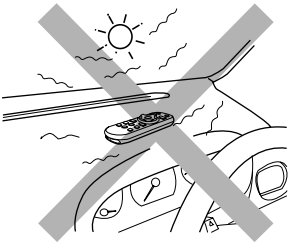


Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.

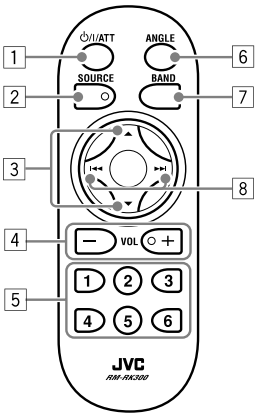
Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accident.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
  - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
  - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
  - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
  - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Caution:



Main elements and features



1 **⏻/I/ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button**
- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 **SOURCE button**
Selects the source.

3 **▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Changes the preset stations.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the folders.
- **While listening to an Apple iPod® or a JVC D. player:**
  – Pauses/stops or resumes playback with ▼.
  – Enters the main menu with ▲. (Now ▲/▼/|◄◄/►►| work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

4 **VOL (volume) + / – buttons**
Adjusts the volume level.

5 **Number buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Selects the preset station if pressed, or store a station if pressed and held.
- F**or CD/CD Text:** Selects the tracks.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Selects the folders.
- **For CD changer:** Selects the discs.

6 **ANGLE button**
Adjusts the control panel angle.

7 **BAND button**
Selects the band.

8 **|◄◄ / ►►| buttons**
- **For FM/AM:** Searches for stations if pressed, or skips frequencies after pressed and held.
- **For CD/CD Text/MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the tracks if pressed, or fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
- **While listening to an iPod or a D. player (in menu selecting mode):**
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

* ▲ : *Returns to the previous menu.*
▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

Getting started

Activates or deactivates crossover network (see page 18) before turning on the power.

Basic operations

1 Turn on the power.

2

FM/AM → CD* → SD* → USB* → CD-CH*/iPod*/D. player* (or **EXT-IN**) **→ LINE-IN →** (back to the beginning)

* *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

3 For FM/AM tuner

4 Adjust the volume.

5 Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

ENGLISH

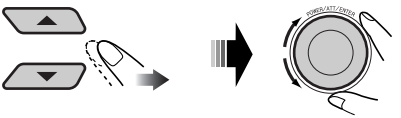
To drop the volume in a moment (ATT) To restore the sound, press it again.	
To turn off the power	

Basic settings

- See also "General settings — PSM" on pages 20 – 22.

1 Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).

2



1 **Canceling the display demonstrations**
Select "Demo," then "Off."

2 **Setting the clock**
Select "Clock H" (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select "Clock M" (minute), then adjust the minute.
Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."

3 Finish the procedure.

To check the current clock time while the power is turned off

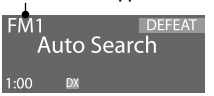
Radio operations

❶

❷

❸ **Start searching for a station.**

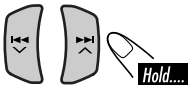
Selected band appears.

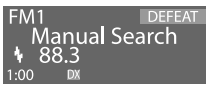


When a station is received, searching stops.
To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

In step ❸ above...

1 



2 **Select a desired station frequency.**

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2

3

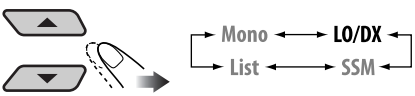
4

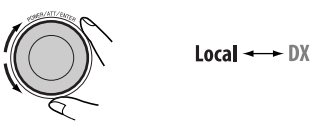
MO indicator lights up.
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure and select "Off" in step **3**. The MO indicator goes off.

Tuning in to FM stations with strong signals only—LO (local)/DX (Distance-Extreme)

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 

3 

4

DX indicator goes off and LO indicator lights up.
Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure and select "DX" in step **3**. The LO indicator goes off and DX indicator lights up.

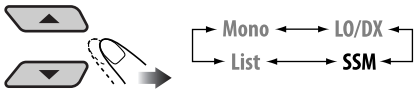
Storing stations in memory

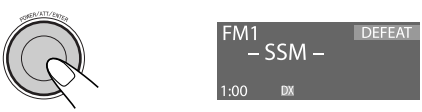
You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

1 Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store into.

2 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

3 

4 

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1

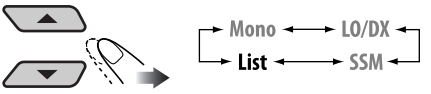
2

3 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).
- If you hold down ▲/▼, the Preset Station List appears (go to step **6**).

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

4



5

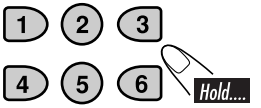
6 Select a preset number.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by turning the control dial.

7 Store the station.

When using the remote controller

After tuning in to a station you want to preset...



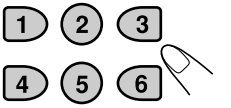
Listening to a preset station

1

2

When using the remote controller

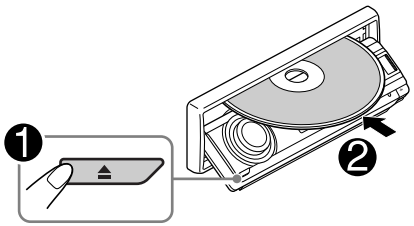
Directly select the preset number.



Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Playing a disc in the unit

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.



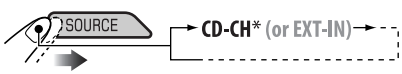
To stop play and eject the disc

Note:
If a USB memory is attached to the unit, you cannot eject the disc. "Please Eject USB" flashes on the display. If this happens, detach the USB memory, then, press ⏏ button again.

Playing discs in the CD changer

All discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

- Ejecting the magazine will also stop playback.

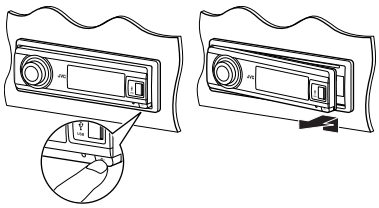


* *If you have changed the external input setting to "Ext In" (see page 21), you cannot select the CD changer.*

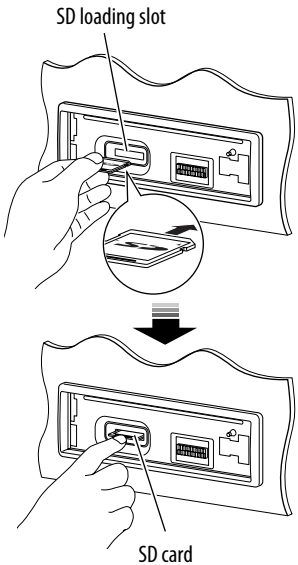
Playing from an SD card

Before detaching the control panel, turn off the power.

❶



❷



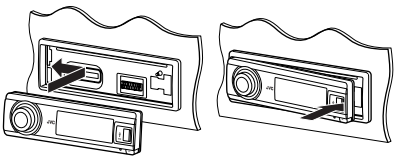
Press in the SD card until you hear a clicking sound.

To eject the SD card, press the SD card again.

- Press the SD card softly (do not release your finger quickly); otherwise, the SD card may pop out from the unit.

Continued on the next page

3 **Attach the control panel.**



4

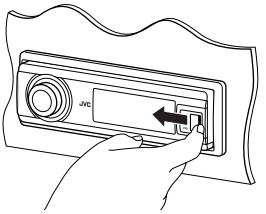
- The control panel goes back to the previous position.

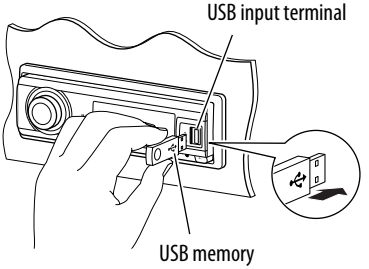
Playback starts automatically if tracks are recorded.

Playing from a USB memory

This unit can play MP3/WMA tracks stored in a USB memory.
All tracks in the USB memory will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

- Removing the USB memory will also stop playback.

1 

2 

To detach the USB memory, straightly pull it out from the unit.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the SD card/USB memory when it might hinder your safety driving.
- Make sure all important data have been backed up to avoid losing the data.

If an SD card or USB memory has been attached...

Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different SD card or USB memory is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

About MP3 and WMA tracks

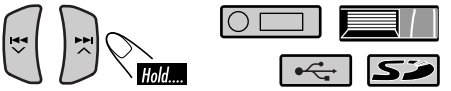
MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."

About the CD changer

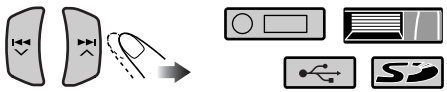
It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can also connect MP3-incompatible CD changers. However, these units are not compatible with MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the CH-X99, CH-X100, and KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.
- You cannot play any WMA disc in the CD changer.
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

To fast-forward or reverse the track



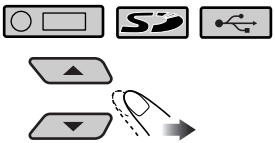
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB)

For MP3 tracks:

For WMA tracks:



- Holding the buttons can display the Disc List ( ) and Folder List (/ /), see the following.

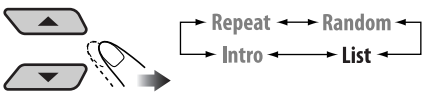
Other main functions

Selecting a disc/folder/track on the list

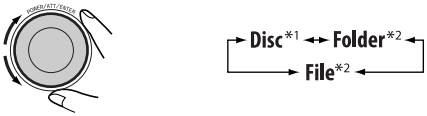
- This function is not available for an audio CD or a CD Text when the source is "CD."

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2



3 **Select a list type.**



*1 *Selectable only when the source is "CD-CH."*

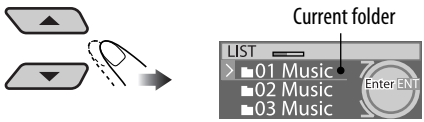
*2 *Appears only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB.*

4 **Confirm the selection.**

The selected list appears on the display.

- You can move to the other list by turning the control dial.

5 **Select a disc/folder/file from the list.**



Ex.: When "Folder" is selected on step **3**

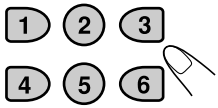
Only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB:
If you select the current disc/folder (highlighted on the screen), its Folder/File List appears.

6 **Starts playback.**

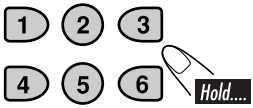
When using the remote controller

- To directly select a disc ( )
- To directly select a track of an audio CD or a CD Text ( )
- To directly select an MP3/WMA folder (/ /)

To select a number from 1 – 6:



To select a number from 7 (1) – 12 (6):

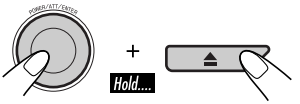


For MP3/WMA folders:
It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

1



2 After making sure "No Eject?" is selected...

- "No Eject" flashes, and the disc cannot be ejected.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure after making sure "Eject OK?" is selected.

- "Eject OK" flashes on the display.

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.

3 Select one of the items (see the following table).

4 Finish the procedure.

Intro	Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...
Track	: All tracks of the current playback media. [FLDR]
Folder*1	: First track of all folders of the current playback media. [F INT]
Disc*2	: First track of all the inserted discs. [DISC INT]
Off	: Cancels.

Repeat	Plays repeatedly
Track	: The current track. [FLDR]
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder. [F RPT]
Disc*2	: All tracks of the inserted discs. [DISC RPT]
Off	: Cancels.

Random	Plays at random
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. [F RND]
Disc	: All tracks of the current disc. [DISC RND]
All*3	: All tracks of the inserted discs/ media. [ALL RND]
Off	: Cancels.

*1 *Only while playing a media (MP3/WMA/SD/USB).*

*2 *Only when the source is CD-CH.*

*3 *Only when the source is CD-CH, SD, or USB.*

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes (DSP)

You can create a more acoustic sound field such as in a theater, hall, etc.

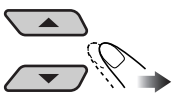
- When crossover network (see page 18) is activated, the DSP mode is fixed to "Defeat."

DSP modes

Defeat (No acoustic effect is applied), Theater, Hall, Club, Dome, Studio, V.Cancel (Voice Cancel: Reduces the vocal sounds. Good for mastering your favorite songs—Karaoke.)

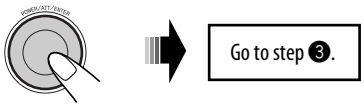
1 **Enter the DSP menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select one of the DSP modes.**



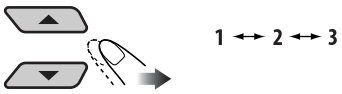
- **To finish the procedure**

- **To adjust the effect level**



For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the effect level is not adjustable.

3 **Adjust the effect level.**



- **To finish the procedure**

To make more precise settings, see the following.

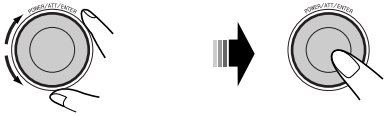
To cancel the acoustic effect, select "Defeat" in step 2.

Precise settings for the DSP modes

1 **Select a DSP mode.**

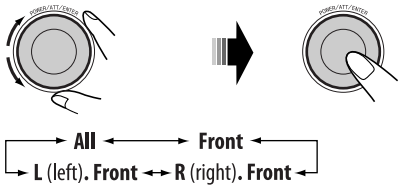
2 **Select the number of the built-in speakers.**

- For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the speaker number is fixed to "4ch."

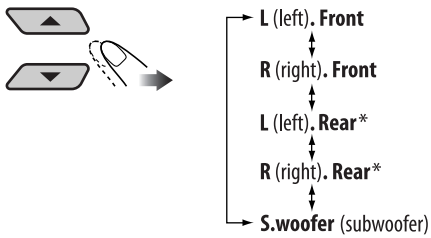


2ch (channel) ↔ **4ch** (channel)

3 **Select your listening seat position.**



4 **Select the speaker to be adjusted.**



* *Appears only when "4ch" is selected in step* **2**.

Continued on the next page

5 Select the distance between the selected speaker and the seat.

Once you have set the distance, it is memorized for each seat position selected in step **3**. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select the seat position.

To change the measuring unit

6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to adjust the distance for the other speakers.

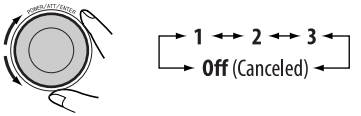
7 Finish the procedure.

Activating BBE Digital

BBE Digital is a digital processing method to restore the brilliance and clarity of the original live sound in recording, broadcasts, etc. When a speaker reproduces sound, it introduces frequency-dependent phase shifting, causing high-frequency sounds to take longer to reach the ear than low frequency sounds.
BBE Digital adjusts the phase relationship between the low, mid, and high frequencies by adding a progressively longer delay time to the low and mid frequencies, so that all frequencies reach the listener's ears at the proper time. A more brilliance and clearer sound is heard.

1 Enter the BBE menu (see page 4).

2 Select the effect level.



3 Finish the procedure.

Using the equalizer—EQ

You can adjust the sound equalization patterns to your preference by using either Graphic EQ or Parametric EQ.

- Adjust the equalizer to match the reproducible frequency range of the connected speakers; otherwise, the adjustments may not be effective.

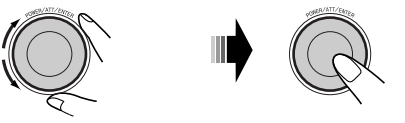
Selecting preset sound modes—Graphic EQ

Sound modes

Flat (No sound mode is applied), HardRock, R&B (Rhythm&Blues), Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User 1, User 2, User 3

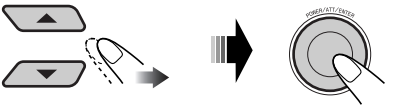
1 Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).

2



Graphic ↔ P.metric

3 Select a sound mode.

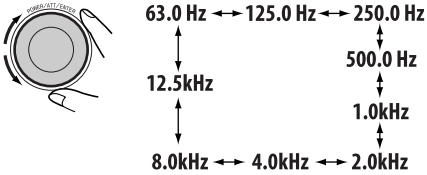


4 Finish the procedure.

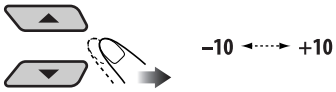
Storing your own sound modes

1 **Select a sound mode.**

2 **Select a frequency band.**



3 **Adjust the enhanced level for the selected frequency band.**



4 **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other frequency bands.**

5

6 **Select one of the user modes.**

7 **Store the adjustments.**

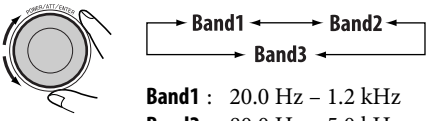
Adjusting Parametric EQ

1 **Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).**

2

Graphic ↔ P.metric

3 **Select a band.**



Band1 : 20.0 Hz – 1.2 kHz
Band2 : 80.0 Hz – 5.0 kHz
Band3 : 315.0 Hz – 20 kHz

4 **Adjust the enhanced level for the selected band.**

–10 ↔ +10

5 **Select the frequency.**

- Band 1/2/3 are required to be preset at least 5 steps (frequencies) away from each other. (Only selectable frequencies are shown on the display.)

6 **Select the band width (Q).**

- To adjust the other bands, press BACK. Then repeat steps **3** to **6**.

7 **Finish the procedure.**

Once you have made adjustments, it is memorized. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select Parametric EQ.

Activating crossover network

By activating crossover network, you can allocate different frequency range of sound signals to different speakers to match their characteristic.

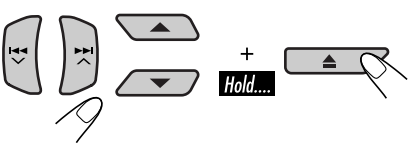
If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following:

- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For 3-way network speaker system, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

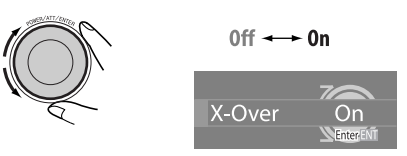
You cannot perform other operations until you finish the following procedure.

While the power is turned off...

1



2



3

- **To cancel the procedure,** press and hold POWER/ATT/ENTER. The power turns off.

4 **Finish the procedure.**

- X-OVER indicator lights up (in sequence with other indicators).

To cancel Crossover, repeat the same procedure. Make sure that "X-Over Off OK?" appears on the display.

- X-OVER indicator goes off.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

1 **Enter the SEL menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select a setting item.**

* *Appears only when crossover network is activated (see left column).*

When selecting "Fad/Bal," "X-Over," or "S.woofer," press POWER/ATT/ENTER to enter its submenu.

3 **Adjust the selected setting item. (See the following for details.)**

- To adjust other SEL settings, press BACK. Then repeat steps 2 and 3.

4 **Finish the procedure.**

To adjust fader and balance—Fad/Bal

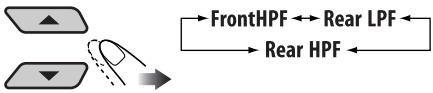
- **Fad (fader)**
  Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.

- **Bal (balance)**
  Adjust the left and right speaker balance.

To adjust reproduced frequency level—X-Over

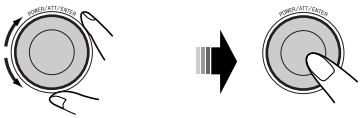
This setting is available only when crossover network (see page 18) is activated.

1 Select a filter.



HPF (Front/Rear)	: Frequencies lower than the selected level are cut-off.
LPF (Rear)	: Frequencies higher than the selected level are cut-off.

2 Select "On" to activate the selected filter.
- If you connect high-range speakers to Front or Rear output, select "On" for the corresponding HPF to prevent the speakers from being damaged.

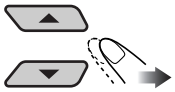


Off ↔ On

3 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected speakers.

1.6kHz – 16.0kHz : Front HPF and Rear LPF
31.5 Hz – 200.0Hz : Rear HPF

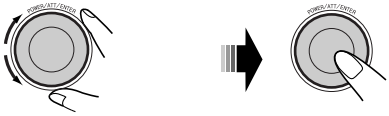
4 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).



–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

To adjust subwoofer output—S.woofer

1 Adjust the output level.



00 ↔ 12

2 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected subwoofer.

31.5 Hz ↔ 200.0 Hz

3 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).

–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

To adjust the input level of each source—Vol Adj

This setting is required for each source except for FM.
Once an adjustment is made, it will be memorized. When you change the source the volume level will automatically increase or decrease according to the adjusted level.

1 Select a source before entering the SEL menu.

2 Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.

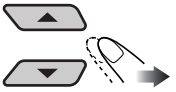
–5 ↔ +5

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 **Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select a PSM item.**



3 **Select or adjust the selected PSM item.**

4 **Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other PSM items if necessary.**

5 **Finish the procedure.**

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Demo Display demonstration	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [8]. : Cancels.
Anime Animation	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: An animation screen appears when you turn on or off the power, change the source, and when you select an EQ, MENU, or DSP. : Cancels.
Clock H Hour adjustment	**1** – **12** (**0** – **23**) [Initial: 1 (1:00AM)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
Clock M Minute adjustment	**00** – **59** [Initial: 00 (1:00AM)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** [Initial] • **24Hours**	: See also page 8 for setting.
Scroll*1	• **Once** [Initial] • **Auto** • **Off**	: Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (in 5-second intervals in between). : Cancels. • Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
Dimmer	• **Auto** [Initial] • **Time Set** • **Off** • **On**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Sets the timer for dimmer, see page 22 for setting. From: Any hour; To: Any hour : Cancels. : Activates dimmer. (Does not work if "Bright" is set to "1.")

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Bright Display brightness	**1** – **10** [Initial: 8]	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible. (If "Dimmer" is set to "On," selecting "1" to "4" takes no effect.)
ID3 Tag Tag display	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
Theme Display theme	• **Large** (**1** [Initial] or **2**) • **Small** (**1** [Initial] or **2**)	: Select the display theme for large graphic display, [5]. See page 22 for setting. : Select the display theme for small graphic display, [5]. See page 22 for setting.
IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** [Initial] • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between close stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
Beep Key-touch tone	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Activates the key-touch tone. : Deactivates the key-touch tone.
Ext In*2 External input	• **Changer** [Initial] • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [14] or an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player, [24]. : To use any other external component, [26].
Tel Telephone muting	• **Muting 1/ Muting 2** • **Off** [Initial]	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone. • If CD/CD-CH/SD/USB/iPod/D. player has been selected as the source, playback pauses during telephone muting. : Cancels.
Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR** • **Off**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to avoid damaging the speakers.) : Deactivates the built-in amplifier.

*1 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*2 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, SD, USB, or LINE-IN.*

Selecting timer for the dimmer

You can dim the display at night or as you set the timer.

1 Select "Dimmer" from the PSM menu.

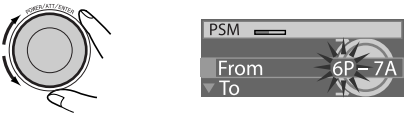
2 Select "Time Set."

3 Adjust the dimmer time.

1 Set the dimmer start time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

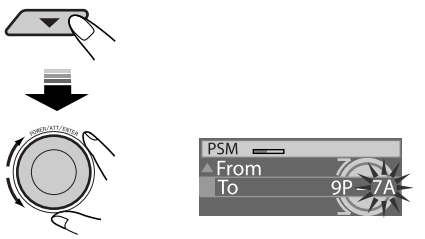
12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]



2 Set the dimmer end time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]



4 Finish the procedure.

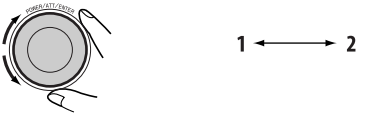
Selecting the graphic theme

You can select the graphic theme for large and small display sizes (see also page 5).

1 Select "Theme" from the PSM menu.

2 Select the size of the display.

3 Select the theme.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select the other display size and theme.

5 Finish the procedure.

To show the selected display theme, press DISP repeatedly while playing a source.

Title assignment

You can assign titles to station frequencies, CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer) and the external components (LINE-IN and EXT-IN).

Sources	Maximum number of characters
Station frequencies	Up to 16 characters (up to 30 station frequencies including bothe FM and AM)
CDs/CD-CH*	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)
External component	Up to 16 characters

* *You cannot assign names to any discs other than conventional CDs.*

1 Select the sources.

- For FM/AM tuner: Select a station.
- For CDs in this unit: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select "CD-CH," then select a disc number.
- For external component: Select "LINE-IN" or "EXT-IN."

2 Enter the TITLE menu (see page 4).

3 Assign a title.

1 **Select a character set.**

A (A – Z: upper case) → **a** (a – z: lower case) → **0** (numbers and symbols) → **Á** (Accented letters: upper case) → **á** (Accented letters: lower case) → (back to the beginning)

- For available characters, see page 31.

2 **Select a character.**

3 **Move to the next (or previous) character position.**

4 **Repeat steps 1 and 3 until you finish entering the title.**

4 Finish the procedure.

- To cancel the title entry without registration, press MENU.

To erase the entire title

In step **3**...

ENGLISH

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:
Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **Interface adapter for iPod®**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- **D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Caution:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

Preparations:

Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 21.

1

2

Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused*1 or stopped*2 previously.

3 **Adjust the volume.**

4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)**

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause*1 or stop*2 playback To resume playback, press it again.	
To fast-forward or reverse the track	
To go to the next or previous tracks	

*1 *For iPod*
*2 *For D. player*

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.

Now the ▲/▼/|◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*.

* *The menu selecting mode will be canceled:*
- *If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.*
- *When you confirm the selection of a track.*

2 Select the desired menu.

For iPod:
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:
Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔ Genre ↔ Track ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Confirm the selection.

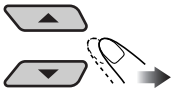
To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.
- Holding |◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ can skip 10 items at a time.

Selecting the playback modes

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



Repeat ↔ Random

3 Select an item (see table below).

4 Finish the procedure.

Repeat play	
One	: Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → One" for the D. player.
All	: Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → All" for the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.
Random play	
Album*	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
Song/On	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod or "Random Play → On" of the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.

* *For iPod: Only if you select "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

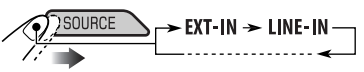
Other external component operations

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN plugs on the rear or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

For listening to the SD card/USB memory, see pages 11 – 14; For iPod, or D.player, see pages 24 and 25.

❶



LINE-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN plugs.

EXT-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack.

If "EXT-IN" does not appear, see page 21 and select the external input ("Ext In").

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

❸ **Adjust the volume.**

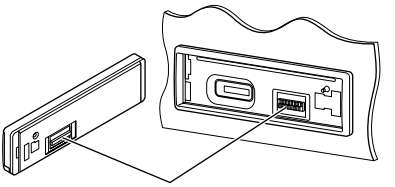
❹ **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 15 – 19.)**

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

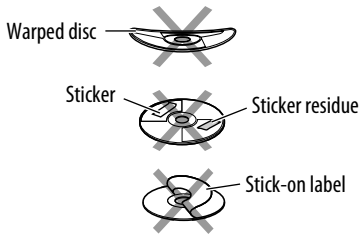
To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

How to handle SD card

SD cards are precision products. DO NOT impact, bend, drop, or wet them.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start from where playback has been stopped previously, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
  - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Continued on the next page

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/ CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA) and MP3/WMA format; MP3/WMA files recorded in an SD card or a USB memory.
- While playing an audio CD: If a title has been assigned to the audio CD (see page 23), it will be shown on the display.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing an MP3/ WMA track, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the control panel moves down, and the disc automatically ejects from the loading slot.
- If you keep the control panel open for about 1 minute, (beeps sound when the "Beep" setting is turned "On"—see page 21) the control panel returns to its previous position.
- Do not insert 8 cm discs (single CD) and unusual shape discs (heart, flower, etc.) into the loading slot.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can play back only files of the same type which are first detected if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/ WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – CD-R/CD-RW on which the files are written with "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA discs

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files compliant to ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name.
- The maximum number of characters for file/ folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 (72) characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 (36) characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 (72) characters

  * *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 313 or more.*
- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, of 200 folders, and of 8 hierarchies.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriated format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA tracks from an SD card or a USB memory

- While playing from an SD card or a USB memory, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some SD cards or USB memories due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB memories and connection ports, some USB memories may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- It is not recommended to use a USB memory wider than 20 mm as it will block you from pressing some buttons on the control panel.
- If the connected USB memory does not have the correct files, "No Files" appears and the unit returns to the previous source.
- This unit can show Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- For SD card: The maximum number of characters for folder name is 8 characters; file names is 12 characters. This unit cannot recognize folder with period (.) on the folder name.
  For USB memory: The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- For SD card: This unit can recognize a total of 255 files and 63 folders.
  For USB memory: This unit can recognize a total of 2 500 files and 250 folders (999 files per folder).
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops. Next time you select the same source again, playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Continued on the next page

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes—DSP

- Effectiveness of "V.Cancel" depends on the recording condition of the sources:
  - Monaural sources such as AM and monaural FM broadcasting programs.
  - Multiplex sound sources.
  - Sources recorded with duets, strong echo, a chorus, or only a few instruments.
- When "4ch" is selected, rear speakers are used only to reproduce reflections and reverberations in order to creates a being-there feeling in your car compartment.
- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate effect may not be obtained.
- You cannot adjust the effect level and speaker number when "Defeat" is selected with crossover network activated.

Storing your own sound modes

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press MENU to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to the center.
- Subwoofer out setting takes effect only when a subwoofer is connected.
- You cannot change the input level—"VolAdjust" of the FM stations. If the source is FM, "Fix" will appear when you try to adjust it.

General settings — PSM

- "Auto Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming. In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any one other than "Auto."
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies or 30 discs, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc in the unit and vise versa.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
  - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 20). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

For D. player users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>

Available characters

In addition to the Roman alphabets (A – Z, a – z), the following characters will be used.

Accented letters: upper case

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Đ	Ŧ	Ŀ	İ	ij	ð	space							

Accented letters: lower case

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ŀ	ı	ij	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

Preset frequency level settings for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset equalizing value								
	63 Hz	125 Hz	250 Hz	500 Hz	1 kHz	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12.5 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+06	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+02
R&B	+06	+04	+04	+04	00	+02	+02	+02	+06
Pop	00	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+02	+02	+04
Jazz	+06	+04	+02	+02	+02	+02	+02	+06	+04
Dance	+08	+04	+02	00	–04	–02	00	+02	+02
Country	+04	+02	00	00	00	00	00	+02	+04
Reggae	+06	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+04	+04	+06
Classic	+04	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	00
User 1	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 2	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see pages 4 and 26).
	• "Push Reset" appears on the display and the control panel movement is freezed.	Reset the unit (see page 2). If this does not work, check the installation.
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 14). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "Loading Error," or "Eject Error" appears).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("File Check" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs while playing. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• "No Music" appears on the display.	Change the disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 31).
SD card/USB memory playback	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not an MP3/WMA track. Skip to another file. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• "File Check" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Play a device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	• The device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the device are corrupted. • Do not pull out or attach the USB memory repeatedly while "File Check" appears on the display.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
SD card/USB memory playback	• "SD Loading Error" appears on the display while playing tracks from an SD card.	Detach the control panel and reinsert the SD card. The control panel goes back to initial position (Angle 1).
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	MP3/WMA tracks have not been properly copied into the device. Copy MP3/WMA tracks again into the device, and try again.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 31).
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
Sounds	• DSP mode cannot be selected other modes than "Defeat." • Only high range sound or low range sound is reproduced though full range speakers are connected.	Deactivate crossover network (see page 18).
iPod/D. player playback	• The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press POWER/ATT/ENTER before performing the operation.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/ D. player.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation using the control panel (see page 24).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. player playback	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	• No sound can be heard. • "ERROR 01" appears on the display when connecting a D. player.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "No Files" or "No Track" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/ D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's or D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.

- *Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.*
- *SD logo is a trademark.*
- *Manufactured under license from BBE Sound, Inc.*
  Licensed by BBE Sound, Inc. under USP5510752 and 5736897. BBE and BBE symbol are registered trademarks of BBE Sound, Inc.
- *iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.*

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies: Graphic EQ: 63 Hz, 125 Hz, 250 Hz, 500 Hz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, 4 kHz, 8 kHz, 12.5 kHz (9 bands) Parametric EQ: 3 bands (Band 1/2/3): 20 Hz, 25 Hz, 31.5 Hz, 40 Hz, 50 Hz, 63 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 125 Hz, 160 Hz, 200 Hz, 250 Hz, 315 Hz, 400 Hz, 500 Hz, 630 Hz, 800 Hz, 1 kHz, 1.2 kHz, 1.6 kHz, 2 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 3.2 kHz, 4 kHz, 5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 8 kHz, 10 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 16 kHz, 20 kHz (31 frequencies)	
		Level:	±10 dB
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Level/Impedance:	Line-In:	1.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Line-Out:	5.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
	Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:		LINE IN, CD changer

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/65 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:	Compact disc player	
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		98 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		102 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit

CD PLAYER SECTION	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

SD CARD	Format:		FAT 12/16
	Storage:		8 MB – 512 MB
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 192 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

USB MEMORY	Format:		FAT 12/16/32
	Storage:		Less than 4 GB (1 partition type)
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	Max. Current:		Less than 500 mA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
			MPEG-2.5: 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	5 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	8 kHz – 48 kHz

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 162 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.7 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

在操作時遇到麻煩了？

請重設本機

參閱如何重設本機之頁

JVC

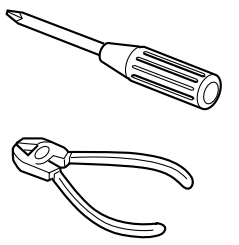
EN, CT

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0206DTSMDTJEIN

KD-SH1000

Installation/Connection Manual
安裝/連接手冊



GET0365-010A
[UT]

0206DTSMDTJEIN
EN, CT
© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.

中文

本機僅可使用**直流 12 V 、負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

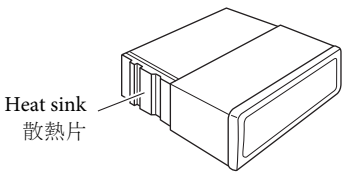
警告

為防止短路，建議在安裝本機之前，斷開電池的負極，並把所有電路都連接好。

- **安裝完畢後務必將本機的地線重新接至車身。**

注意:

- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W，其阻抗為 **4 Ω - 8 Ω**。如果最大功率小於 50 W，請調校 "Amp Gain" 設定值，以防止揚聲器損壞。(參閱使用説明書的第 21 頁。)
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣帶包住**未使用**電線的端子。
- 本機使用後，散熱片會很熱。因此，在移出本機時，小心不要觸摸散熱片。

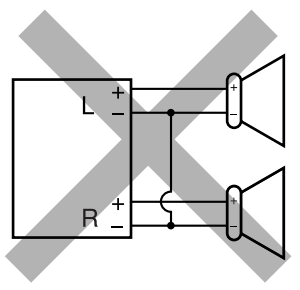


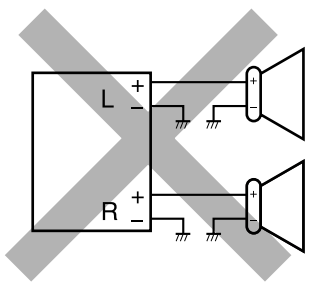
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

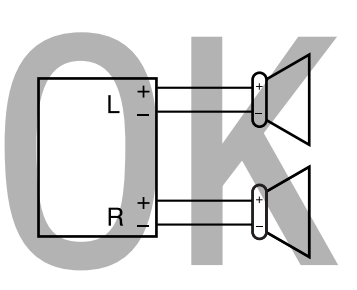
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

電源和揚聲器接線注意事項:

- **切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機將會嚴重損壞。**
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。







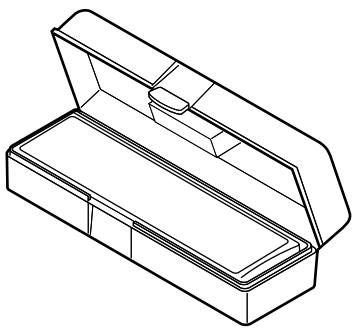
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

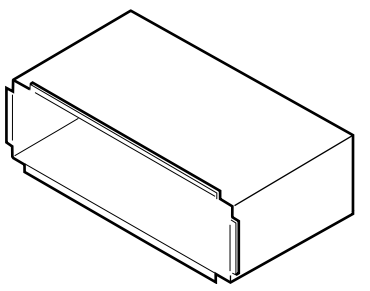
用於安裝和連接的零件裏

下列零件隨本機提供。若有任何遺漏，請立刻咨詢您的 JVC 汽車音響經銷商。

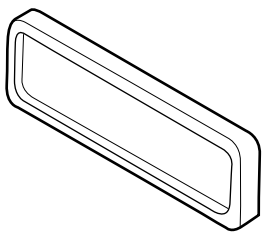
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
硬盒/控制面板



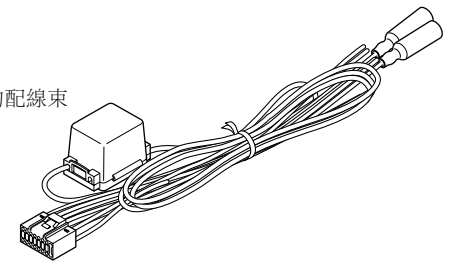
Ⓒ
Sleeve
外套機殼



Ⓓ
Trim plate
裝飾框



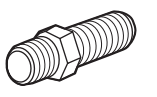
Ⓔ
Power cord
電路連接用的配線束



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
墊圈 (ø5)

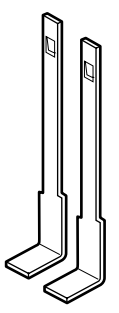
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
鎖定螺母 (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
緊固螺栓 (M5 × 20 mm)

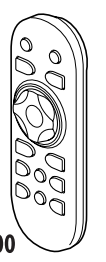


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
橡膠防震墊

Ⓙ
Handles
板條型把手



Ⓚ
Remote controller
遙控器



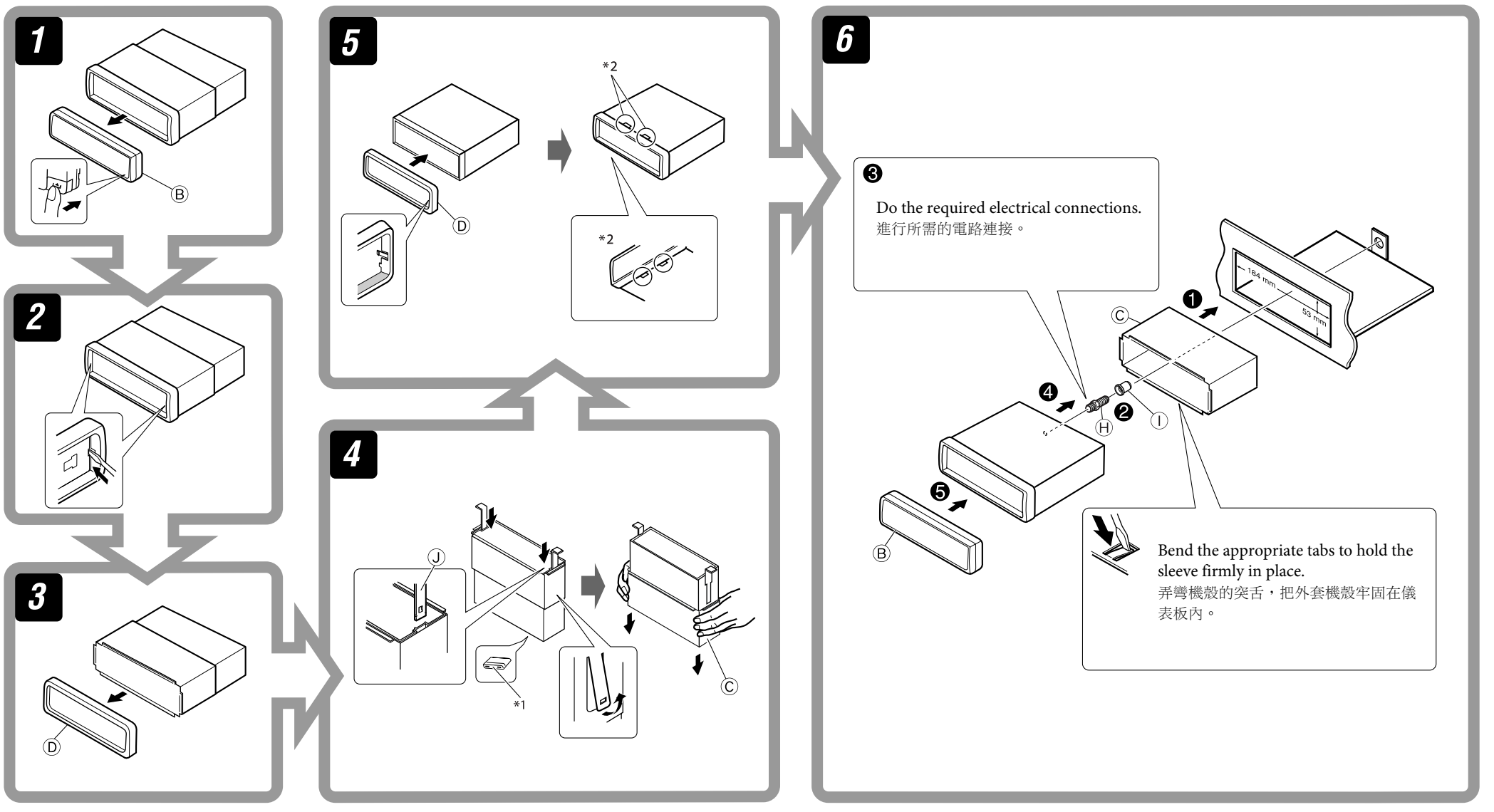
Ⓛ
Battery
電池

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.
- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

安裝 (裝設、固定在儀表板內)

下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。如果您有問題，或需要有關配套元件的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應公司詢問。
- 如果您不能確定如何正確地安裝本機，應請合格的技術人員來安裝。



*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*1 您豎起本機時，小心不要損壞底部的保險絲。

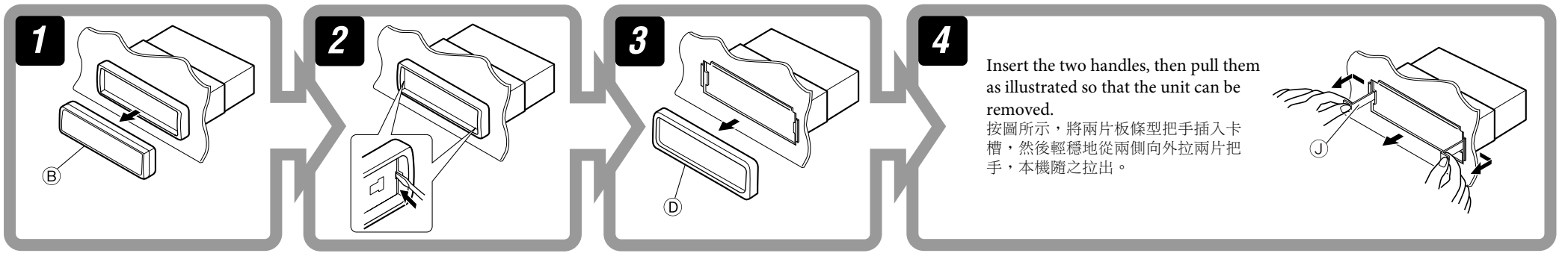
*2 Fit the protrusions outside the unit.
*2 將突出部分安置在本機外部。

Removing the unit

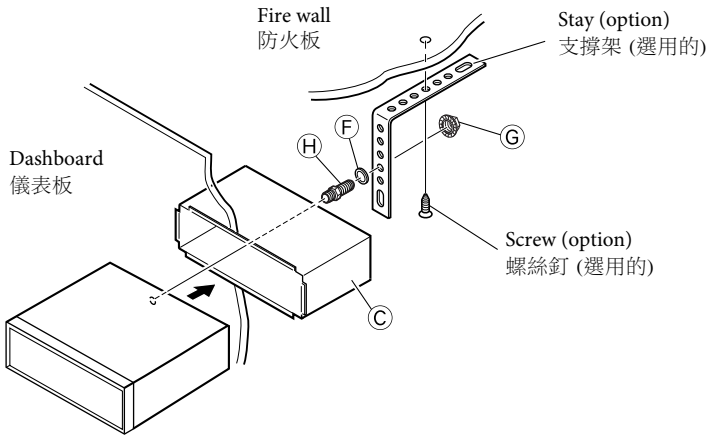
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

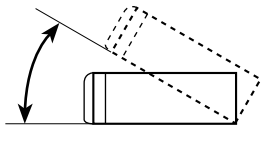
拆卸本機

在拆卸本機前，應將本機後部的固定和連接部分鬆開。



When using the optional stay / 若選用支撐架

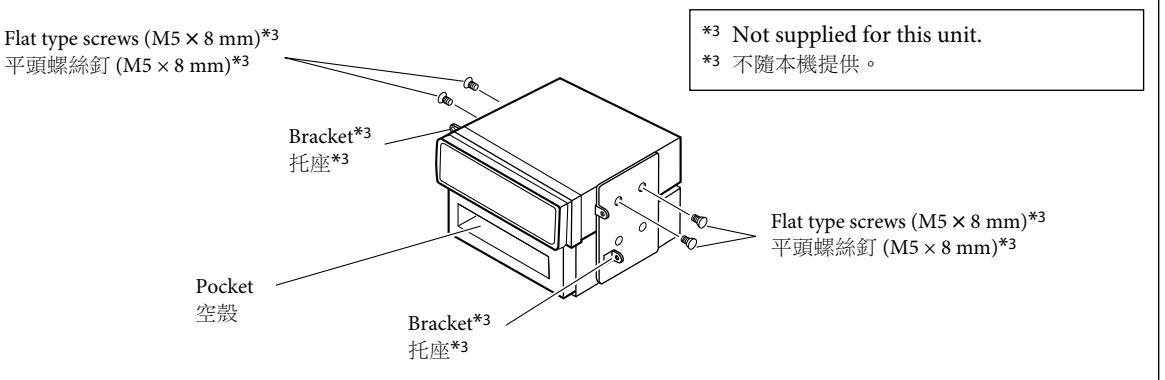




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
將本機安裝在少於 30° 的角度。

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / 若不使用外套機殼安裝本機

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
以豐田牌 (TOYOTA) 汽車為例: 首先取出汽車收音機，然後將本機裝入其空出的位置。

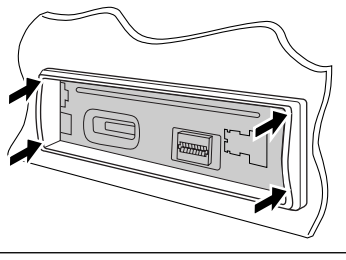


*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 不隨本機提供。

Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

注意 : 把本機安裝在托座上時，務必使用 8 mm 長的螺絲釘。如使用過長的螺絲釘，會損壞本機。

Caution when installing / 安裝注意事項



Fit the unit into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.
- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration).

將本機用四個角的裝飾框固定到安裝套內。
- 不要擠壓面板（圖中的陰影部分）。

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

電路連接

A Typical connections / 典型的接線方法

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the antenna cord.

3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

If you have installed 3-way network speaker system in your car, see diagram C for speaker connection.

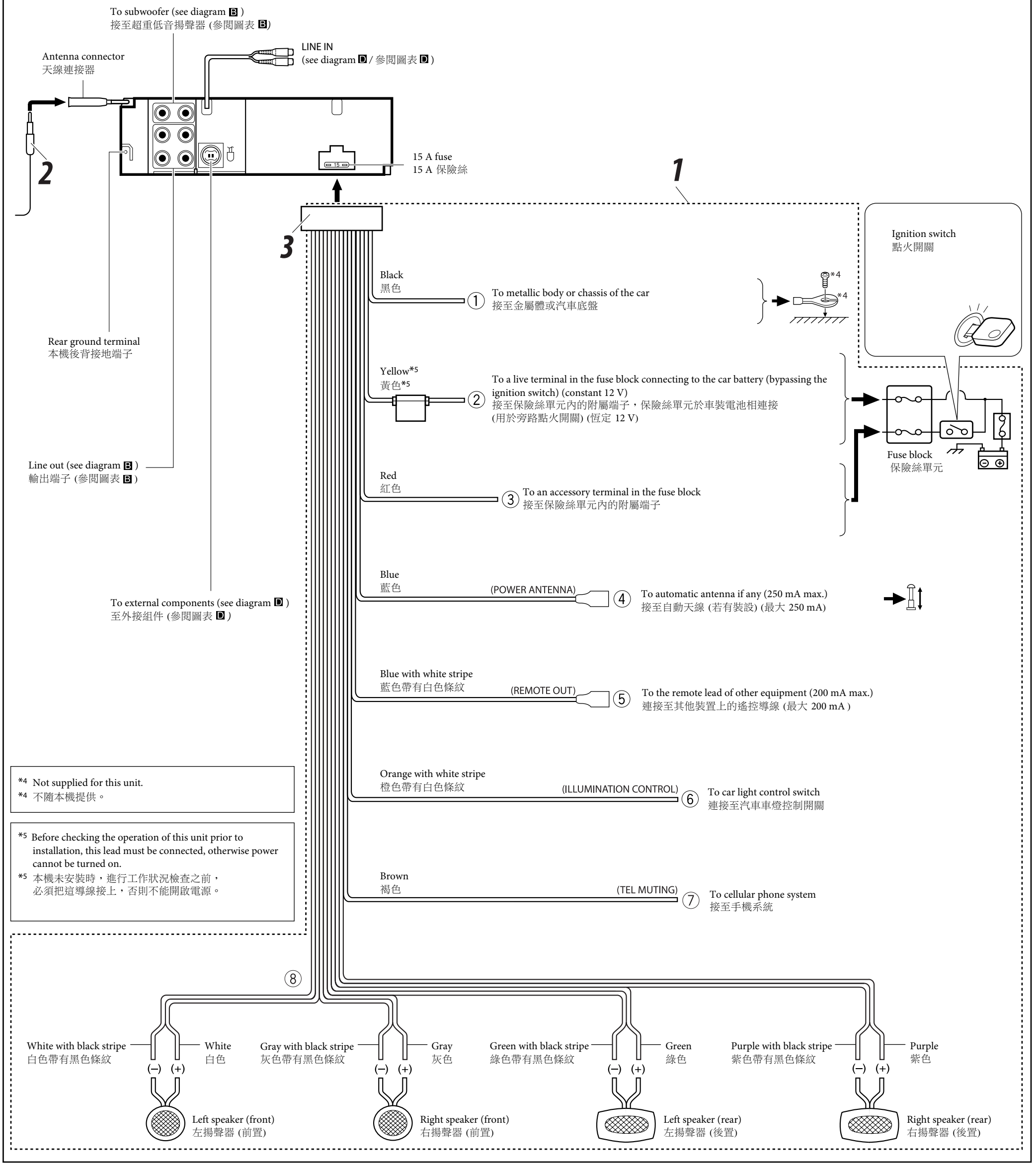
接線前：仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線會導致本機嚴重損壞。
電力線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

1 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。

2 將天線的電線連接起來。

3 最後，把配線束的插頭插在本機上。

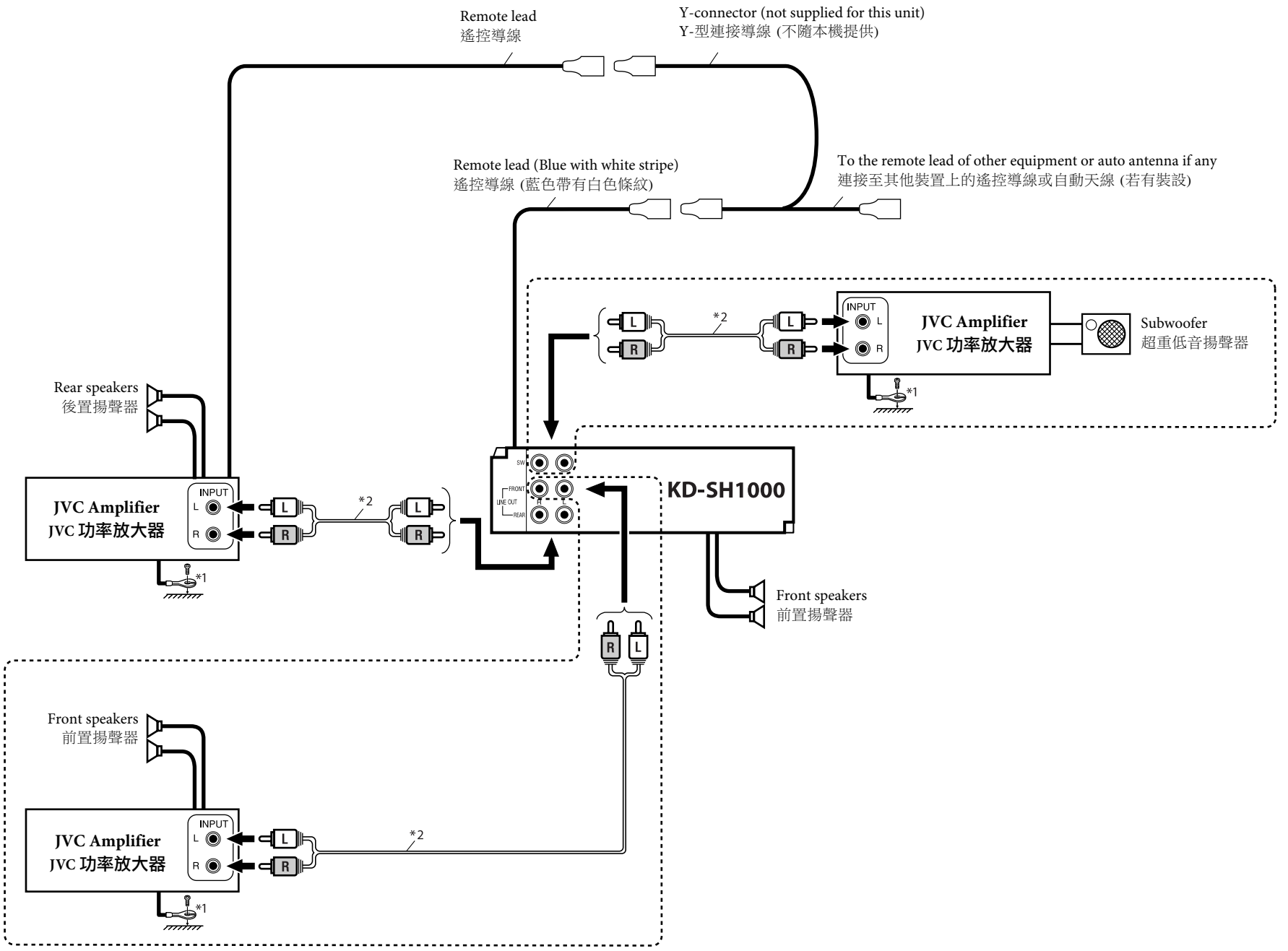
如果您在汽車安裝了三通揚聲器系統，請參閱圖表 C 有關揚聲器連接。



B Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / 連接外接放大器和/或超重低音揚聲器

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  - **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
  - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
  - The line output level of this unit is kept high to maintain the hi-fi sounds reproduced from this unit. When connecting an external amplifier to this unit, turn down the gain control on the external amplifier to obtain the best performance from this unit.

您可以連接放大器以升級您的汽車立體聲系統。
- 將遙控導線 (藍色帶有白色條紋) 和其他裝置上的遙控導線連接起來，以便可以通過本機進行遙控。
- **僅供功率放大器而已:**
  - **將揚聲器和本機斷開，再接上功率放大器。將本機的揚聲器接線放置不用。**
  - 您可以關閉內置擴音器並將音頻信號只是輸送至外接擴音器以獲得清晰的音響以及避免接收器內部熱量聚集（參閱使用説明書的第 21 頁）。
  - 本機的輸出端子水平保持高水平以保留高度傳真音響效果再次產生。當連接外部功率放大器至本機時，請轉低外部功率放大器的安培計控制以便獲取本機所發揮的最佳效果。



*1 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*1 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋 (如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去)。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。

*2 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*2 信號電纜 (不隨本機提供)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

故障排除

- **保險絲燒斷。**
* 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確?

- **電源不能接通。**
* 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上?

- **揚聲器沒有聲音。**
* 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路?

- **聲音失真。**
* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地?
* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L)、右 (R) 端子的負極 (–) 是否共同接地?

- **噪音干擾音響。**
* 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較厚的電線連接?

- **本機發熱。**
* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地?
* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L)、右 (R) 端子的負極 (–) 是否共同接地?

- **本機完全不能操作。**
* 您是否已經重置您的機組?

C Speaker connections for 3-way network speaker system / 三通揚聲器系統的揚聲器連接

You can enjoy a world of "pure audio" in your car by connecting 3-way network speaker system (high-range/mid-range/subwoofer).

您可以連接三通揚聲器系統（高階 / 中階 / 超重低音揚聲器）以便在您的汽車享受"純淨的音響"世界。

IMPORTANT:

If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following.

- Connect the speaker system as illustrated below.
- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For details about the setting, see pages 18 and 19 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

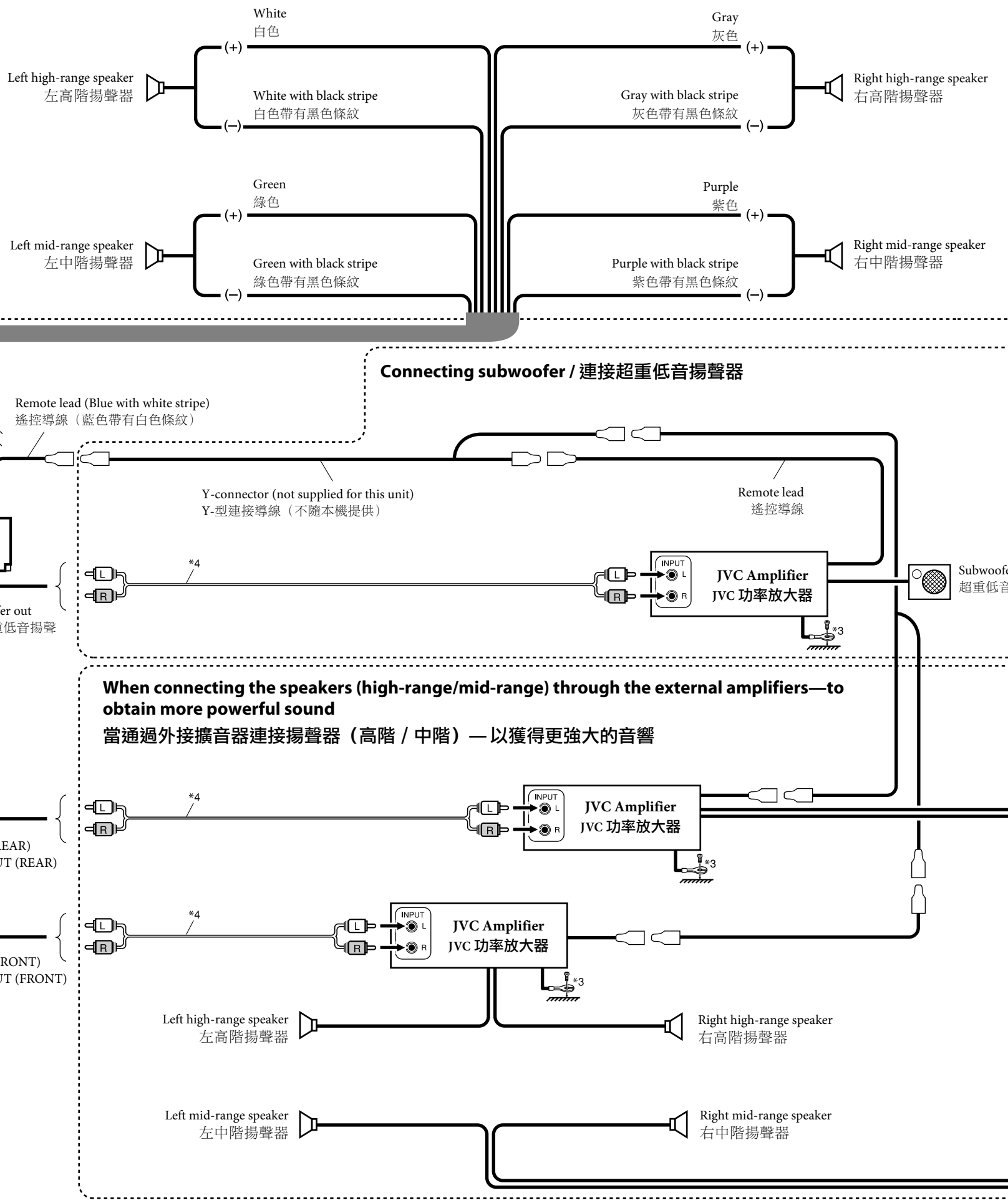
重要:

如果您在汽車安裝三通揚聲器系統，請確定以下幾點。

- 如插圖所示連接揚聲器系統。
- 使用系統之前，先激活分頻網絡和預先設定適當的 HPF/LPF（可用最高頻率 / 可用最低頻率）（特別是 HPF）；否則，它可能會損壞揚聲器。
- 參閱使用説明書的第 18 和 19 頁有關設置的細節。

When connecting the speakers (high-range/mid-range) through the speaker output

當通過揚聲器輸出連接揚聲器 （高階 / 中階）



*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*3 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋 (如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去)。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。

*4 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*4 信號電纜 (不隨本機提供)

D Connecting the external components / 連接其他外接組件

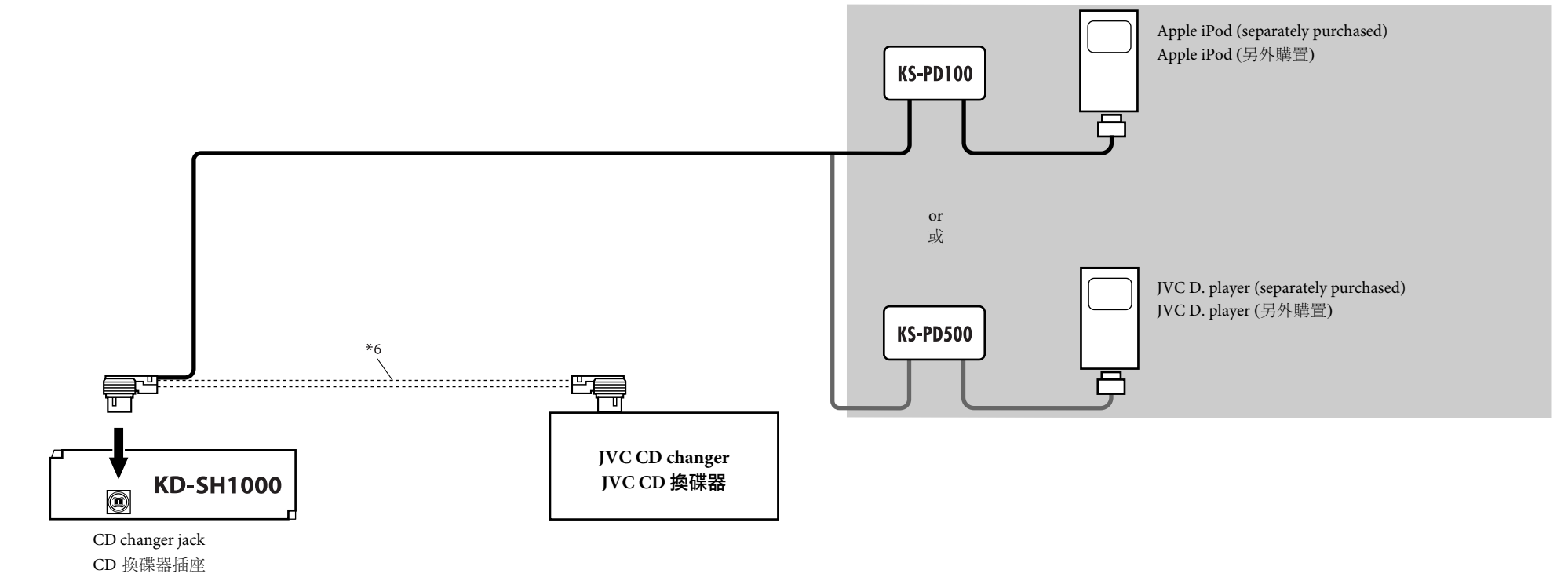
CD changer, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / CD 換碟器、Apple iPod® 或 JVC D. player

• Set "Changer" for the external input setting (See page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / 將外部輸入設定設至 "Changer" (換碟器) (參閱使用説明書的第 21 頁。)

You can connect these components as illustrated below. The iPod*5 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

您可以從下圖所示連接這些組件。您可以使用界面適配器 (不配備) — KS-PD100 (iPod 用) 或 KS-PD500 (D. player 用) 連接 iPod*5 或 D. player。

CAUTION / 小心:
- Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
- 連接外接組件之前，先確定本機已經關閉。

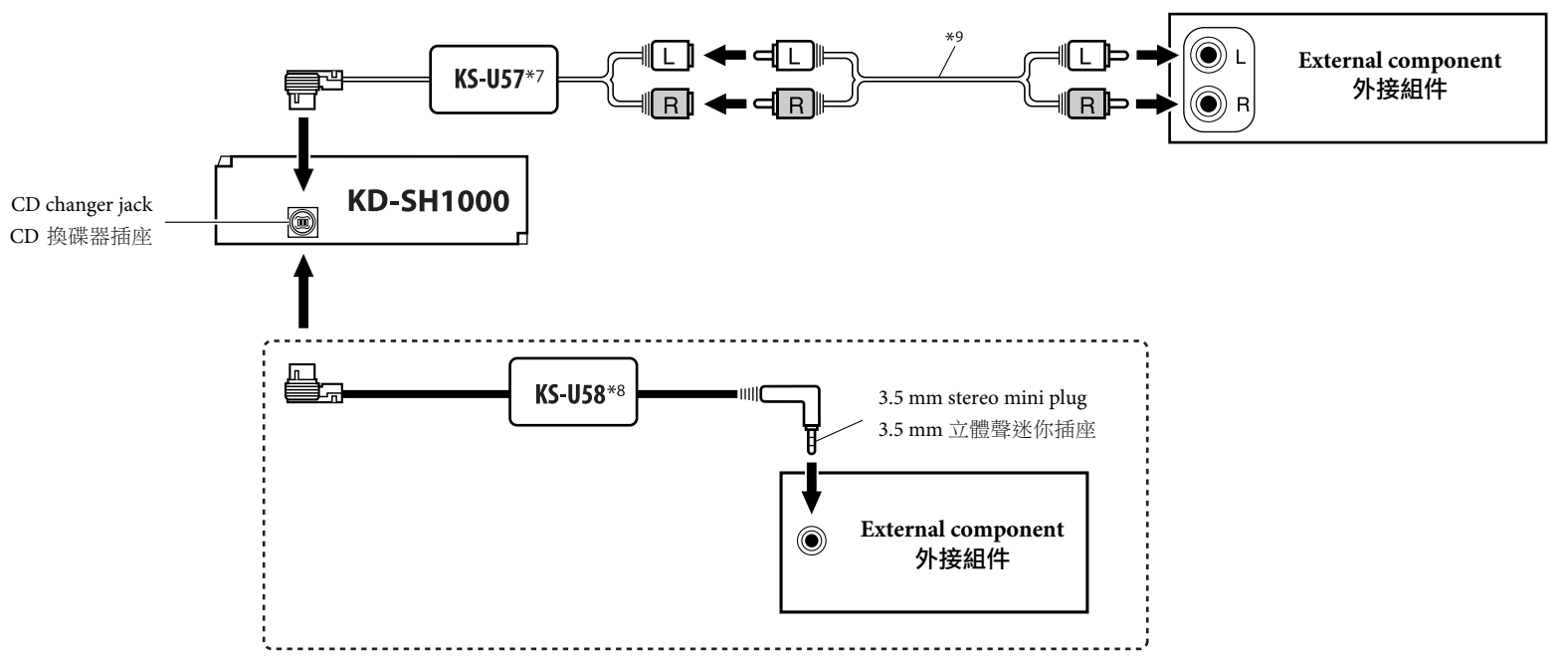


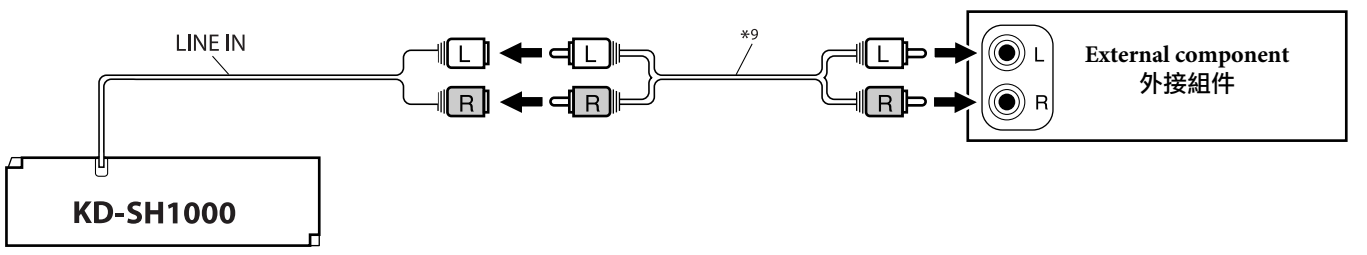
*5 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*5 iPod 是 Apple Computer, Inc. （蘋果電腦公司）在美國及其他國家注冊的商標。

*6 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer
*6 您的 CD 換碟器配備的連接電纜

Other external component / 其他外接組件

• Set "Ext In" for the external input setting (See page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / 將外部輸入設定設至 "Ext In" (外部輸入) (參閱使用説明書的第 21 頁。)





*7 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*7 電路輸入適配器 KS-U57 (不隨本機提供)

*8 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)
*8 AUX 輸入適配器 KS-U58 (不隨本機提供)

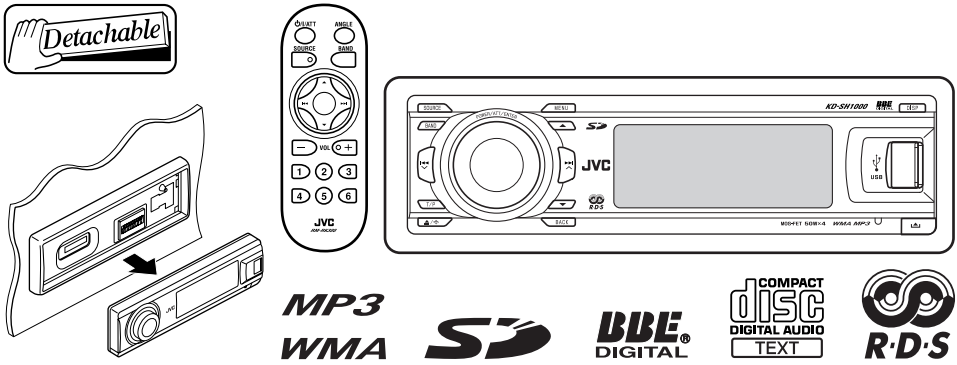
*9 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*9 信號電纜 (不隨本機提供)

ENGLISH

FRANÇAIS

CD RECEIVER
RECEPTEUR CD

KD-SH1000



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 8.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

GET0366-003A
[EX/EU]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	**ADVARSEL :** Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	**VARNING :** Synlig och osynlig laserstrålning när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	**VARO :** Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution on volume setting:

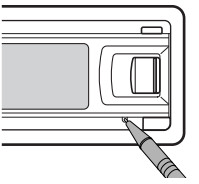
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Notice:

The display window built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.

Note: Only for [EX] model users in UK and European countries
For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit's chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

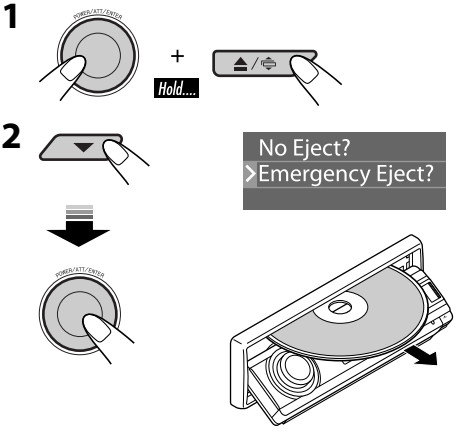
How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc

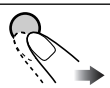
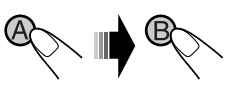
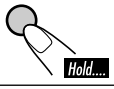
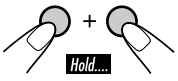
- If an SD card is inserted, eject the SD card first (see page 14).



- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*

How to read this manual

- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations in the table below.
- Some related tips and notes are explained in "More about this unit" (see pages 34 – 38).

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press Ⓐ, then Ⓑ.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.
	Press and hold both buttons at the same time.

The following marks are used to indicate...

: Built-in CD player operations.

: External CD changer operations.

: SD player operations.

: External USB memory operations.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

Control panel 5

Remote controller — RM-RK300 6

Getting started 7
- Basic operations 7

Radio operations 8

FM RDS operations 11
- Searching for your favorite FM RDS programme 11

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations 14
- Playing a disc in the unit 14
- Playing discs in the CD changer 14
- Playing from an SD card 14
- Playing from a USB memory 15

Sound adjustments 18
- Selecting the DSP modes (DSP) 18
- Using the equalizer—EQ 19
- Activating crossover network 21
- Setting the sound modes—SEL 21

General settings — PSM 23

Title assignment 26

iPod®/D. player operations 27

DAB tuner operations 29

Other external component operations ... 33

Maintenance 33

More about this unit 34

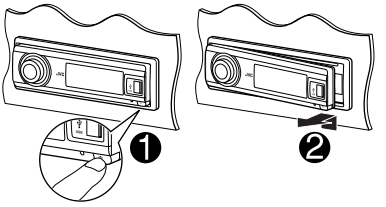
Troubleshooting 38

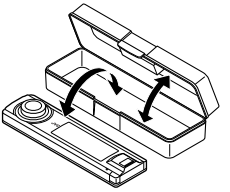
Specifications 42

ENGLISH

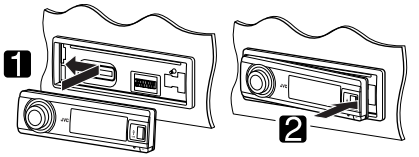
How to detach/attach the control panel

Detaching...





Attaching...

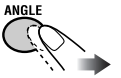


How to change the control panel angle

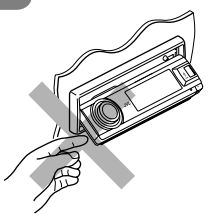
1

2

When using the remote controller



Caution:



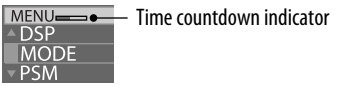
How to enter the various menus

The main menu contains seven menus (MODE, PSM, SEL, TITLE, BBE, EQ, DSP).

- If no operation is done for about 5 seconds, menu screen is canceled.

1

2 Select a menu you want.



3 Enter the selected menu.

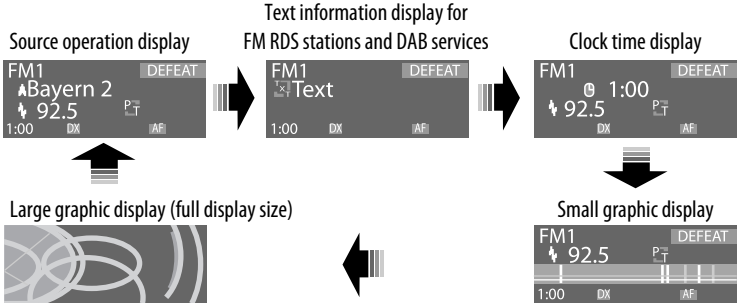
- To go back to the previous screen or exit the MENU screen, press BACK repeatedly.

4 Operate as instructed on the screen.

- To go back to the MENU screen, press MENU.

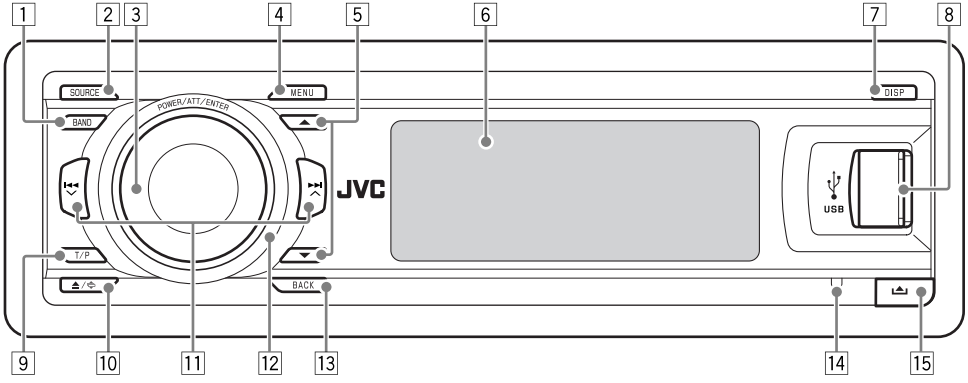
How to change the display information and patterns

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Control panel

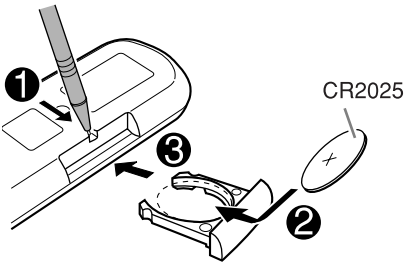
Parts identification



1 BAND button
2 SOURCE button
3 • Control dial
• POWER/ATT (attenuator)/ENTER button
4 MENU button
5 ▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons
6 Display window
7 DISP (display) button
8 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input terminal
9 T/P (traffic programme/programme type) button
10 ⏏ (eject) / (angle) button
11 ⏮ ⌄/⏭ ⌃ buttons
12 Remote sensor
DO NOT expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).
13 BACK button
14 Reset button
15 ⏏ (control panel release) button

Remote controller — RM-RK300

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)

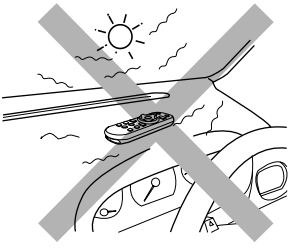


Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.

Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accident.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
  - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
  - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
  - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
  - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

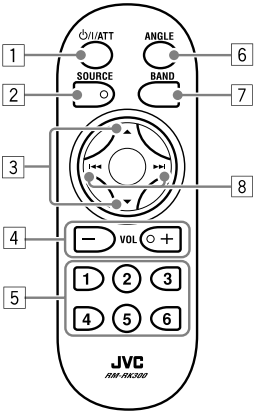
Caution:



The unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features



1 **⏻/I/ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button**

- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 **SOURCE button**
Selects the source.

3 **▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons**
- **For DAB:** Changes the service.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the folders.
- **While listening to an Apple iPod® or a JVC D. player:**
  – Pauses/stops or resumes playback with ▼.
  – Enters the main menu with ▲. (Now ▲/▼/|◄◄/►►| work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

4 **VOL (volume) + / – buttons**
Adjusts the volume level.

5 **Number buttons**
- **For FM/AM/DAB:** Selects the preset station (or service) if pressed, or store a station (or a service) if pressed and held.
- F**or CD/CD Text:** Selects the tracks.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Selects the folders.
- **For CD changer:** Selects the discs.

6 **ANGLE button**
Adjusts the control panel angle.

7 **BAND button**
Selects the band.

8 **|◄◄ / ►►| buttons**
- **For FM/AM/DAB:** Searches for stations (or ensembles) if pressed, or skips frequencies after pressed and held.
- **For CD/CD Text/MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the tracks if pressed, or fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
- **While listening to an iPod or a D. player (in menu selecting mode):**
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

* ▲ : *Returns to the previous menu.*
▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

Getting started

Activates or deactivates crossover network (see page 21) before turning on the power.

Basic operations

1 Turn on the power.

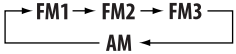
2

FM/AM → DAB* → CD* → SD* → USB* → CD-CH*/iPod*/D. player* (or **EXT-IN**) → **LINE-IN** → (back to the beginning)

* *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

3

For FM/AM tuner



For DAB tuner

4 Adjust the volume.

5 Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 18 – 22.)

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

ENGLISH

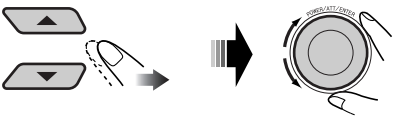
To drop the volume in a moment (ATT) To restore the sound, press it again.	
To turn off the power	

Basic settings

- See also "General settings — PSM" on pages 23 – 26.

1 Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).

2



1 **Canceling the display demonstrations**
Select "Demo," then "Off."

2 **Setting the clock**
Select "Clock H" (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select "Clock M" (minute), then adjust the minute.
Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."

3 Finish the procedure.

To check the current clock time while the power is turned off

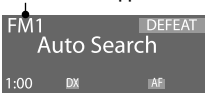
Radio operations

❶

❷

❸ **Start searching for a station.**

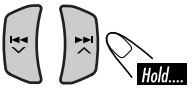
Selected band appears.

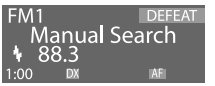


When a station is received, searching stops.
To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

In step ❸ above...

1 



2 **Select a desired station frequency.**

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2

3

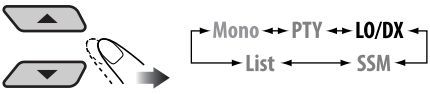
4

MO indicator lights up.
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure and select "Off" in step **3**. The MO indicator goes off.

Tuning in to FM stations with strong signals only—LO (local)/DX (Distance-Extreme)

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2 

3

4

DX indicator goes off and LO indicator lights up.
Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure and select "DX" in step **3**. The LO indicator goes off and DX indicator lights up.

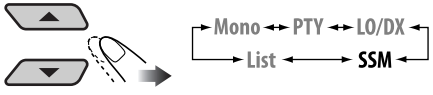
Storing stations in memory

You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

1 **Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store into.**

2 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

3 

4

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1

2

3 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**
- If you hold down ▲/▼, the Preset Station List appears (go to step **6**).

Continued on the next page

4

5

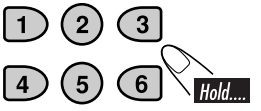
6 Select a preset number.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by turning the control dial.

7 Store the station.

When using the remote controller

After tuning in to a station you want to preset...



Listening to a preset station

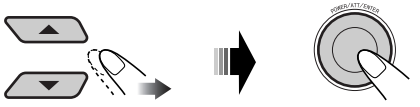
1

2 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

3

4

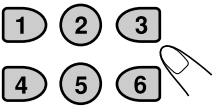
5 Select a preset number.



- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by turning the control dial.

When using the remote controller

Directly select the preset number.



FM RDS operations

What you can do with RDS

RDS (Radio Data System) allows FM stations to send an additional signal along with their regular programme signals.
By receiving the RDS data, this unit can do the following:

- Programme Type (PTY) Search (see the following)
- TA (Traffic Announcement) and PTY Standby Receptions (see pages 12 and 24)
- Tracing the same programme automatically —Network-Tracking Reception (see page 13)
- Programme Search (see page 13)
- Receiving the message service—RDS Radiotext (RT) (see page 13)

Searching for your favorite FM RDS programme

You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code of your favorite programmes.

PTY codes

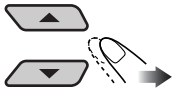
NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFO, SPORT, EDUCATE, DRAMA, CULTURE, SCIENCE, VARIED, POP M (music), ROCK M (music), EASY M (music), LIGHT M (music), CLASSICS, OTHER M (music), WEATHER, FINANCE, CHILDREN, SOCIAL, RELIGION, PHONE IN, TRAVEL, LEISURE, JAZZ, COUNTRY, NATION M (music), OLDIES, FOLK M (music), DOCUMENT

1

PTY Preset List appears.

1 Pop M	4 Classics
2 Rock M	5 Affairs
3 Easy M	6 Varied

2 **Select a PTY code.**



- You can select one of the PTY codes (including the six preset codes which can be presetted as you like, see the following).

3 **Start searching for your favorite programme.**

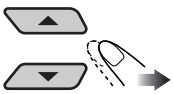
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

Storing your favorite programme types

You can store your favorite PTY codes into the PTY Preset List.

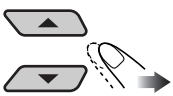
1

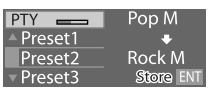
2 **Select a PTY code.**



3 **Enter the preset list.**

4 **Select a preset number.**





Continued on the next page

5 **Store the setting.**

6 **To store other PTY codes into other preset numbers.**

Repeat steps **2** to **5**.

7 **Finish the procedure.**

Using the standby receptions

TA Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to Traffic Announcement (TA) from any source other than AM.
The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 24).

- If DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service broadcasting Traffic Announcement.

To activate TA Standby Reception

The TP (Traffic Programme) indicator either lights up or flashes.

- If the TP indicator lights up, TA Standby Reception is activated.
- If the TP indicator flashes, TA Standby Reception is not yet activated. (This occurs when you are listening to an FM station without the RDS signals required for TA Standby Reception.)
  To activate TA Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or DAB service) providing the related signals. The TP indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the TA Standby Reception

The TP indicator goes off.

PTY Standby Reception

PTY Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.

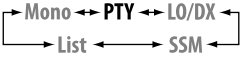
- If DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service.

To select your favorite PTY code for PTY Standby Reception, see page 24.
The PTY indicator either lights up or flashes.

To activate the PTY Standby Reception

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2



3 **Select one of the PTY codes.**

4 **Finish the procedure.**

The PTY indicator either lights up or flashes.

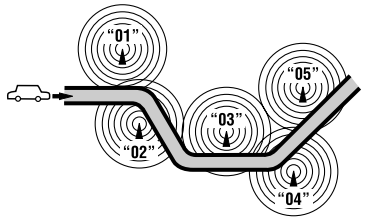
- If the PTY indicator lights up, PTY Standby Reception is activated.
- If the PTY indicator flashes, PTY Standby Reception is not yet activated.
  To activate PTY Standby Reception, tune in to another station providing these signals. The PTY indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the PTY Standby Reception, select "Off" in step 3. The PTY indicator goes off.

Tracing the same programme— Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.
To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see "AF-Reg" on page 24.

Automatic station selection— Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.
If the signals from the FM RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.

- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 24.

Using the message service— RDS Radiotext (RT)

What is RDS Radiotext

RDS Radiotext is part of the RDS data signal to transmit various text information (e.g. programme information, phone numbers, e-mail and web addresses, artist/title information, and news headlines). The text service is part of the RDS broadcast.
One message may contain up to 64 characters.

The message service is an optional service and is not supported by all broadcasters.

Once you tuned in to a station that supports the message service, the service is automatically received.

To show the RDS Radiotext (RT) information

While listening to a station that supports RT...

Radiotext screen appears on the display.

- The Radiotext screen will be temporarily canceled when you operate the unit.

It takes time to load data. While loading, "Loading" and progress indications appear.

- You can see approximate loading percentage with the indications.

If text message is unavailable, the text screen will change to source operation screen. Yet, when text message becomes available later, the text screen will automatically appear.

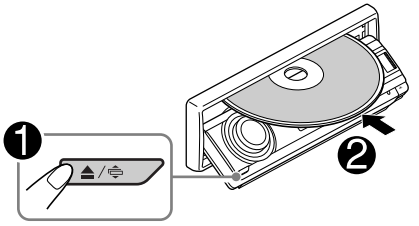
ENGLISH

ENGLISH

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Playing a disc in the unit

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.



To stop play and eject the disc

Note:
If a USB memory is attached to the unit, you cannot eject the disc. "Please Eject USB" flashes on the display. If this happens, detach the USB memory, then, press ⏏ / button again.

Playing discs in the CD changer

All discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

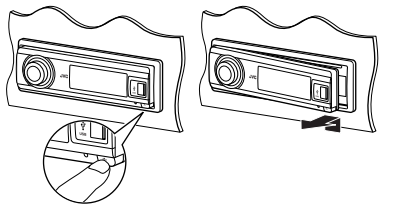
- Ejecting the magazine will also stop playback.

* *If you have changed the external input setting to "Ext In" (see page 25), you cannot select the CD changer.*

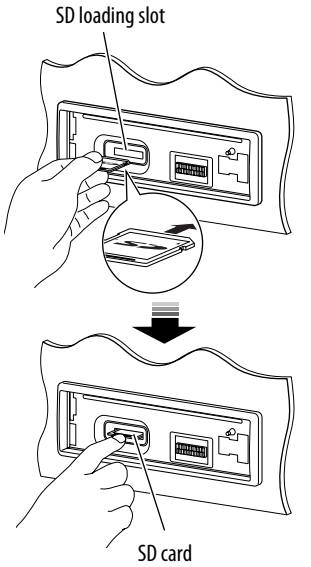
Playing from an SD card

Before detaching the control panel, turn off the power.

1



2

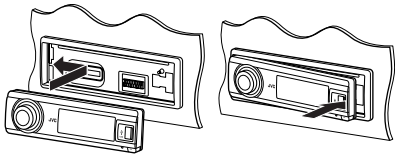


Press in the SD card until you hear a clicking sound.

To eject the SD card, press the SD card again.

- Press the SD card softly (do not release your finger quickly); otherwise, the SD card may pop out from the unit.

3 Attach the control panel.



4

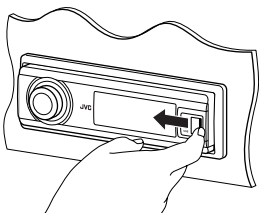
- The control panel goes back to the previous position.

Playback starts automatically if tracks are recorded.

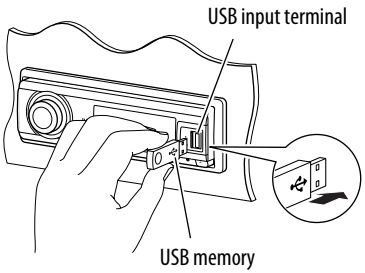
Playing from a USB memory

This unit can play MP3/WMA tracks stored in a USB memory.
All tracks in the USB memory will be played repeatedly until you change the source.
- Removing the USB memory will also stop playback.

1



2

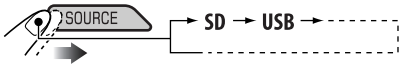


To detach the USB memory, straightly pull it out from the unit.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the SD card/USB memory when it might hinder your safety driving.
- Make sure all important data have been backed up to avoid losing the data.

If an SD card or USB memory has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.
- If a different SD card or USB memory is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

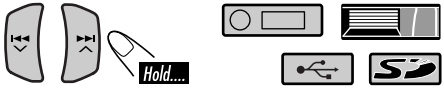
About MP3 and WMA tracks

MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."

About the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.
- You can also connect MP3-incompatible CD changers. However, these units are not compatible with MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the CH-X99, CH-X100, and KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.
- You cannot play any WMA disc in the CD changer.
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

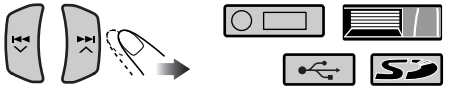
To fast-forward or reverse the track



Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

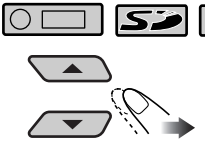
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB)

For MP3 tracks:

For WMA tracks:



- Holding the buttons can display the Disc List ( ) and Folder List (/ /), see the following.

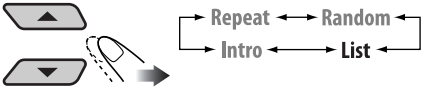
Other main functions

Selecting a disc/folder/track on the list

- This function is not available for an audio CD or a CD Text when the source is "CD."

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2



3 **Select a list type.**

*1 *Selectable only when the source is "CD-CH."*

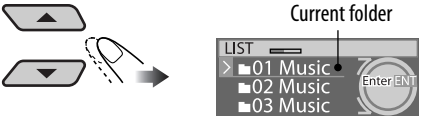
*2 *Appears only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB.*

4 **Confirm the selection.**

The selected list appears on the display.

- You can move to the other list by turning the control dial.

5 **Select a disc/folder/file from the list.**



Ex.: When "Folder" is selected on step **3**

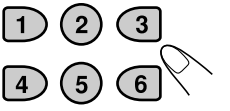
Only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB:
If you select the current disc/folder (highlighted on the screen), its Folder/File List appears.

6 **Starts playback.**

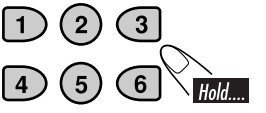
When using the remote controller

- To directly select a disc ( )
- To directly select a track of an audio CD or a CD Text ( )
- To directly select an MP3/WMA folder (/ /)

To select a number from 1 – 6:



To select a number from 7 (1) – 12 (6):



For MP3/WMA folders:
It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

1

2 After making sure "No Eject?" is selected...

- "No Eject" flashes, and the disc cannot be ejected.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure after making sure "Eject OK?" is selected.

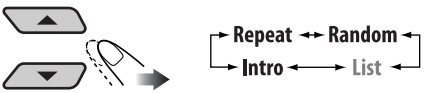
- "Eject OK" flashes on the display.

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



3 Select one of the items (see the following table).

4 Finish the procedure.

Intro	Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...
Track	: All tracks of the current playback media. [ ]
Folder*1	: First track of all folders of the current playback media. [ ]
Disc*2	: First track of all the inserted discs. [ ]
Off	: Cancels.

Repeat	Plays repeatedly
Track	: The current track. [ ]
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder. [ ]
Disc*2	: All tracks of the inserted discs. [ ]
Off	: Cancels.

Random	Plays at random
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. [ ]
Disc	: All tracks of the current disc. [ ]
All*3	: All tracks of the inserted discs/ media. [ ]
Off	: Cancels.

*1 *Only while playing a media (MP3/WMA/SD/ USB).*

*2 *Only when the source is CD-CH.*

*3 *Only when the source is CD-CH, SD, or USB.*

ENGLISH

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes (DSP)

You can create a more acoustic sound field such as in a theater, hall, etc.

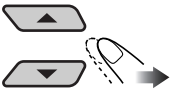
- When crossover network (see page 21) is activated, the DSP mode is fixed to "Defeat."

DSP modes

Defeat (No acoustic effect is applied), Theater, Hall, Club, Dome, Studio, V.Cancel (Voice Cancel: Reduces the vocal sounds. Good for mastering your favorite songs—Karaoke.)

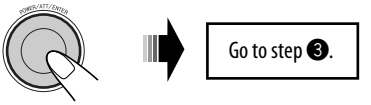
1 Enter the DSP menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the DSP modes.



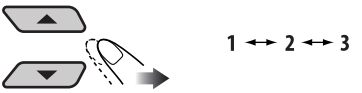
- **To finish the procedure**

- **To adjust the effect level**



For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the effect level is not adjustable.

3 Adjust the effect level.



- **To finish the procedure**

To make more precise settings, see the following.

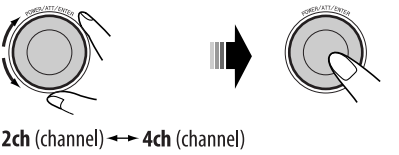
To cancel the acoustic effect, select "Defeat" in step 2.

Precise settings for the DSP modes

1 Select a DSP mode.

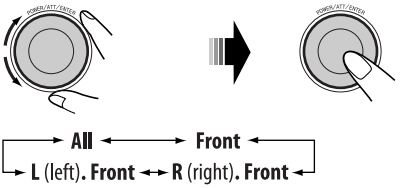
2 Select the number of the built-in speakers.

- For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the speaker number is fixed to "4ch."

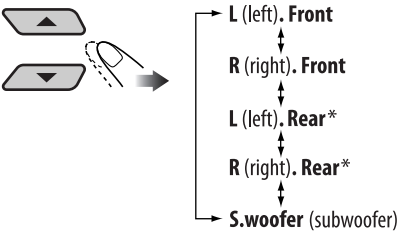


2ch (channel) ↔ **4ch** (channel)

3 Select your listening seat position.

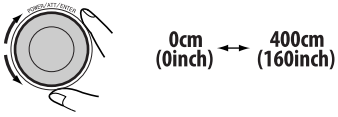


4 Select the speaker to be adjusted.



* *Appears only when "4ch" is selected in step* **2**.

5 Select the distance between the selected speaker and the seat.



Once you have set the distance, it is memorized for each seat position selected in step **3**. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select the seat position.

To change the measuring unit

6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to adjust the distance for the other speakers.

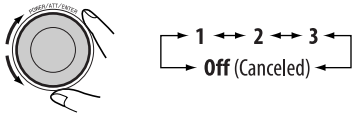
7 Finish the procedure.

Activating BBE Digital

BBE Digital is a digital processing method to restore the brilliance and clarity of the original live sound in recording, broadcasts, etc. When a speaker reproduces sound, it introduces frequency-dependent phase shifting, causing high-frequency sounds to take longer to reach the ear than low frequency sounds.
BBE Digital adjusts the phase relationship between the low, mid, and high frequencies by adding a progressively longer delay time to the low and mid frequencies, so that all frequencies reach the listener's ears at the proper time. A more brilliance and clearer sound is heard.

1 Enter the BBE menu (see page 4).

2 Select the effect level.



3 Finish the procedure.

Using the equalizer—EQ

You can adjust the sound equalization patterns to your preference by using either Graphic EQ or Parametric EQ.

- Adjust the equalizer to match the reproducible frequency range of the connected speakers; otherwise, the adjustments may not be effective.

Selecting preset sound modes—Graphic EQ

Sound modes

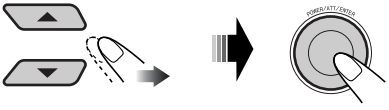
Flat (No sound mode is applied), HardRock, R&B (Rhythm&Blues), Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User 1, User 2, User 3

1 Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).

2

Graphic ↔ P.metric

3 Select a sound mode.



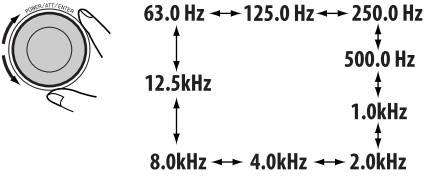
4 Finish the procedure.

ENGLISH

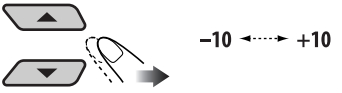
Storing your own sound modes

1 Select a sound mode.

2 Select a frequency band.



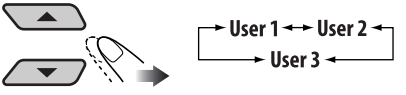
3 Adjust the enhanced level for the selected frequency band.



4 Repeat steps **2** and **3** to adjust the other frequency bands.

5

6 Select one of the user modes.

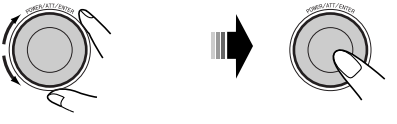


7 Store the adjustments.

Adjusting Parametric EQ

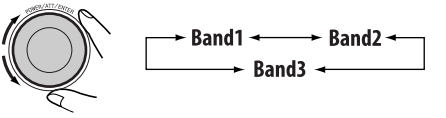
1 Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).

2



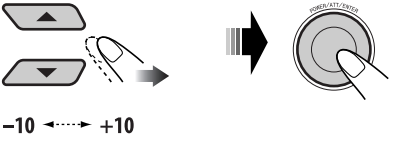
Graphic ↔ P.metric

3 Select a band.



Band1 : 20.0 Hz – 1.2 kHz
Band2 : 80.0 Hz – 5.0 kHz
Band3 : 315.0 Hz – 20 kHz

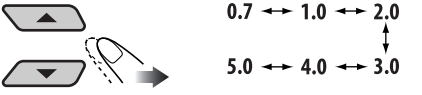
4 Adjust the enhanced level for the selected band.



5 Select the frequency.

- Band 1/2/3 are required to be preset at least 5 steps (frequencies) away from each other. (Only selectable frequencies are shown on the display.)

6 Select the band width (Q).



- To adjust the other bands, press BACK. Then repeat steps **3** to **6**.

7 Finish the procedure.

Once you have made adjustments, it is memorized. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select Parametric EQ.

Activating crossover network

By activating crossover network, you can allocate different frequency range of sound signals to different speakers to match their characteristic.

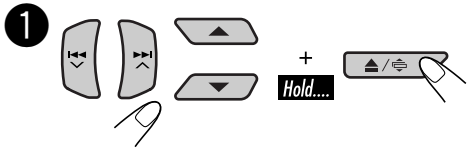
If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following:

- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For 3-way network speaker system, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

You cannot perform other operations until you finish the following procedure.

While the power is turned off...

❶



❷

❸

- **To cancel the procedure,** press and hold POWER/ATT/ENTER. The power turns off.

❹ **Finish the procedure.**

- X-OVER indicator lights up (in sequence with other indicators).

To cancel Crossover, repeat the same procedure. Make sure that "X-Over Off OK?" appears on the display.

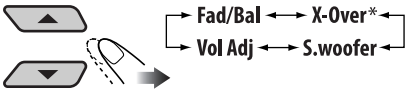
- X-OVER indicator goes off.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

❶ **Enter the SEL menu (see page 4).**

❷ **Select a setting item.**



* *Appears only when crossover network is activated (see left column).*

When selecting "Fad/Bal," "X-Over," or "S.woofer," press POWER/ATT/ENTER to enter its submenu.

❸ **Adjust the selected setting item. (See the following for details.)**

- To adjust other SEL settings, press BACK. Then repeat steps ❷ and ❸.

❹ **Finish the procedure.**

To adjust fader and balance—Fad/Bal

- **Fad (fader)**
  Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.

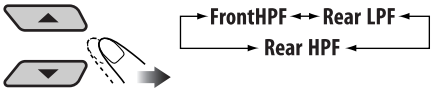
- **Bal (balance)**
  Adjust the left and right speaker balance.

ENGLISH

To adjust reproduced frequency level—X-Over

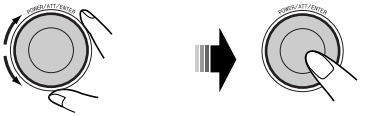
This setting is available only when crossover network (see page 21) is activated.

1 Select a filter.



HPF (Front/Rear)	: Frequencies lower than the selected level are cut-off.
LPF (Rear)	: Frequencies higher than the selected level are cut-off.

2 Select "On" to activate the selected filter.
- If you connect high-range speakers to Front or Rear output, select "On" for the corresponding HPF to prevent the speakers from being damaged.



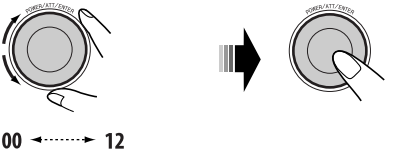
3 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected speakers.

1.6kHz – 16.0kHz : Front HPF and Rear LPF
31.5 Hz – 200.0Hz : Rear HPF

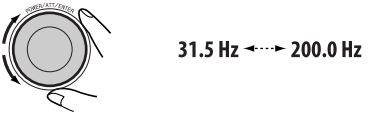
4 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).

To adjust subwoofer output—S.woofer

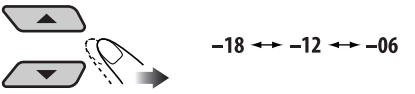
1 Adjust the output level.



2 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected subwoofer.



3 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).

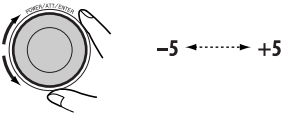


To adjust the input level of each source—Vol Adj

This setting is required for each source except for FM.
Once an adjustment is made, it will be memorized. When you change the source the volume level will automatically increase or decrease according to the adjusted level.

1 Select a source before entering the SEL menu.

2 Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.

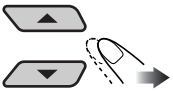


General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).

2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other PSM items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Demo Display demonstration	• **On** [Initial]	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [8].
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Anime Animation	• **On** [Initial]	: An animation screen appears when you turn on or off the power, change the source, and when you select an EQ, MENU, or DSP.
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Clock H Hour adjustment	**0** – **23** (**1** – **12**) [Initial: 0 (0:00)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
Clock M Minute adjustment	**00** – **59** [Initial: 00 (0:00)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours** [Initial]	: See also page 8 for setting.
CLK Adj Clock adjustment	• **Auto** [Initial]	: The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal.
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Scroll*1	• **Once** [Initial]	: For track information: scrolls the track information once. For RDS Radiotext: scrolls the text message continuously. For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text.
	• **Auto**	: For track information: repeats scrolling (in 5-second intervals in between). For RDS Radiotext: scrolls the text message continuously. For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text.
	• **Off**	: For track information: cancels. For RDS Radiotext: shows only the first page of the text message. For DAB text: shows only headline if any.

Continued on the next page

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Dimmer	• **Auto** [Initial]	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights.
	• **Time Set**	: Sets the timer for dimmer, see page 25 for setting. From: Any hour; To: Any hour
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
	• **On**	: Activates dimmer. (Does not work if "Bright" is set to "1.")
Bright Display brightness	**1** – **10** [Initial: 8]	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible. (If "Dimmer" is set to "On," selecting "1" to "4" takes no effect.)
ID3 Tag Tag display	• **On** [Initial]	: Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks.
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Theme Display theme	• **Large** (**1** [Initial] or **2**)	: Select the display theme for large graphic display, [5]. See page 26 for setting.
	• **Small** (**1** [Initial] or **2**)	: Select the display theme for small graphic display, [5]. See page 26 for setting.
PTY Stby PTY standby	29 PTY codes (see page 11) [Initial: News]	: Activates PTY Standby Reception with one of the PTY codes, [12].
AF-Reg Alternate frequency/ Regionalization reception	• **AF** [Initial]	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [13, 31].
	• **AF Reg**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme.
	• **Off**	: Cancels (not selectable when "DAB AF" is set to "ON").
TA Vol Traffic announcement volume	**0** – **30** or **50**[*2] [Initial: 15]	: When a traffic programme (TA) is received, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level.
P-Search Programme search	• **On**	: Activates Programme Search, [13].
	• **Off** [Initial]	: Cancels.
IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** [Initial]	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between close stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)
	• **Wide**	: Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
DAB AF[*3] Alternative Frequency Reception	• **On** [Initial]	: Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations, [31]. • The AF indicator lights up.
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Announce[*3] Announcement Standby Reception	9 announcement types (see page 31) [Initial: Travel]	: Select one of the announcement types for Announcement Standby Reception.

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Beep Key-touch tone	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Activates the key-touch tone. : Deactivates the key-touch tone.
Ext In*4 External input	• **Changer** [Initial] • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [14] or an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player, [27]. : To use any other external component, [32]
Tel Telephone muting	• **Muting 1/ Muting 2** • **Off** [Initial]	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone. • If CD/CD-CH/SD/USB/iPod/D. player has been selected as the source, playback pauses during telephone muting. : Cancels.
Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR** • **Off**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to avoid damaging the speakers.) : Deactivates the built-in amplifier.

*1 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*
*2 *Depends on the amplifier gain control.*
*3 *Displayed only when DAB tuner is connected.*
*4 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, SD, USB, or LINE-IN.*

Selecting timer for the dimmer

You can dim the display at night or as you set the timer.

1 Select "Dimmer" from the PSM menu.

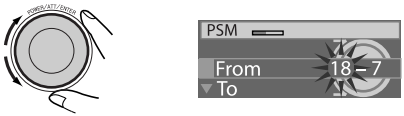
2 Select "Time Set."

3 Adjust the dimmer time.

1 Set the dimmer start time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

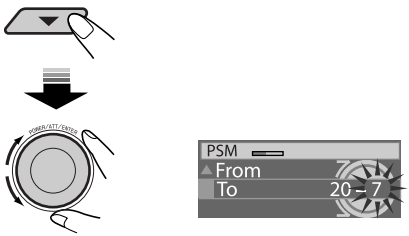
12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]



2 Set the dimmer end time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]



4 Finish the procedure.

Selecting the graphic theme

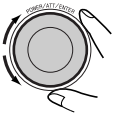
You can select the graphic theme for large and small display sizes (see also page 5).

1 Select "Theme" from the PSM menu.

2 Select the size of the display.

Large ↔ Small

3 Select the theme.



1 ↔ 2

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select the other display size and theme.

5 Finish the procedure.

To show the selected display theme, press DISP repeatedly while playing a source.

Title assignment

You can assign titles to CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer) and the external components (LINE-IN and EXT-IN).

Sources	Maximum number of characters
CDs/CD-CH*	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)
External component	Up to 16 characters

* *You cannot assign names to any discs other than conventional CDs.*

1 Select the sources.

- For CDs in this unit: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select "CD-CH," then select a disc number.
- For external component: Select "LINE-IN" or "EXT-IN."

2 Enter the TITLE menu (see page 4).

3 Assign a title.

1 **Select a character set.**

A (A – Z: upper case) → **a** (a – z: lower case) → **0** (numbers and symbols) → **Á** (Accented letters: upper case) → **á** (Accented letters: lower case) → (back to the beginning)

2 **Select a character.**

3 **Move to the next (or previous) character position.**

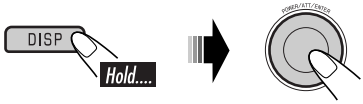
4 **Repeat steps 1 and 3 until you finish entering the title.**

4 Finish the procedure.

- To cancel the title entry without registration, press MENU.

To erase the entire title

In step **3**...



Available characters

In addition to the Roman alphabets (A – Z, a – z), the following characters will be used.

Accented letters: upper case

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Đ	Ŧ	Ľ	İ	Ų	ð	space							

Accented letters: lower case

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ľ	ı	ij	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

Before operating your iPod or D. player:
Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **Interface adapter for iPod®**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- **D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Caution:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle’s ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

Preparations:

Make sure “Changer” is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

1

2

Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused*1 or stopped*2 previously.

Continued on the next page

3 **Adjust the volume.**

4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 18 – 22.)**

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause*1 **or stop***2 **playback** To resume playback, press it again.	
To fast-forward or reverse the track	
To go to the next or previous tracks	

*1 *For iPod*

*2 *For D. player*

Selecting a track from the menu

1 **Enter the main menu.**

Now the ▲/▼/|◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*.

* *The menu selecting mode will be canceled:*
- *If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.*
- *When you confirm the selection of a track.*

2 **Select the desired menu.**

For iPod:
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:
Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔ Genre ↔ Track ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 **Confirm the selection.**

To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.
- Holding |◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ can skip 10 items at a time.

Selecting the playback modes

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.

Repeat ←→ Random

3 Select an item (see table below).

4 Finish the procedure.

Repeat play	
One	: Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → One" for the D. player.
All	: Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → All" for the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.

Random play	
Album*	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
Song/On	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod or "Random Play → On" of the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.

* *For iPod: Only if you select "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

DAB tuner operations

ENGLISH

What is DAB system?

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) can deliver digital quality sound without any annoying interference and signal distortion. Furthermore, it can carry text, pictures, and data. When transmitting, DAB combines several programmes (called "services") to form one "ensemble." In addition, each "service"—called "primary service"—can also be divided into its components (called "secondary service"). A typical ensemble has six or more programmes (services) broadcast at the same time.

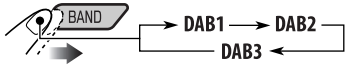
By connecting the DAB tuner, this unit can do the following:

- Tracing the same programme automatically —Alternative Frequency Reception (see "DAB AF" on page 24).

It is recommended to use DAB tuner KT-DB1000 with your unit. If you have another DAB tuner, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied for your DAB tuner.

❶

❷ 

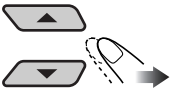
❸ **Start searching for an ensemble.**

When an ensemble is received, searching stops.

To stop searching, press the same button again.

Continued on the next page

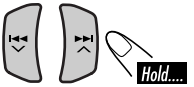
❹ **Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**



To tune in to an ensemble manually

Start searching for an ensemble, as in step ❸...

1



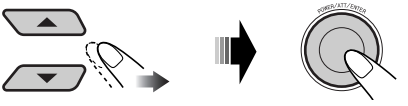
2 **Select a desired ensemble frequency.**

When surrounding sounds are noisy

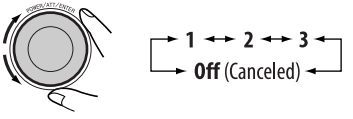
Some service provides Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve for your listening.

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select "DRC."



3 Select one of the DRC signal levels (1, 2, or 3).



The reinforcement level increases from 1 to 3.

4 Finish the procedure.

- The DRC indicator will be highlighted only when receiving DRC signals from the tuned service.

To search for your favorite service

You can search for either Dynamic or Static PTY codes.

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on pages 11 and 12 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and the FM tuner.
- Search will be performed on the DAB tuner only.

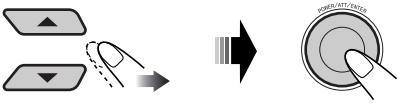
Storing DAB services in memory

You can preset six DAB services (primary) for each band.

1 Select a service you want.

2 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

3 Select "List."

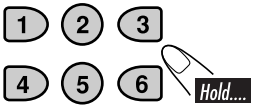


4 Select a preset number.

- You can move to the lists of the other DAB bands, but cannot store a service for the other bands.

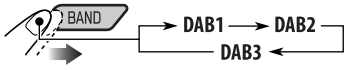
5 **Store the service.**

When using the remote controller
After tuning in to a service you want to preset...



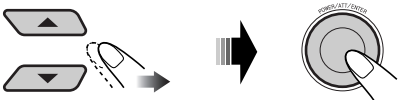
Tuning in to a preset DAB service

1

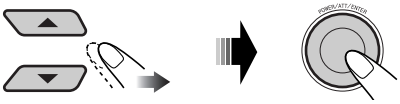


2 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

3 **Select "List."**

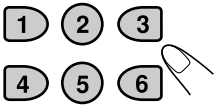


4 **Select a preset number.**



- You can move to the lists of the other DAB bands by turning the control dial.

When using the remote controller
Directly select the preset number.



Using the Standby Receptions

TA (Road Traffic News) Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 11 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot activate TA Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for FM tuner.
- The volume changes to the preset TA volume level (see page 24).

PTY Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 11 for FM RDS stations.
- PTY Standby Reception for DAB tuner works only using a dynamic PTY code.
- You can neither store your favorite PTY nor activate PTY Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.
- You can activate and deactivate PTY Standby Reception when the source is either "FM" or "DAB."

Announcement Standby Reception

Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

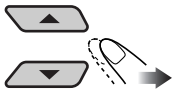
To select your favorite announcement type, see page 24.

Announcement types
Travel, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special, Rad Inf (Radio Information), Sports, Finance

To activate the Announcement Standby Reception

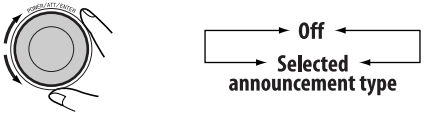
1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select "Announce."**



Continued on the next page

3 **Select an announce type.**



4 **Finish the procedure.**

- If the ANN indicator lights up,
  Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If the ANN indicator flashes,
  Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
  To activate, tune in to another service providing these signals. The ANN indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception

Select "Off" in step **3** above.

- The ANN indicator goes off.

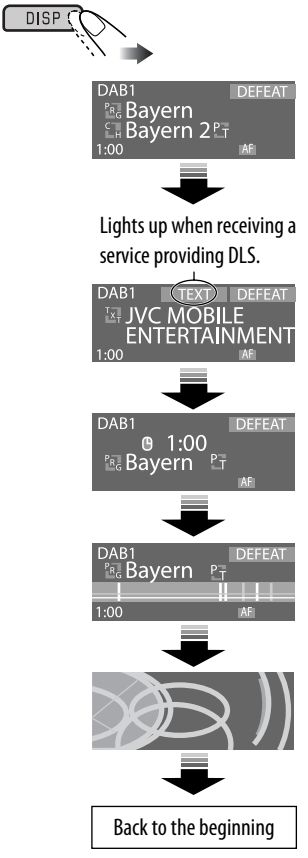
Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception

You can keep listening to the same programme by activating the Alternative Frequency Reception.

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.
To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 24.

To show the Dynamic Label Segment (DLS) information



- The DLS screen will be temporarily canceled when you operate the unit.

Other external component operations

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN plugs on the rear or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

For listening to the SD card/USB memory, see pages 14 – 17; For iPod, or D.player, see pages 27 – 29.

❶

LINE-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN plugs.

EXT-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack.

If "EXT-IN" does not appear, see page 25 and select the external input ("Ext In").

❷ **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

❸ **Adjust the volume.**

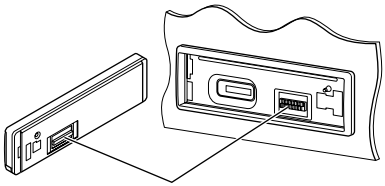
❹ **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 18 – 22.)**

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

Continued on the next page

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

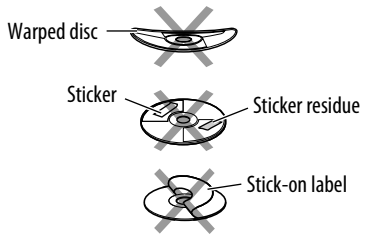
To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

How to handle SD card

SD cards are precision products. DO NOT impact, bend, drop, or wet them.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start from where playback has been stopped previously, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
  - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA VOL) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See page 24.)

- Message service requires the RDS Radiotext signal. It is available on most major stations. If reception is weak, the service may become unavailable. For any questions regarding the content of this service, please contact your broadcaster.
- If you want to know more about RDS, visit «http://www.rds.org.uk».

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA) and MP3/WMA format; MP3/WMA files recorded in an SD card or a USB memory.
- While playing an audio CD: If a title has been assigned to the audio CD (see page 26), it will be shown on the display.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing an MP3/WMA track, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the control panel moves down, and the disc automatically ejects from the loading slot.
- If you keep the control panel open for about 1 minute, (beeps sound when the "Beep" setting is turned "On"—see page 25) the control panel returns to its previous position.
- Do not insert 8 cm discs (single CD) and unusual shape discs (heart, flower, etc.) into the loading slot.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can play back only files of the same type which are first detected if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  - Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the unit.
  - The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  - CD-R/CD-RW on which the files are written with "Packet Write" method.
  - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA discs

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files compliant to ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name.
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters

Continued on the next page

– Romeo*: up to 128 (72) characters
– Joliet*: up to 64 (36) characters
– Windows long file name*: up to 128 (72) characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 313 or more.*

- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, of 200 folders, and of 8 hierarchies.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriated format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA tracks from an SD card or a USB memory

- While playing from an SD card or a USB memory, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some SD cards or USB memories due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB memories and connection ports, some USB memories may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- It is not recommended to use a USB memory wider than 20 mm as it will block you from pressing some buttons on the control panel.
- If the connected USB memory does not have the correct files, “No Files” appears and the unit returns to the previous source.
- This unit can show Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- For SD card: The maximum number of characters for folder name is 8 characters; file names is 12 characters. This unit cannot recognize folder with period (.) on the folder name.
  For USB memory: The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- For SD card: This unit can recognize a total of 255 files and 63 folders.
  For USB memory: This unit can recognize a total of 2 500 files and 250 folders (999 files per folder).
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops. Next time you select the same source again, playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes—DSP

- Effectiveness of "V.Cancel" depends on the recording condition of the sources:
  - Monaural sources such as AM and monaural FM broadcasting programs.
  - Multiplex sound sources.
  - Sources recorded with duets, strong echo, a chorus, or only a few instruments.
- When "4ch" is selected, rear speakers are used only to reproduce reflections and reverberations in order to creates a being-there feeling in your car compartment.
- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate effect may not be obtained.
- You cannot adjust the effect level and speaker number when "Defeat" is selected with crossover network activated.

Storing your own sound modes

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press MENU to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to the center.
- Subwoofer out setting takes effect only when a subwoofer is connected.
- You cannot change the input level—"VolAdjust" of the FM stations. If the source is FM, "Fix" will appear when you try to adjust it.

General settings — PSM

- "Auto Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming. In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any one other than "Auto."
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 discs, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc in the unit and vise versa.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
  - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 23). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

For D. player users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>

DAB tuner operations

- Only primary DAB services can be presetted even when you store a secondary service.
- A previously preset DAB service is erased when a new DAB service is stored in the same preset number.

Continued on the next page

Preset frequency level settings for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset equalizing value								
	63 Hz	125 Hz	250 Hz	500 Hz	1 kHz	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12.5 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+06	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+02
R&B	+06	+04	+04	+04	00	+02	+02	+02	+06
Pop	00	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+02	+02	+04
Jazz	+06	+04	+02	+02	+02	+02	+02	+06	+04
Dance	+08	+04	+02	00	–04	–02	00	+02	+02
Country	+04	+02	00	00	00	00	00	+02	+04
Reggae	+06	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+04	+04	+06
Classic	+04	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	00
User 1	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 2	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see pages 4 and 33).
	• "Push Reset" appears on the display and the control panel movement is freezed.	Reset the unit (see page 2). If this does not work, check the installation.
FM/AM/RDS	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.
	• "No Text" appears on the display.	The station does not support RDS RT or the reception is weak. Check the Network-Tracking Reception (see page 13).
	• "Loading" does not disappear.	The receiving signal is temporarily too weak to receive a complete message although the service is available. Check the Network-Tracking Reception (see page 13).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 17). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "Loading Error," or "Eject Error" appears).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("File Check" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs while playing. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• "No Music" appears on the display.	Change the disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 26).

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
SD card/USB memory playback	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not an MP3/WMA track. Skip to another file. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• "File Check" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Play a device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	• The device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the device are corrupted. • Do not pull out or attach the USB memory repeatedly while "File Check" appears on the display.
	• "SD Loading Error" appears on the display while playing tracks from an SD card.	Detach the control panel and reinsert the SD card. The control panel goes back to initial position (Angle 1).
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	MP3/WMA tracks have not been properly copied into the device. Copy MP3/WMA tracks again into the device, and try again.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 26).
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
Sounds	• DSP mode cannot be selected other modes than "Defeat." • Only high range sound or low range sound is reproduced though full range speakers are connected.	Deactivate crossover network (see page 21).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. player playback	• The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press POWER/ATT/ENTER before performing the operation.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/ D. player.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation using the control panel (see page 28).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	• No sound can be heard. • "ERROR 01" appears on the display when connecting a D. player.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "No Files" or "No Track" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/ D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's or D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.
DAB tuner	• "No DAB Signal" appears on the display.	Search for another ensemble.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 2).
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
	• "Antenna Power NG" appears on the display.	Check the DAB aerial and its connections.

- *Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.*
- *SD logo is a trademark.*
- *Manufactured under license from BBE Sound, Inc.*
  Licensed by BBE Sound, Inc. under USP5510752 and 5736897. BBE and BBE symbol are registered trademarks of BBE Sound, Inc.
- *iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.*

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies: Graphic EQ: 63 Hz, 125 Hz, 250 Hz, 500 Hz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, 4 kHz, 8 kHz, 12.5 kHz (9 bands) Parametric EQ: 3 bands (Band 1/2/3): 20 Hz, 25 Hz, 31.5 Hz, 40 Hz, 50 Hz, 63 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 125 Hz, 160 Hz, 200 Hz, 250 Hz, 315 Hz, 400 Hz, 500 Hz, 630 Hz, 800 Hz, 1 kHz, 1.2 kHz, 1.6 kHz, 2 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 3.2 kHz, 4 kHz, 5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 8 kHz, 10 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 16 kHz, 20 kHz (31 frequencies)	
		Level:	±10 dB
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Level/Impedance:	Line-In:	1.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Line-Out:	5.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
	Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:		LINE IN, CD changer

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/65 dB
	LW Tuner	Sensitivity:	50 µV

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:	Compact disc player	
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		98 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		102 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

SD CARD	Format:		FAT 12/16
	Storage:		8 MB – 512 MB
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 192 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

USB MEMORY	Format:		FAT 12/16/32
	Storage:		Less than 4 GB (1 partition type)
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	Max. Current:		Less than 500 mA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
			MPEG-2.5: 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	5 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	8 kHz – 48 kHz

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 162 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.7 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de fonctionnement?

Réinitialisez votre appareil

Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

JVC

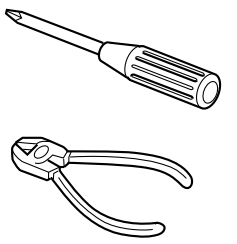
EN, FR

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0106DTSMDTJEIN

KD-SH1000

Installation/Connection Manual
Manuel d'installation/raccordement



GET0366-010A
[EX/EU]

0106DTSMDTJEIN
EN, FR

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

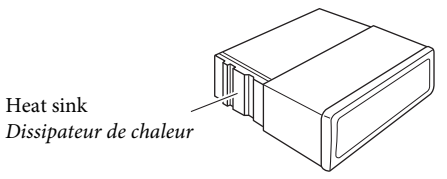
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. *Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques:

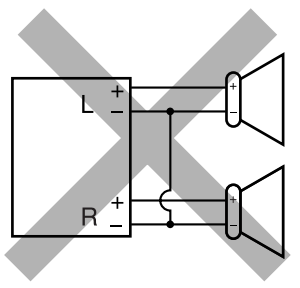
- *Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 50 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre* **4 Ω et 8 Ω***). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amp Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 25 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
- *Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.*
- *Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.*

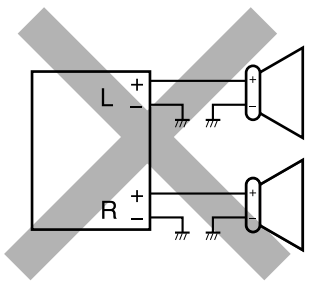
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

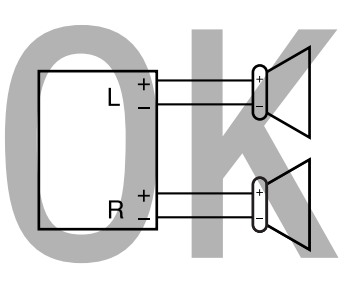
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*







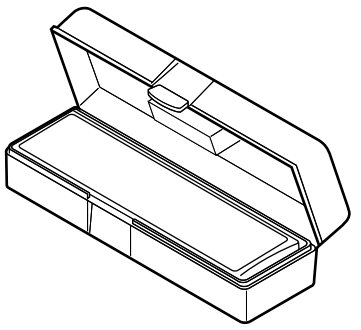
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

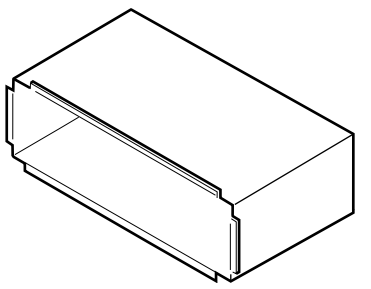
Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Les pièces suivantes sont fournies avec cet appareil. Si quelque chose manquait, consultez votre revendeur autoradio JVC immédiatement.

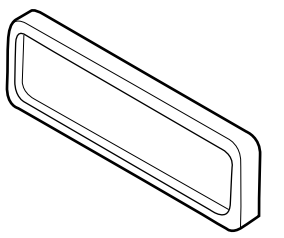
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande



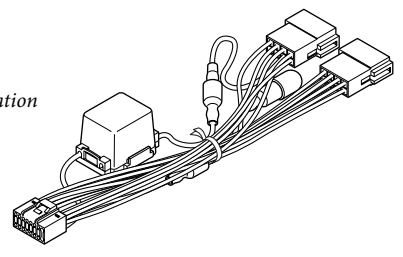
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Manchon



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Plaque d'assemblage



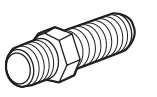
Ⓔ
Power cord
Cordon d'alimentation



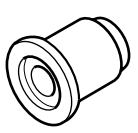
Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)

Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Ecrou d'arrêt (M5)

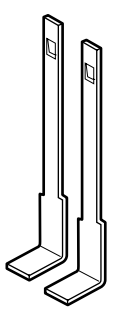
Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
Boulon de montage (M5 × 20 mm)



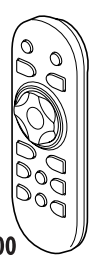
Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Amortisseur en caoutchouc



Ⓙ
Handles
Poignées



Ⓚ
Remote controller
Télécommande



RM-RK300

Ⓛ
Battery
Pile

CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

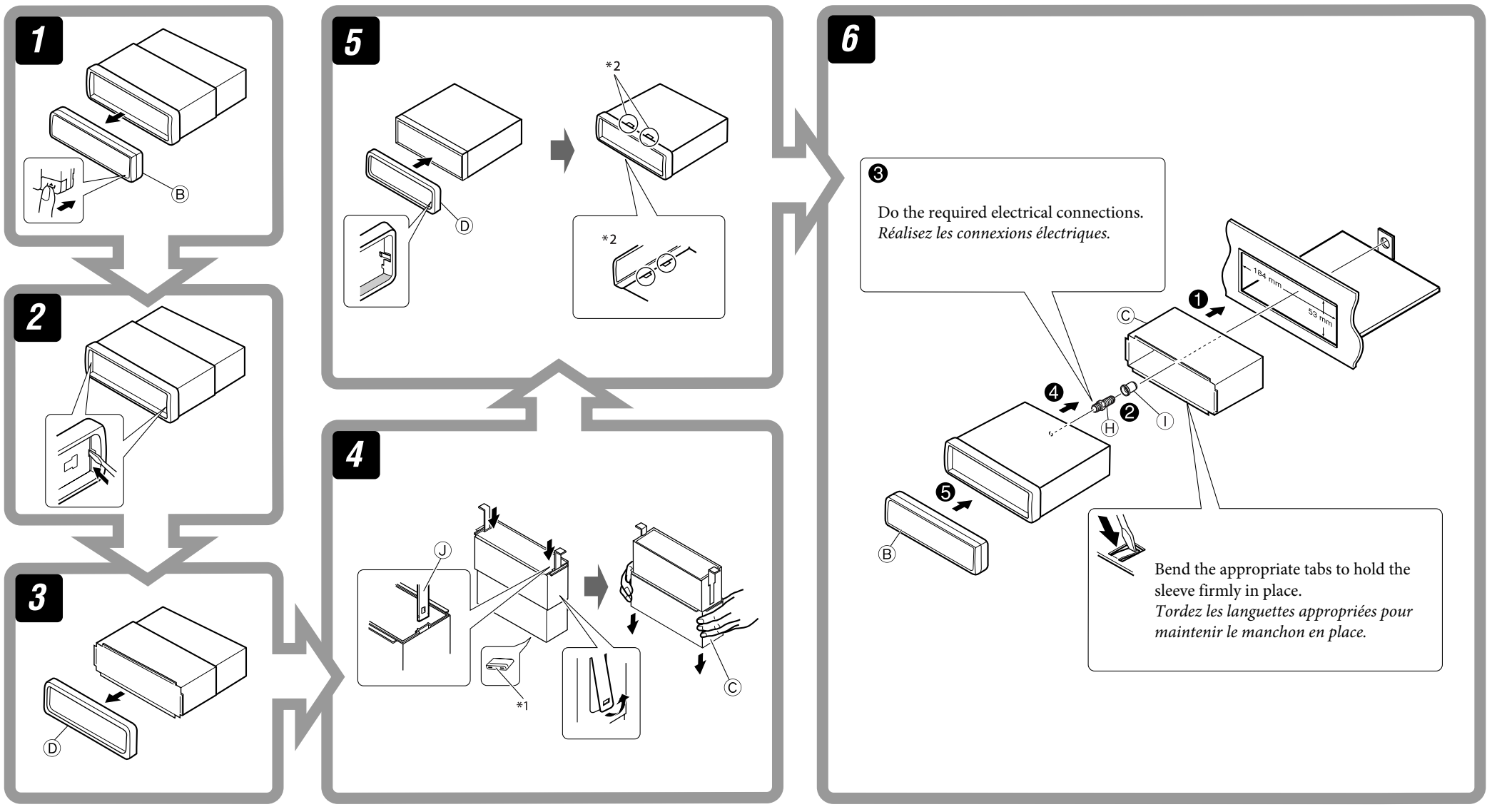
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- *Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.*



*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*1 *Lorsque vous mettez l'appareil à la verticale, faire attention de ne pas endommager le fusible situé sur l'arrière.*

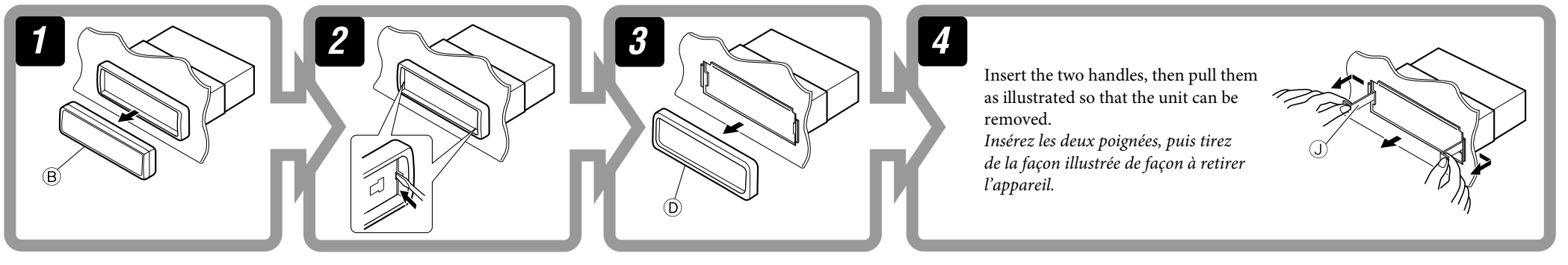
*2 Fit the protrusions outside the unit.
*2 *Fixez les protubérances à l'extérieur de l'appareil.*

Removing the unit

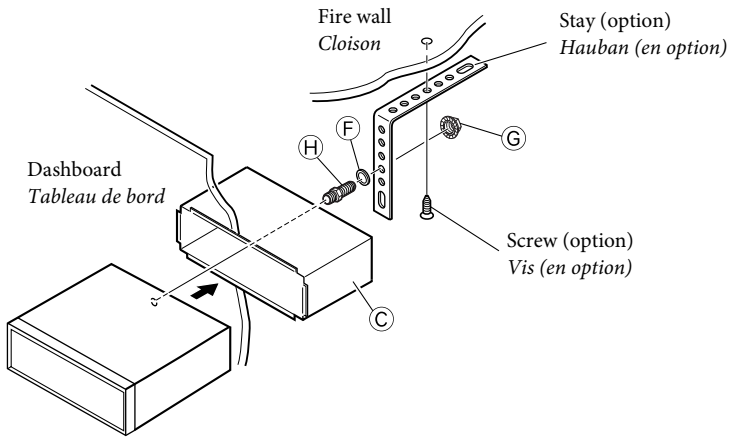
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

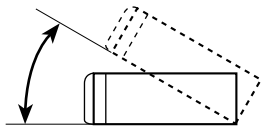
Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.



When using the optional stay / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option

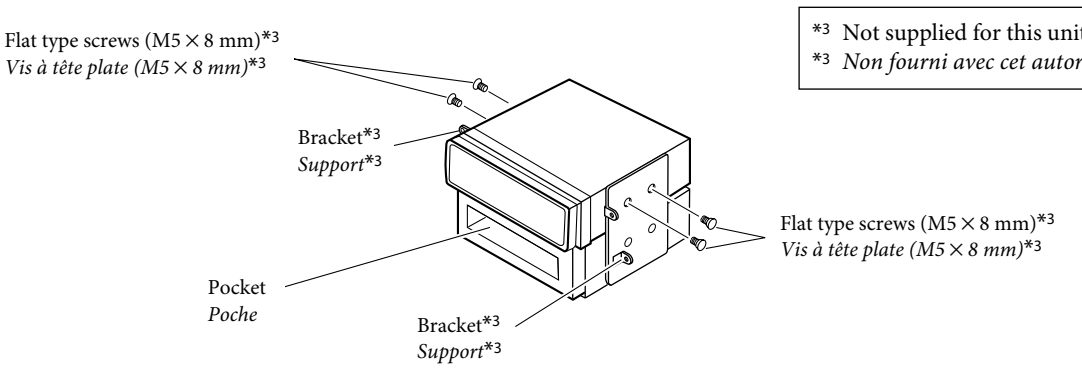




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil scans utiliser de manchon

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
Dans une voiture Toyota, par exemple, retirez d'abord l'autoradio et installez l'appareil à sa place.

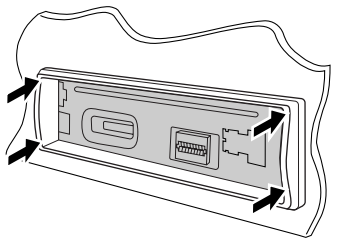


*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 *Non fourni avec cet autoradio.*

Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Remarque : *Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm. Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.*

Caution when installing / Précautions lors de l'installation



Fit the unit into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.

- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration).

Fixez l'appareil sur le manchon de montage en utilisant les quatre coins de la plaque de garniture.

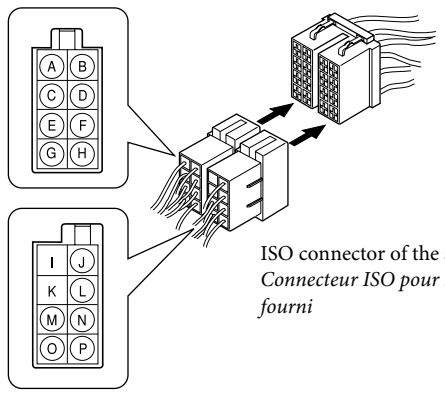
- *NE POUSSEZ PAS sur le panneau (en gris sur l'illustration).*

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Si votre voiture est équippée d'un connecteur ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- *Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.*



From the car body
De la carrosserie de la voiture

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
Connecteur ISO pour le cordon d'alimentation fourni

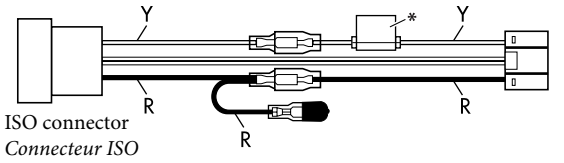
View from the lead side
Vue à partir du côté des fils

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

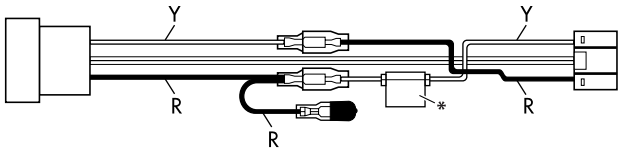
Vous aurrez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.
- *Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.*

Original wiring / *Câblage original*



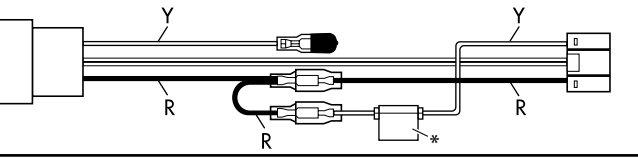
ISO connector
Connecteur ISO

Modified wiring 1 / *Câblage modifié 1*



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension.

Modified wiring 2 / *Câblage modifié 2*



Y: Yellow / *Jaune*
R: Red / *Rouge*
* Choke coil / *Bobine d'arrêt*

B Connections without using the ISO connectors / Connexions sans l'utilisation des connecteurs ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

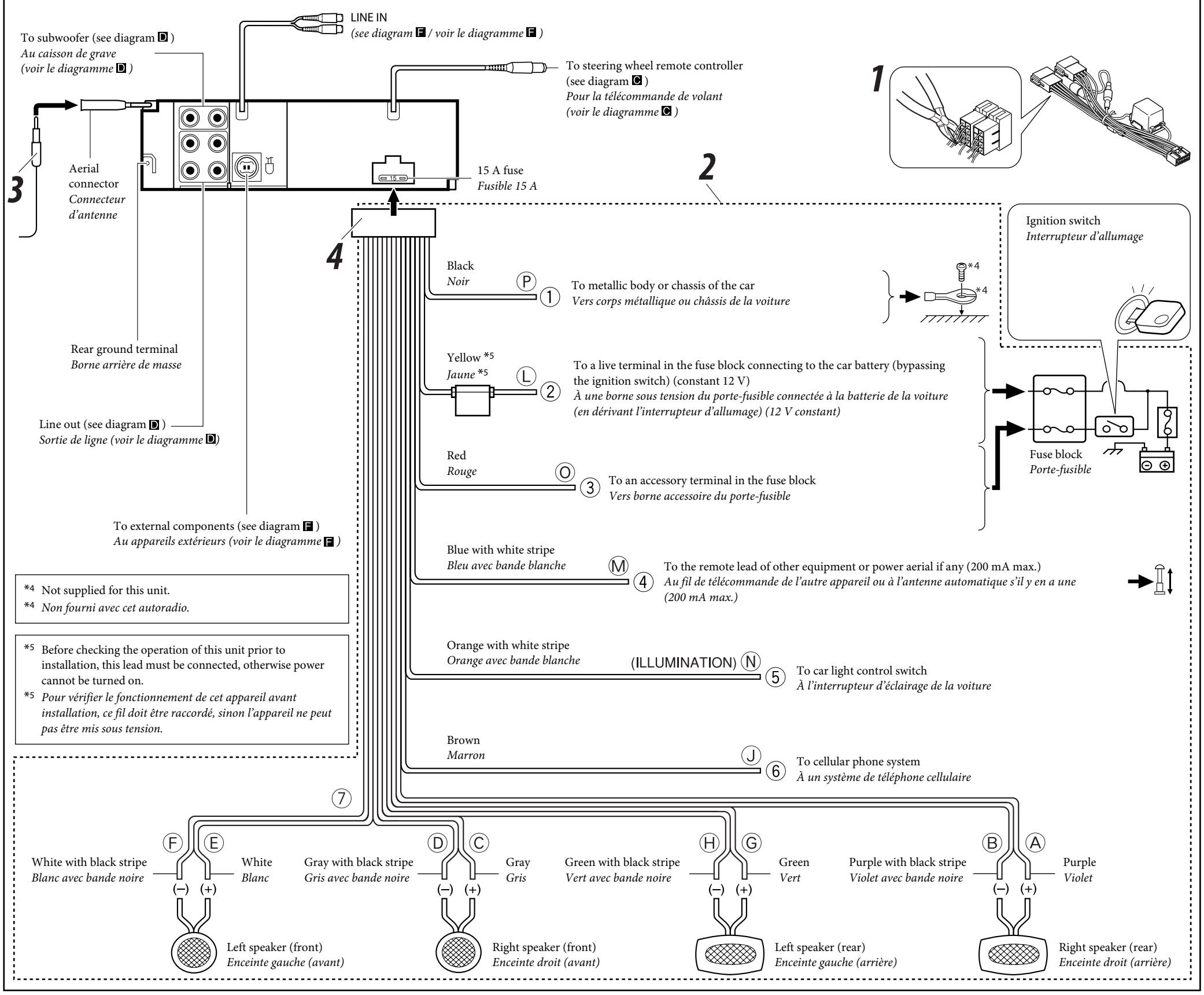
1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

If you have installed 3-way network speaker system in your car, see diagram E for speaker connection.

Avant de commencer la connexion: *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.*
Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. *Coupez le connecteur ISO.*
2. *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*
3. *Connectez le cordon d'antenne.*
4. *Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.*

Si vous avez installé un système d'enceintes à 3 voies, *référez-vous au diagramme E pour la connexion des enceintes.*



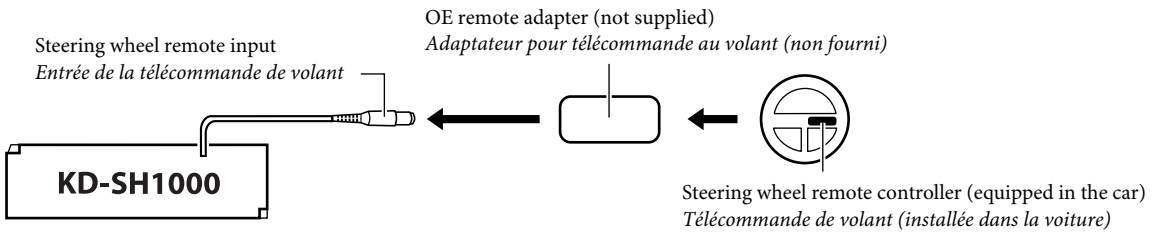
*4 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 *Non fourni avec cet autoradio.*

*5 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
*5 *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*

C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Connexion de la télécommande de volant

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d'autoradio JVC pour les détails.



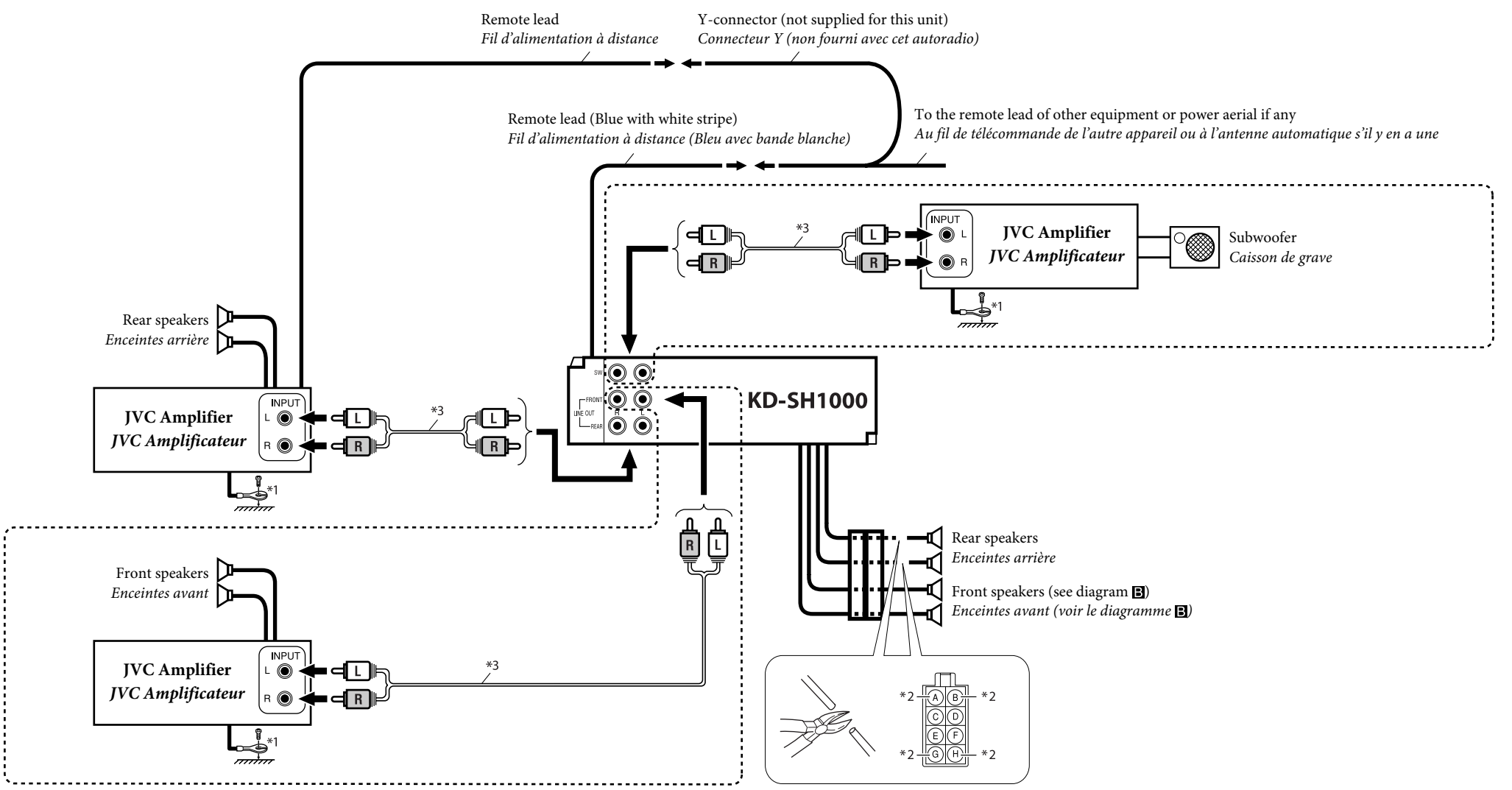
D Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs et/ou caisson de grave

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  - **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
  - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
  - The line output level of this unit is kept high to maintain the hi-fi sounds reproduced from this unit. When connecting an external amplifier to this unit, turn down the gain control on the external amplifier to obtain the best performance from this unit.

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour améliorer votre système stéréo.

- *Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.*
- **Pour l'amplificateur seulement:**
  - **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**
  - *Vous pouvez désactiver l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement à un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs afin d'obtenir un son clair et pour éviter un échauffement interne de l'appareil (voir page 25 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
  - *Le niveau de sortie de ligne de cet appareil est maintenu à un niveau élevé pour maintenir une qualité Hi-Fi pour les sons reproduits par cet appareil. Lors de la connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur à cet appareil, diminuez le réglage du gain sur l'amplificateur extérieur pour obtenir les meilleures performances de cet appareil.*



*1 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*1 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*

*2 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.

*2 *Coupez les fils des enceintes arrière du connecteur ISO de la voiture et connectez-les à l'amplificateur.*

*3 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*3 *Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet autoradio)*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?*

- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* *Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?*

- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*

- **Le son est déformé.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* *La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*

- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* *Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?*

E Speaker connections for 3-way network speaker system / Connexion des enceintes pour un système d'enceintes à 3 voies

You can enjoy a world of "pure audio" in your car by connecting 3-way network speaker system (high-range/mid-range/subwoofer).

Vous pouvez recréer un monde de "son pur" dans votre voiture en connectant un système d'enceintes à trois voies (hautes fréquences/moyennes fréquences/extrêmes graves).

IMPORTANT:

If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following.

- Connect the speaker system as illustrated below.
- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For details about the setting, see pages 21 and 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

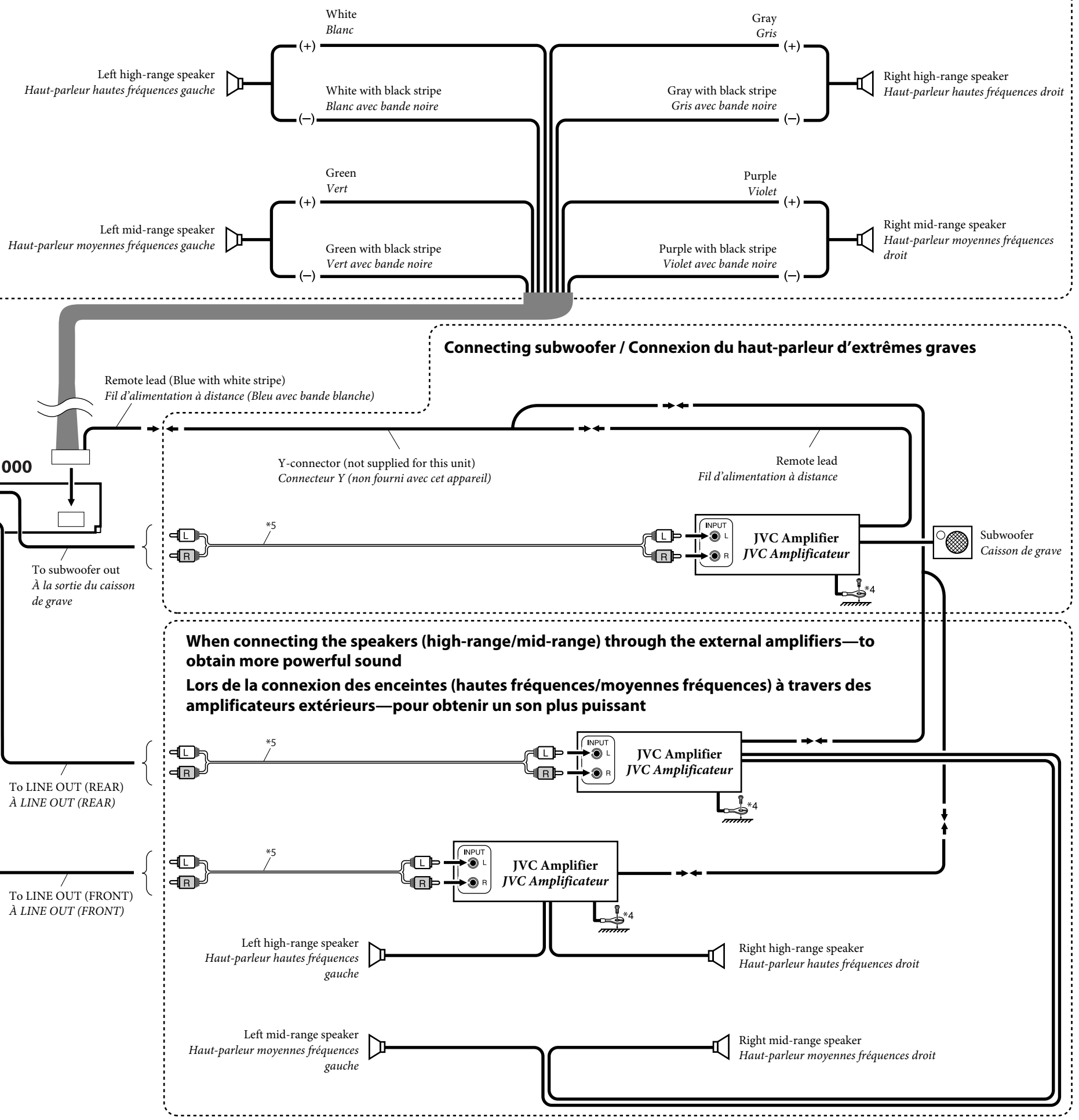
IMPORTANT:

Si vous avez installé un système d'enceintes à trois voies dans votre voiture, assurez-vous de ce qui suit.

- *Connectez le système d'enceintes comme montré ci-dessous.*
- *Avant d'utiliser le système, mettez en service le réseau de transition et préréglez les fréquences de coupure appropriées pour HPF/LPF (plus spécialement pour HPF); sinon, les enceintes risqueraient d'être endommagées.*
- *Pour en savoir plus sur les réglages, référez-vous aux pages 21 et 22 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.*

When connecting the speakers (high-range/mid-range) through the speaker output

Lors de la connexion des enceintes (hautes fréquences/moyennes fréquences) aux sorties d'enceinte



*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*4 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*

*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*5 *Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet autoradio)*

F Connecting the external components / Connexion des appareils extérieurs

CD changer, DAB tuner, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / Changeur de CD, tuner DAB, iPod, Apple® ou lecteur D. JVC

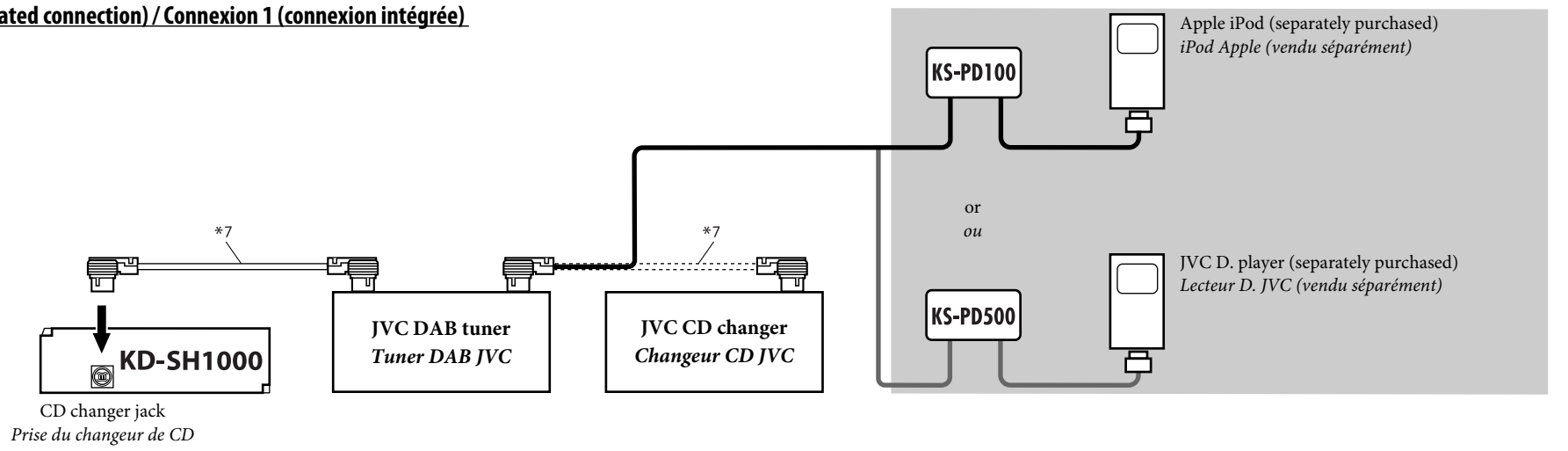
• Set "Changer" for the external input setting (See page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Choisissez "Changer" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieure (Référez-vous à la page 25 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)

You can connect these components in series as illustrated below. The iPod*6 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

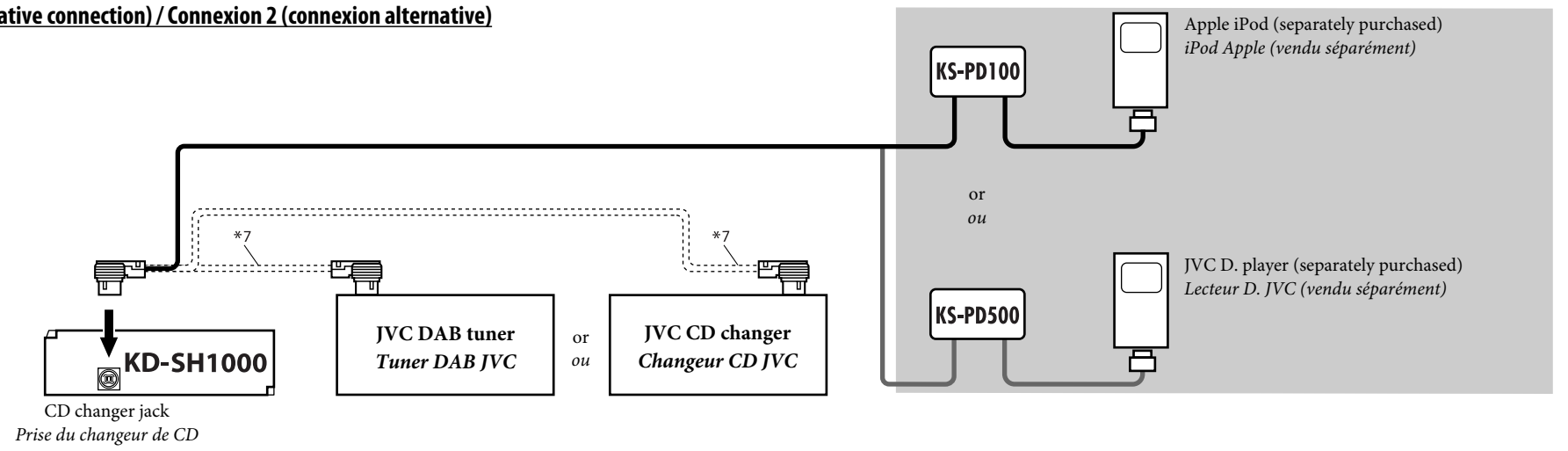
*Vous pouvez connecter ces appareils en série comme montrée sur l'illustration. Le iPod*6 ou le lecteur D. peut être connecté en utilisant un adaptateur d'interface (non fourni)—KS-PD100 (pour iPod) ou KS-PD500 (pour le lecteur D.).*

CAUTION / PRECAUTION:
- Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
- *Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.*

Connection 1 (integrated connection) / Connexion 1 (connexion intégrée)



Connection 2 (alternative connection) / Connexion 2 (connexion alternative)

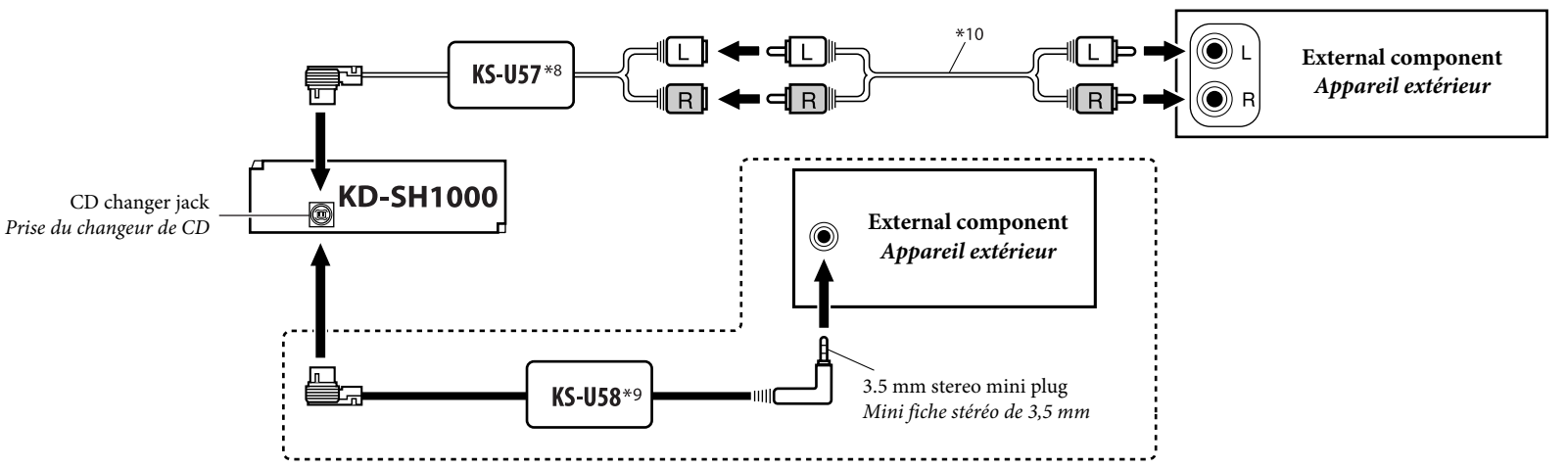


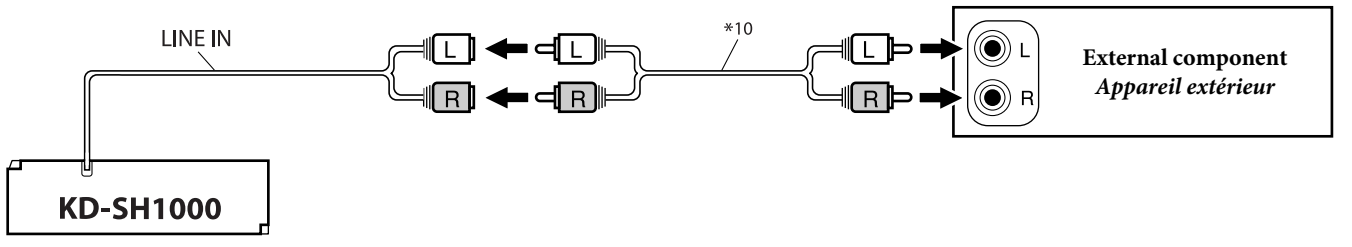
*6 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*6 *iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Computer, Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.*

*7 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer or DAB tuner
*7 *Cordon de connexion fourni avec votre changeur CD ou tuner DAB*

Other external component / Autre appareil extérieur

• Set "Ext In" for the external input setting (See page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Choisissez "Ext In" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieure (Référez-vous à la page 25 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)





*8 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*8 *Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne KS-U57 (non fourni avec cet autoradio)*

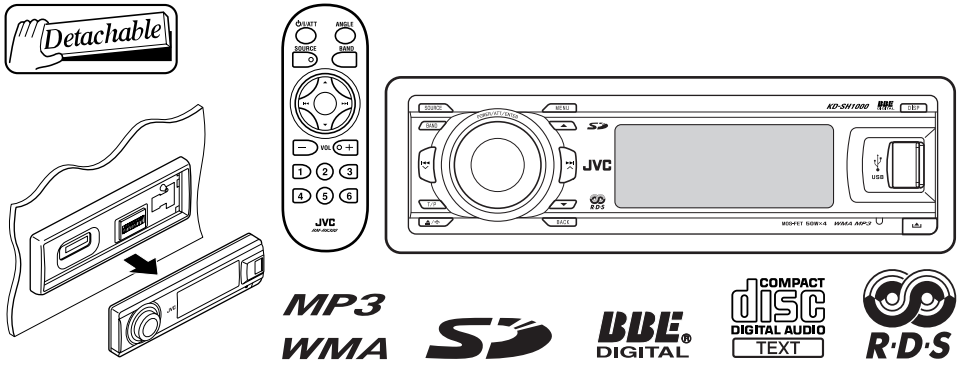
*9 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)
*9 *Adaptateur d'entrée AUX KS-U58 (non fourni avec cet autoradio)*

*10 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*10 *Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet autoradio)*

ENGLISH
DEUTSCH
РУССКИЙ

CD RECEIVER
CD-RECEIVER
РЕСИВЕР С ПРОИГРЫВАТЕЛЕМ КОМПАКТ-ДИСКОВ

KD-SH1000



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 8.
Zum Abbrechen der Displaydemonstration siehe Seite 8.
Информацию об отмене демонстрации функций дисплея см. на стр. 8.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Für den Einbau und die Anschlüsse siehe das eigenständige Handbuch.
Указания по установке и выполнению соединений приводятся в отдельной инструкции.

INSTRUCTIONS
BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG
ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ

GET0366-006A
[EY]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	**ADVARSEL :** Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	**VARNING :** Synlig och osynlig laserstrålning när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	**VARO :** Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Välttä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution on volume setting:

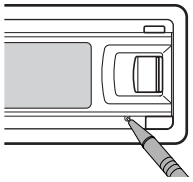
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Notice:

The display window built in this unit has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit's chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

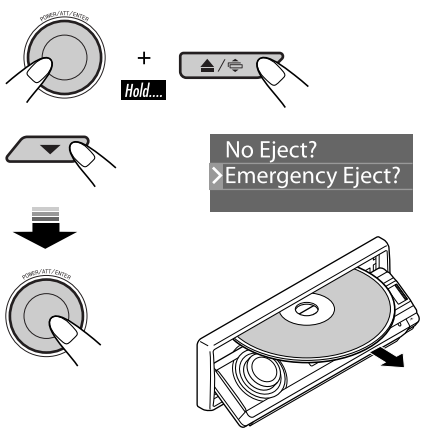
How to reset your unit



- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased.*

How to forcibly eject a disc

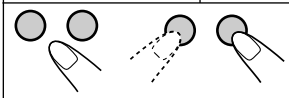
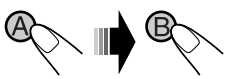
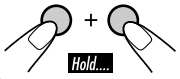
- If an SD card is inserted, eject the SD card first (see page 14).



- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*
- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*

How to read this manual

- Button operations are mainly explained with the illustrations in the table below.
- Some related tips and notes are explained in "More about this unit" (see pages 34 – 38).

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press Ⓐ, then Ⓑ.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.
	Press and hold both buttons at the same time.

The following marks are used to indicate...

: Built-in CD player operations.

: External CD changer operations.

: SD player operations.

: External USB memory operations.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

Control panel 5

Remote controller — RM-RK300 6

Getting started 7
- Basic operations 7

Radio operations 8

FM RDS operations 11
- Searching for your favorite FM RDS programme 11

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations 14
- Playing a disc in the unit 14
- Playing discs in the CD changer 14
- Playing from an SD card 14
- Playing from a USB memory 15

Sound adjustments 18
- Selecting the DSP modes (DSP) 18
- Using the equalizer—EQ 19
- Activating crossover network 21
- Setting the sound modes—SEL 21

General settings — PSM 23

Title assignment 26

iPod®/D. player operations 27

DAB tuner operations 29

Other external component operations ... 33

Maintenance 33

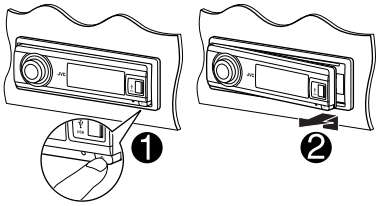
More about this unit 34

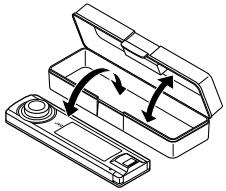
Troubleshooting 38

Specifications 42

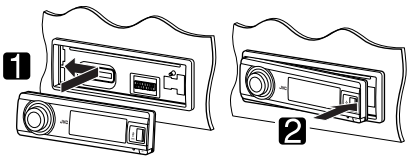
How to detach/attach the control panel

Detaching...





Attaching...



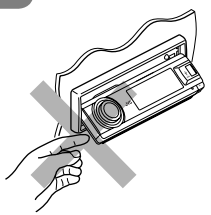
How to change the control panel angle

1

2

When using the remote controller

Caution:



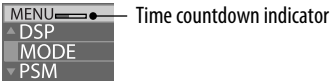
How to enter the various menus

The main menu contains seven menus (MODE, PSM, SEL, TITLE, BBE, EQ, DSP).

- If no operation is done for about 5 seconds, menu screen is canceled.

1

2 Select a menu you want.



3 Enter the selected menu.

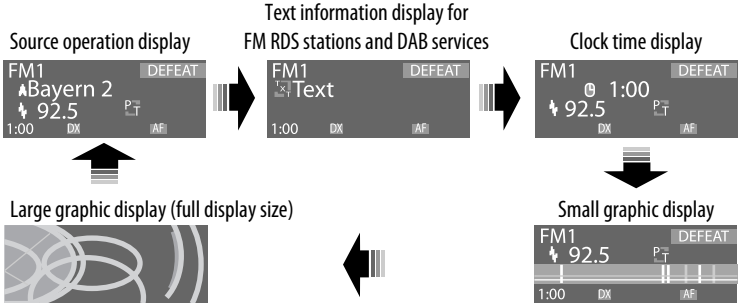
- To go back to the previous screen or exit the MENU screen, press BACK repeatedly.

4 Operate as instructed on the screen.

- To go back to the MENU screen, press MENU.

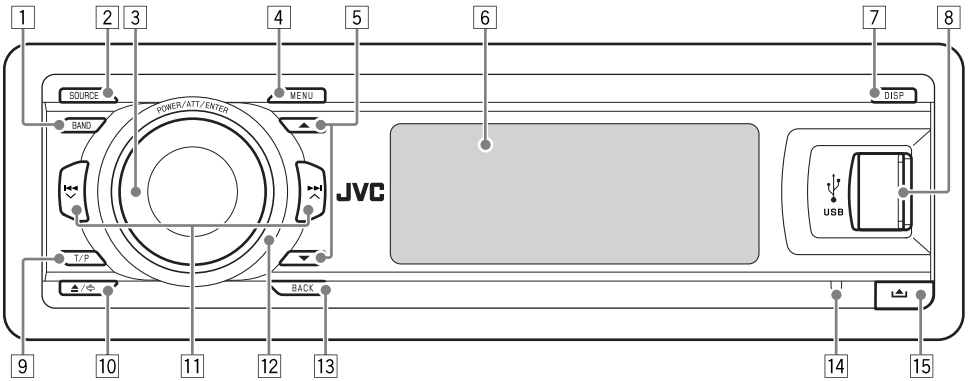
How to change the display information and patterns

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Control panel

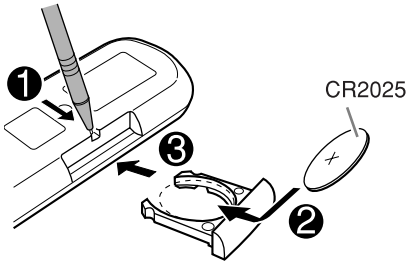
Parts identification



1 BAND button
2 SOURCE button
3 • Control dial
• POWER/ATT (attenuator)/ENTER button
4 MENU button
5 ▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons
6 Display window
7 DISP (display) button
8 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input terminal
9 T/P (traffic programme/programme type) button
10 ⏏ (eject) / (angle) button
11 ⏮ ⏷/⏭ ⏶ buttons
12 Remote sensor
DO NOT expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).
13 BACK button
14 Reset button
15 ⏏ (control panel release) button

Remote controller — RM-RK300

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)

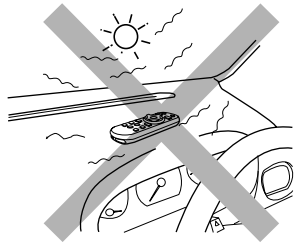


Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.

Warning:

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent; otherwise, it may explode.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach to avoid risk of accident.
- To prevent the battery from over-heating, cracking, or starting a fire:
  - Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
  - Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
  - Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
  - Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

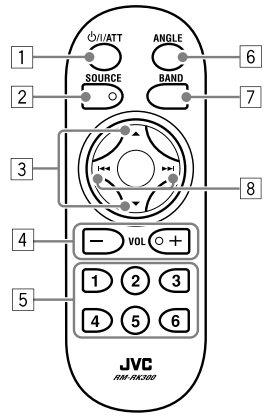
Caution:



The unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Main elements and features



1 **⏻/I/ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button**

- Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
- Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 **SOURCE button**
Selects the source.

3 **▲ (up) / ▼ (down) buttons**
- **For DAB:** Changes the service.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the folders.
- **While listening to an Apple iPod® or a JVC D. player:**
  – Pauses/stops or resumes playback with ▼.
  – Enters the main menu with ▲. (Now ▲/▼/|◄◄/►►| work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

4 **VOL (volume) + / – buttons**
Adjusts the volume level.

5 **Number buttons**
- **For FM/AM/DAB:** Selects the preset station (or service) if pressed, or store a station (or a service) if pressed and held.
- **For CD/CD Text:** Selects the tracks.
- **For MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Selects the folders.
- **For CD changer:** Selects the discs.

6 **ANGLE button**
Adjusts the control panel angle.

7 **BAND button**
Selects the band.

8 **|◄◄ / ►►| buttons**
- **For FM/AM/DAB:** Searches for stations (or ensembles) if pressed, or skips frequencies after pressed and held.
- **For CD/CD Text/MP3/WMA/SD/USB:** Changes the tracks if pressed, or fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
- **While listening to an iPod or a D. player (in menu selecting mode):**
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

* ▲ : *Returns to the previous menu.*
▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

Getting started

Activates or deactivates crossover network (see page 21) before turning on the power.

Basic operations

1 Turn on the power.

2

FM/AM → DAB* → CD* → SD* → USB* → CD-CH*/iPod*/D. player* (or **EXT-IN**) → **LINE-IN** → (back to the beginning)

* *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

3

For FM/AM tuner

For DAB tuner

4 Adjust the volume.

5 Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 18 – 22.)

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

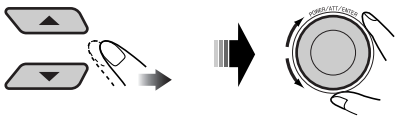
To drop the volume in a moment (ATT) To restore the sound, press it again.	
To turn off the power	

Basic settings

- See also "General settings — PSM" on pages 23 – 26.

1 Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).

2



1 **Canceling the display demonstrations**
Select "Demo," then "Off."

2 **Setting the clock**
Select "Clock H" (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select "Clock M" (minute), then adjust the minute.
Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."

3 Finish the procedure.

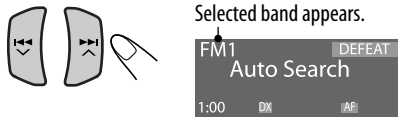
To check the current clock time while the power is turned off

Radio operations

❶

❷

❸ **Start searching for a station.**



When a station is received, searching stops.
To stop searching, press the same button again.

To tune in to a station manually

In step ❸ above...

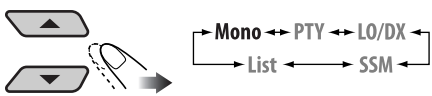
1

2 **Select a desired station frequency.**

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2



3

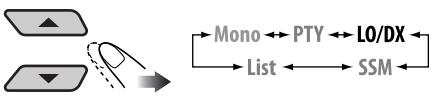
4

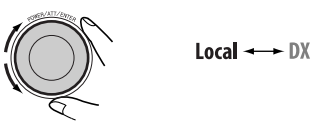
MO indicator lights up.
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure and select "Off" in step **3**. The MO indicator goes off.

Tuning in to FM stations with strong signals only—LO (local)/DX (Distance-Extreme)

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2 

3 

4

DX indicator goes off and LO indicator lights up.
Only stations with sufficient signal strength will be detected.

To tune in to all receivable stations, repeat the same procedure and select "DX" in step **3**. The LO indicator goes off and DX indicator lights up.

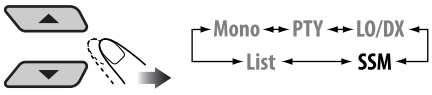
Storing stations in memory

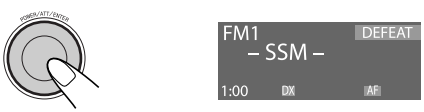
You can preset six stations for each band.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

1 **Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store into.**

2 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

3 

4 

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1

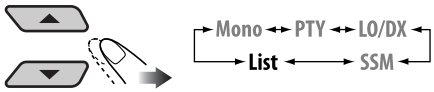
2

3 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**
- If you hold down ▲/▼, the Preset Station List appears (go to step **6**).

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

4



5

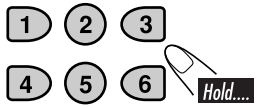
6 Select a preset number.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by turning the control dial.

7 Store the station.

When using the remote controller

After tuning in to a station you want to preset...

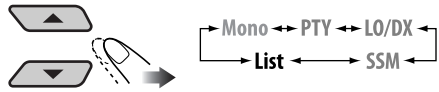


Listening to a preset station

1

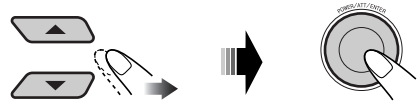
2 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

3



4

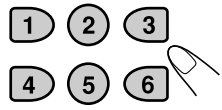
5 Select a preset number.



- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by turning the control dial.

When using the remote controller

Directly select the preset number.



FM RDS operations

What you can do with RDS

RDS (Radio Data System) allows FM stations to send an additional signal along with their regular programme signals.
By receiving the RDS data, this unit can do the following:

- Programme Type (PTY) Search (see the following)
- TA (Traffic Announcement) and PTY Standby Receptions (see pages 12 and 24)
- Tracing the same programme automatically —Network-Tracking Reception (see page 13)
- Programme Search (see page 13)
- Receiving the message service—RDS Radiotext (RT) (see page 13)

Searching for your favorite FM RDS programme

You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code of your favorite programmes.

PTY codes

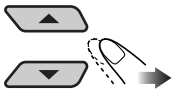
NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFO, SPORT, EDUCATE, DRAMA, CULTURE, SCIENCE, VARIED, POP M (music), ROCK M (music), EASY M (music), LIGHT M (music), CLASSICS, OTHER M (music), WEATHER, FINANCE, CHILDREN, SOCIAL, RELIGION, PHONE IN, TRAVEL, LEISURE, JAZZ, COUNTRY, NATION M (music), OLDIES, FOLK M (music), DOCUMENT

1

PTY Preset List appears.

1 Pop M	4 Classics
2 Rock M	5 Affairs
3 Easy M	6 Varied

2 **Select a PTY code.**



- You can select one of the PTY codes (including the six preset codes which can be presetted as you like, see the following).

3 **Start searching for your favorite programme.**

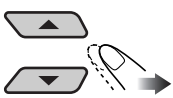
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

Storing your favorite programme types

You can store your favorite PTY codes into the PTY Preset List.

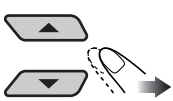
1

2 **Select a PTY code.**



3 **Enter the preset list.**

4 **Select a preset number.**



Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

ENGLISH

5 **Store the setting.**

6 **To store other PTY codes into other preset numbers.**

Repeat steps **2** to **5**.

7 **Finish the procedure.**

Using the standby receptions

TA Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to Traffic Announcement (TA) from any source other than AM.
The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 24).

- If DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service broadcasting Traffic Announcement.

To activate TA Standby Reception

The TP (Traffic Programme) indicator either lights up or flashes.

- If the TP indicator lights up, TA Standby Reception is activated.
- If the TP indicator flashes, TA Standby Reception is not yet activated. (This occurs when you are listening to an FM station without the RDS signals required for TA Standby Reception.)
  To activate TA Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or DAB service) providing the related signals. The TP indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the TA Standby Reception

The TP indicator goes off.

PTY Standby Reception

PTY Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.

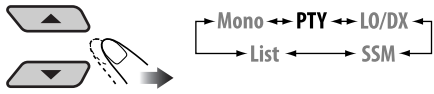
- If DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works to search for a DAB service.

To select your favorite PTY code for PTY Standby Reception, see page 24.
The PTY indicator either lights up or flashes.

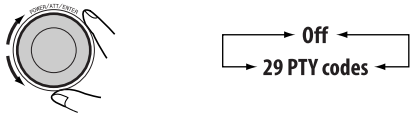
To activate the PTY Standby Reception

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2



3 **Select one of the PTY codes.**



4 **Finish the procedure.**

The PTY indicator either lights up or flashes.

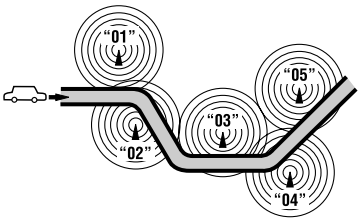
- If the PTY indicator lights up, PTY Standby Reception is activated.
- If the PTY indicator flashes, PTY Standby Reception is not yet activated.
  To activate PTY Standby Reception, tune in to another station providing these signals. The PTY indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the PTY Standby Reception, select "Off" in step 3. The PTY indicator goes off.

Tracing the same programme— Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.
To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see "AF-Reg" on page 24.

Automatic station selection— Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.
If the signals from the FM RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.

- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 24.

Using the message service— RDS Radiotext (RT)

What is RDS Radiotext

RDS Radiotext is part of the RDS data signal to transmit various text information (e.g. programme information, phone numbers, e-mail and web addresses, artist/title information, and news headlines). The text service is part of the RDS broadcast.
One message may contain up to 64 characters.

The message service is an optional service and is not supported by all broadcasters.

Once you tuned in to a station that supports the message service, the service is automatically received.

To show the RDS Radiotext (RT) information

While listening to a station that supports RT...

Radiotext screen appears on the display.

- The Radiotext screen will be temporarily canceled when you operate the unit.

It takes time to load data. While loading, "Loading" and progress indications appear.

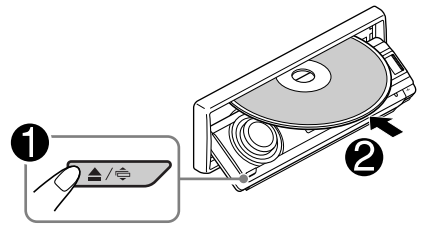
- You can see approximate loading percentage with the indications.

If text message is unavailable, the text screen will change to source operation screen. Yet, when text message becomes available later, the text screen will automatically appear.

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Playing a disc in the unit

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.



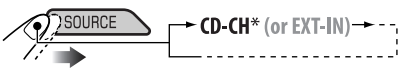
To stop play and eject the disc

Note:
If a USB memory is attached to the unit, you cannot eject the disc. "Please Eject USB" flashes on the display. If this happens, detach the USB memory, then, press ⏏ / button again.

Playing discs in the CD changer

All discs in the magazine will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

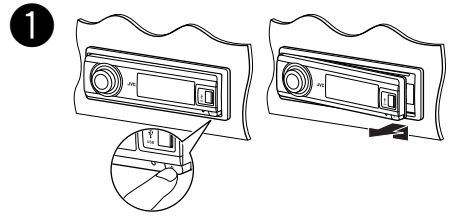
- Ejecting the magazine will also stop playback.

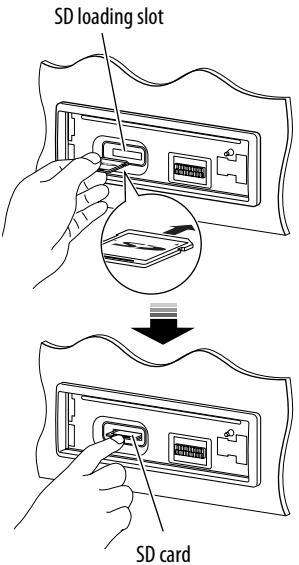


* *If you have changed the external input setting to "Ext In" (see page 25), you cannot select the CD changer.*

Playing from an SD card

Before detaching the control panel, turn off the power.



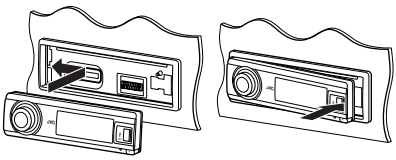


Press in the SD card until you hear a clicking sound.

To eject the SD card, press the SD card again.

- Press the SD card softly (do not release your finger quickly); otherwise, the SD card may pop out from the unit.

❸ **Attach the control panel.**



❹

- The control panel goes back to the previous position.

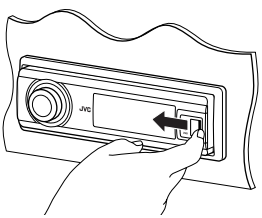
Playback starts automatically if tracks are recorded.

Playing from a USB memory

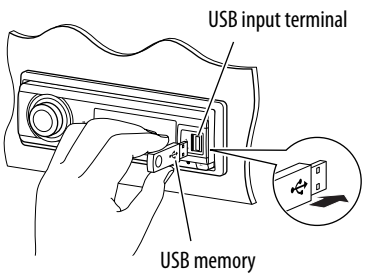
This unit can play MP3/WMA tracks stored in a USB memory.
All tracks in the USB memory will be played repeatedly until you change the source.

- Removing the USB memory will also stop playback.

❶



❷

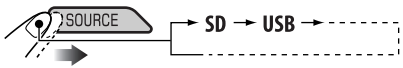


To detach the USB memory, straightly pull it out from the unit.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the SD card/USB memory when it might hinder your safety driving.
- Make sure all important data have been backed up to avoid losing the data.

If an SD card or USB memory has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different SD card or USB memory is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

About MP3 and WMA tracks

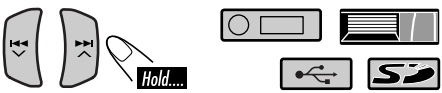
MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."

About the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

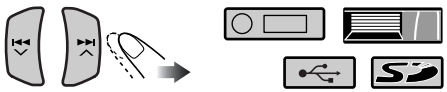
- You can also connect MP3-incompatible CD changers. However, these units are not compatible with MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the CH-X99, CH-X100, and KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.
- You cannot play any WMA disc in the CD changer.
- Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.
- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

To fast-forward or reverse the track



Continued on the next page

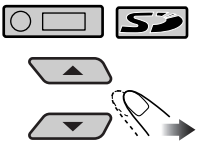
To go to the next or previous tracks



To go to the next or previous folders (only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB)

For MP3 tracks:

For WMA tracks:



- Holding the buttons can display the Disc List ( ) and Folder List (/ /), see the following.

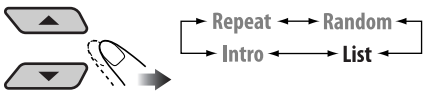
Other main functions

Selecting a disc/folder/track on the list

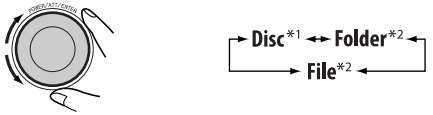
- This function is not available for an audio CD or a CD Text when the source is "CD."

1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2



3 **Select a list type.**



*1 *Selectable only when the source is "CD-CH."*

*2 *Appears only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB.*

4 **Confirm the selection.**

The selected list appears on the display.

- You can move to the other list by turning the control dial.

5 **Select a disc/folder/file from the list.**

Ex.: When "Folder" is selected on step **3**

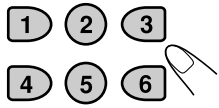
Only for MP3/WMA/SD/USB:
If you select the current disc/folder (highlighted on the screen), its Folder/File List appears.

6 **Starts playback.**

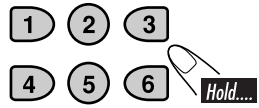
When using the remote controller

- To directly select a disc ( )
- To directly select a track of an audio CD or a CD Text ( )
- To directly select an MP3/WMA folder (/ /)

To select a number from 1 – 6:



To select a number from 7 (1) – 12 (6):



For MP3/WMA folders:
It is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

1

2 After making sure "No Eject?" is selected...

- "No Eject" flashes, and the disc cannot be ejected.

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure after making sure "Eject OK?" is selected.

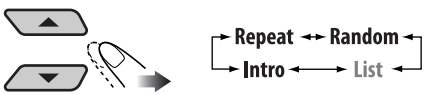
- "Eject OK" flashes on the display.

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



3 Select one of the items (see the following table).

4 Finish the procedure.

Intro	Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...
Track	: All tracks of the current playback media. [▮INTRO]
Folder*1	: First track of all folders of the current playback media. [▮FINTRO]
Disc*2	: First track of all the inserted discs. [▮DINTRO]
Off	: Cancels.

Repeat	Plays repeatedly
Track	: The current track. [▮REPEAT]
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder. [▮FREPEAT]
Disc*2	: All tracks of the inserted discs. [▮DREPEAT]
Off	: Cancels.

Random	Plays at random
Folder*1	: All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on. [▮FRANDOM]
Disc	: All tracks of the current disc. [▮DRANDOM]
All*3	: All tracks of the inserted discs/ media. [▮ALLRANDOM]
Off	: Cancels.

*1 *Only while playing a media (MP3/WMA/SD/USB).*

*2 *Only when the source is CD-CH.*

*3 *Only when the source is CD-CH, SD, or USB.*

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes (DSP)

You can create a more acoustic sound field such as in a theater, hall, etc.

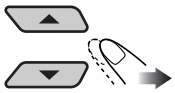
- When crossover network (see page 21) is activated, the DSP mode is fixed to "Defeat."

DSP modes

Defeat (No acoustic effect is applied), Theater, Hall, Club, Dome, Studio, V.Cancel (Voice Cancel: Reduces the vocal sounds. Good for mastering your favorite songs—Karaoke.)

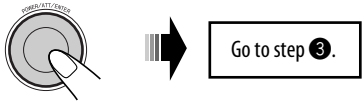
❶ **Enter the DSP menu (see page 4).**

❷ **Select one of the DSP modes.**



- **To finish the procedure**

- **To adjust the effect level**



For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the effect level is not adjustable.

❸ **Adjust the effect level.**

- **To finish the procedure**

To make more precise settings, see the following.

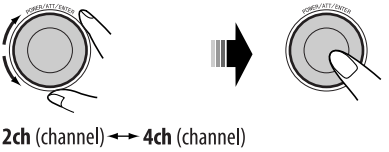
To cancel the acoustic effect, select "Defeat" in step ❷.

Precise settings for the DSP modes

1 Select a DSP mode.

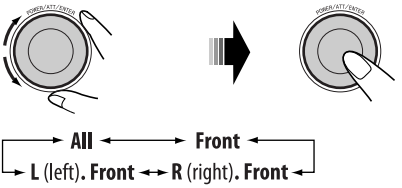
2 Select the number of the built-in speakers.

- For "Defeat" and "V.Cancel," the speaker number is fixed to "4ch."



2ch (channel) ↔ **4ch** (channel)

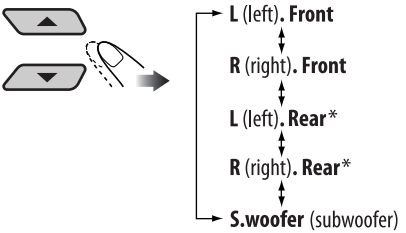
3 Select your listening seat position.



All ↔ **Front**

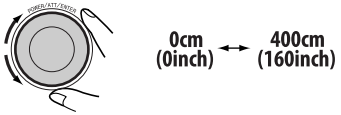
L (left)**. Front** ↔ **R** (right)**. Front**

4 Select the speaker to be adjusted.



* *Appears only when "4ch" is selected in step* **2**.

5 Select the distance between the selected speaker and the seat.



Once you have set the distance, it is memorized for each seat position selected in step **3**. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select the seat position.

To change the measuring unit

6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to adjust the distance for the other speakers.

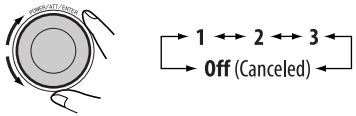
7 Finish the procedure.

Activating BBE Digital

BBE Digital is a digital processing method to restore the brilliance and clarity of the original live sound in recording, broadcasts, etc. When a speaker reproduces sound, it introduces frequency-dependent phase shifting, causing high-frequency sounds to take longer to reach the ear than low frequency sounds.
BBE Digital adjusts the phase relationship between the low, mid, and high frequencies by adding a progressively longer delay time to the low and mid frequencies, so that all frequencies reach the listener's ears at the proper time. A more brilliance and clearer sound is heard.

1 Enter the BBE menu (see page 4).

2 Select the effect level.



3 Finish the procedure.

Using the equalizer—EQ

You can adjust the sound equalization patterns to your preference by using either Graphic EQ or Parametric EQ.

- Adjust the equalizer to match the reproducible frequency range of the connected speakers; otherwise, the adjustments may not be effective.

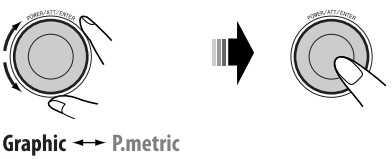
Selecting preset sound modes—Graphic EQ

Sound modes

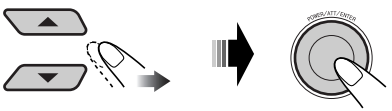
Flat (No sound mode is applied), HardRock, R&B (Rhythm&Blues), Pop, Jazz, Dance, Country, Reggae, Classic, User 1, User 2, User 3

1 Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).

2



3 Select a sound mode.

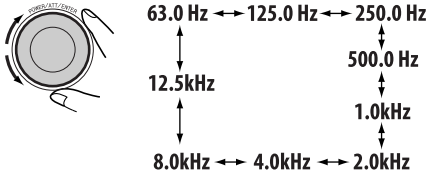


4 Finish the procedure.

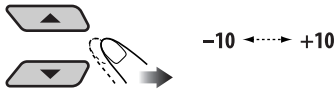
Storing your own sound modes

1 Select a sound mode.

2 Select a frequency band.



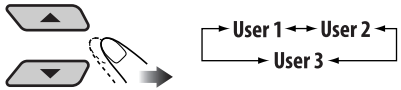
3 Adjust the enhanced level for the selected frequency band.



4 Repeat steps **2** and **3** to adjust the other frequency bands.

5

6 Select one of the user modes.



7 Store the adjustments.

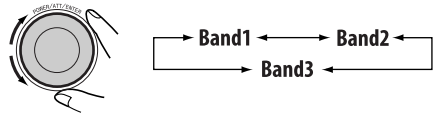
Adjusting Parametric EQ

1 Enter the EQ menu (see page 4).

2

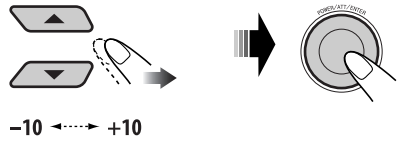
Graphic ↔ P.metric

3 Select a band.



Band1 : 20.0 Hz – 1.2 kHz
Band2 : 80.0 Hz – 5.0 kHz
Band3 : 315.0 Hz – 20 kHz

4 Adjust the enhanced level for the selected band.



5 Select the frequency.

- Band 1/2/3 are required to be preset at least 5 steps (frequencies) away from each other. (Only selectable frequencies are shown on the display.)

6 Select the band width (Q).

- To adjust the other bands, press BACK. Then repeat steps **3** to **6**.

7 Finish the procedure.

Once you have made adjustments, it is memorized. The memorized setting is recalled next time you select Parametric EQ.

Activating crossover network

By activating crossover network, you can allocate different frequency range of sound signals to different speakers to match their characteristic.

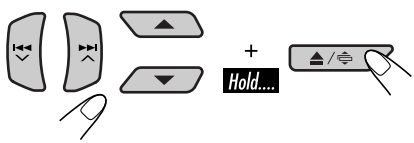
If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following:

- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For 3-way network speaker system, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

You cannot perform other operations until you finish the following procedure.

While the power is turned off...

❶



❷

Off ⟷ On

❸

- **To cancel the procedure,** press and hold POWER/ATT/ENTER. The power turns off.

❹ **Finish the procedure.**

- X-OVER indicator lights up (in sequence with other indicators).

To cancel Crossover, repeat the same procedure. Make sure that "X-Over Off OK?" appears on the display.

- X-OVER indicator goes off.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

❶ **Enter the SEL menu (see page 4).**

❷ **Select a setting item.**

* *Appears only when crossover network is activated (see left column).*

When selecting "Fad/Bal," "X-Over," or "S.woofer," press POWER/ATT/ENTER to enter its submenu.

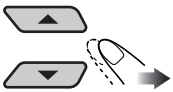
❸ **Adjust the selected setting item. (See the following for details.)**

- To adjust other SEL settings, press BACK. Then repeat steps ❷ and ❸.

❹ **Finish the procedure.**

To adjust fader and balance—Fad/Bal

- **Fad (fader)**
  Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.

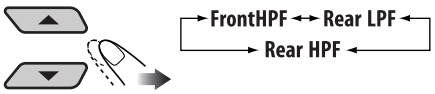


- **Bal (balance)**
  Adjust the left and right speaker balance.

To adjust reproduced frequency level—X-Over

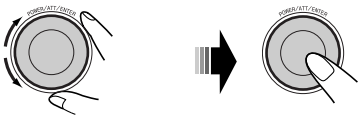
This setting is available only when crossover network (see page 21) is activated.

1 Select a filter.



HPF (Front/Rear)	: Frequencies lower than the selected level are cut-off.
LPF (Rear)	: Frequencies higher than the selected level are cut-off.

2 Select "On" to activate the selected filter.
- If you connect high-range speakers to Front or Rear output, select "On" for the corresponding HPF to prevent the speakers from being damaged.

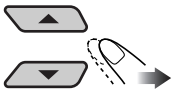


Off ↔ On

3 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected speakers.

1.6kHz – 16.0kHz : Front HPF and Rear LPF
31.5 Hz – 200.0Hz : Rear HPF

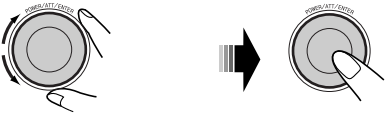
4 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).



–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

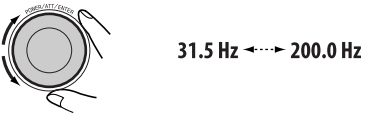
To adjust subwoofer output—S.woofer

1 Adjust the output level.



00 ↔ 12

2 Select a cut-off frequency according to the connected subwoofer.



31.5 Hz ↔ 200.0 Hz

3 Adjust the continuity of the sound among speakers (slope).

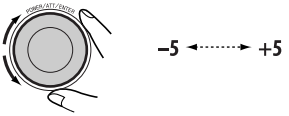
–18 ↔ –12 ↔ –06

To adjust the input level of each source—Vol Adj

This setting is required for each source except for FM.
Once an adjustment is made, it will be memorized. When you change the source the volume level will automatically increase or decrease according to the adjusted level.

1 Select a source before entering the SEL menu.

2 Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.



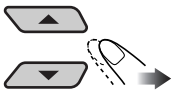
–5 ↔ +5

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM menu (see page 4).

2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust the other PSM items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Demo Display demonstration	• **On** [Initial]	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [8].
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Anime Animation	• **On** [Initial]	: An animation screen appears when you turn on or off the power, change the source, and when you select an EQ, MENU, or DSP.
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Clock H Hour adjustment	**0** – **23** (**1** – **12**) [Initial: 0 (0:00)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
Clock M Minute adjustment	**00** – **59** [Initial: 00 (0:00)]	: See also page 8 for setting.
24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours** [Initial]	: See also page 8 for setting.
CLK Adj Clock adjustment	• **Auto** [Initial]	: The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal.
	• **Off**	: Cancels.
Scroll*1	• **Once** [Initial]	: For track information: scrolls the track information once. For RDS Radiotext: scrolls the text message continuously. For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text.
	• **Auto**	: For track information: repeats scrolling (in 5-second intervals in between). For RDS Radiotext: scrolls the text message continuously. For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text.
	• **Off**	: For track information: cancels. For RDS Radiotext: shows only the first page of the text message. For DAB text: shows only headline if any.

Continued on the next page

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Dimmer	• **Auto** [Initial] • **Time Set** • **Off** • **On**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Sets the timer for dimmer, see page 25 for setting. From: Any hour; To: Any hour : Cancels. : Activates dimmer. (Does not work if "Bright" is set to "1.")
Bright Display brightness	**1** – **10** [Initial: 8]	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible. (If "Dimmer" is set to "On," selecting "1" to "4" takes no effect.)
ID3 Tag Tag display	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
Theme Display theme	• **Large** (**1** [Initial] or **2**) • **Small** (**1** [Initial] or **2**)	: Select the display theme for large graphic display, [5]. See page 26 for setting. : Select the display theme for small graphic display, [5]. See page 26 for setting.
PTY Stby PTY standby	29 PTY codes (see page 11) [Initial: News]	: Activates PTY Standby Reception with one of the PTY codes, [12].
AF-Reg Alternate frequency/ Regionalization reception	• **AF** [Initial] • **AF Reg** • **Off**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [13, 31]. : When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. : Cancels (not selectable when "DAB AF" is set to "ON").
TA Vol Traffic announcement volume	**0** – **30** or **50***2 [Initial: 15]	: When a traffic programme (TA) is received, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level.
P-Search Programme search	• **On** • **Off** [Initial]	: Activates Programme Search, [13]. : Cancels.
IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** [Initial] • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between close stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
DAB AF*3 Alternative Frequency Reception	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations, [31]. • The AF indicator lights up. : Cancels.
Announce*3 Announcement Standby Reception	9 announcement types (see page 31) [Initial: Travel]	: Select one of the announcement types for Announcement Standby Reception.

Indications	Items	Settings, [reference page]
Beep Key-touch tone	• **On** [Initial] • **Off**	: Activates the key-touch tone. : Deactivates the key-touch tone.
Ext In*4 External input	• **Changer** [Initial] • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [14] or an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player, [27]. : To use any other external component, [32]
Tel Telephone muting	• **Muting 1/ Muting 2** • **Off** [Initial]	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone. • If CD/CD-CH/SD/USB/iPod/D. player has been selected as the source, playback pauses during telephone muting. : Cancels.
Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR** • **Off**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select this if the maximum power of the speaker is less than 50 W to avoid damaging the speakers.) : Deactivates the built-in amplifier.

*1 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*
*2 *Depends on the amplifier gain control.*
*3 *Displayed only when DAB tuner is connected.*
*4 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, SD, USB, or LINE-IN.*

Selecting timer for the dimmer

You can dim the display at night or as you set the timer.

1 Select "Dimmer" from the PSM menu.

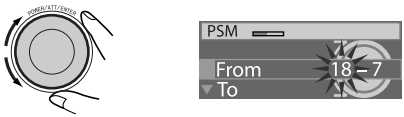
2 Select "Time Set."

3 Adjust the dimmer time.

1 Set the dimmer start time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]



2 Set the dimmer end time.

24Hours: [0 – 23]

12Hours: [1A (1AM) – 12A (12AM); 1P (1PM) – 12P (12PM)]

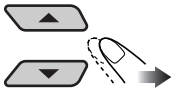
4 Finish the procedure.

Selecting the graphic theme

You can select the graphic theme for large and small display sizes (see also page 5).

1 Select "Theme" from the PSM menu.

2 Select the size of the display.



Large ↔ Small

3 Select the theme.

1 ↔ 2

4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to select the other display size and theme.

5 Finish the procedure.

To show the selected display theme, press DISP repeatedly while playing a source.

Title assignment

You can assign titles to CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer) and the external components (LINE-IN and EXT-IN).

Sources	Maximum number of characters
CDs/CD-CH*	Up to 32 characters (up to 30 discs)
External component	Up to 16 characters

* *You cannot assign names to any discs other than conventional CDs.*

1 Select the sources.

- For CDs in this unit: Insert a CD.
- For CDs in the CD changer: Select "CD-CH," then select a disc number.
- For external component: Select "LINE-IN" or "EXT-IN."

2 Enter the TITLE menu (see page 4).

3 Assign a title.

1 **Select a character set.**

A (A – Z: upper case) → **a** (a – z: lower case) → **0** (numbers and symbols) → **Á** (Accented letters: upper case) → **á** (Accented letters: lower case) → (back to the beginning)

2 **Select a character.**

3 **Move to the next (or previous) character position.**

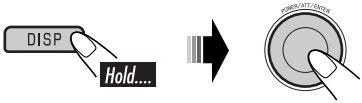
4 **Repeat steps 1 and 3 until you finish entering the title.**

4 Finish the procedure.

- To cancel the title entry without registration, press MENU.

To erase the entire title

In step **3**...



Available characters

In addition to the Roman alphabets (A – Z, a – z), the following characters will be used.

Accented letters: upper case

Á	À	Â	Ä	Ã	Å	Æ	Œ	Č	Ć	Ç	É	È	Ê
Ë	Ğ	Í	Ì	Î	Ï	Ñ	Ó	Ò	Ô	Ö	Õ	Ø	Ř
Ŕ	Š	Ś	Ş	Ú	Ù	Û	Ü	Ý	Ž	Ź	ß	Þ	Ŋ
Đ	Ŧ	Ľ	İ	Ŀ	ð	space							

Accented letters: lower case

á	à	â	ä	ã	å	æ	œ	č	ć	ç	é	è	ê
ë	ě	ğ	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ň	ń	ó	ò	ô	ö
õ	ø	ő	ř	ŕ	š	ś	ş	ú	ù	û	ü	ű	ŵ
ý	ŷ	ž	ź	ÿ	þ	ŋ	đ	ŧ	ľ	ı	ij	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

iPod®/D. player operations

This unit is ready for operating an Apple iPod or a JVC D. player from the control panel.

Before operating your iPod or D. player: Connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **Interface adapter for iPod®**—KS-PD100 for controlling an iPod.
- **D. player interface adapter**—KS-PD500 for controlling a D. player.

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied with the interface adapter.

Caution:

Make sure to turn off this unit or turn off the vehicle's ignition switch before connecting or disconnecting the iPod or D. player.

Preparations:

Make sure “Changer” is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

1

2

Playback starts automatically from where it has been paused*1 or stopped*2 previously.

Continued on the next page

3 **Adjust the volume.**

4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 18 – 22.)**

- Make sure the equalizer on the iPod or D. player is deactivated.

To pause*1 or stop*2 playback To resume playback, press it again.	
To fast-forward or reverse the track	
To go to the next or previous tracks	

*1 *For iPod*

*2 *For D. player*

Selecting a track from the menu

1 **Enter the main menu.**

Now the ▲/▼/|◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ buttons work as the menu selecting buttons*.

* *The menu selecting mode will be canceled:*
- *If no operations are done for about 5 seconds.*
- *When you confirm the selection of a track.*

2 **Select the desired menu.**

For iPod:
Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:
Playlist ↔ Artist ↔ Album ↔ Genre ↔ Track ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 **Confirm the selection.**

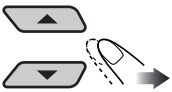
To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.
- Holding |◄◄ ⌄/►►| ⌃ can skip 10 items at a time.

Selecting the playback modes

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select one of the playback modes.



Repeat ↔ Random

3 Select an item (see table below).

4 Finish the procedure.

Repeat play	
One	: Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → One" for the D. player.
All	: Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod or "Repeat Mode → All" for the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.
Random play	
Album*	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
Song/On	: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod or "Random Play → On" of the D. player.
Off	: Cancels.

* *For iPod: Only if you select "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

DAB tuner operations

ENGLISH

What is DAB system?

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) can deliver digital quality sound without any annoying interference and signal distortion. Furthermore, it can carry text, pictures, and data. When transmitting, DAB combines several programmes (called "services") to form one "ensemble." In addition, each "service"—called "primary service"—can also be divided into its components (called "secondary service"). A typical ensemble has six or more programmes (services) broadcast at the same time.

By connecting the DAB tuner, this unit can do the following:

- Tracing the same programme automatically —Alternative Frequency Reception (see "DAB AF" on page 24).

It is recommended to use DAB tuner KT-DB1000 with your unit. If you have another DAB tuner, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied for your DAB tuner.

❶

❷

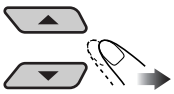
❸ **Start searching for an ensemble.**

When an ensemble is received, searching stops.

To stop searching, press the same button again.

Continued on the next page

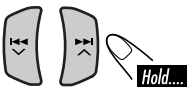
❹ **Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**



To tune in to an ensemble manually

Start searching for an ensemble, as in step ❸...

1



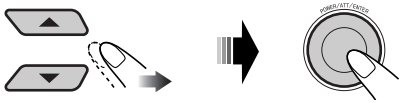
2 **Select a desired ensemble frequency.**

When surrounding sounds are noisy

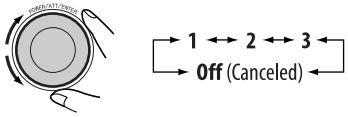
Some service provides Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve for your listening.

1 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

2 Select "DRC."



3 Select one of the DRC signal levels (1, 2, or 3).



The reinforcement level increases from 1 to 3.

4 Finish the procedure.

- The DRC indicator will be highlighted only when receiving DRC signals from the tuned service.

To search for your favorite service

You can search for either Dynamic or Static PTY codes.

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on pages 11 and 12 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and the FM tuner.
- Search will be performed on the DAB tuner only.

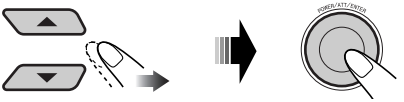
Storing DAB services in memory

You can preset six DAB services (primary) for each band.

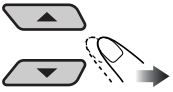
1 Select a service you want.

2 Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).

3 Select "List."



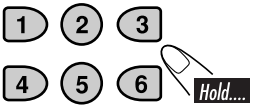
4 Select a preset number.



- You can move to the lists of the other DAB bands, but cannot store a service for the other bands.

5 **Store the service.**

When using the remote controller
After tuning in to a service you want to preset...

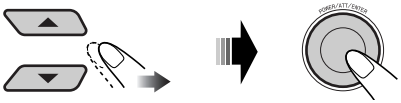


Tuning in to a preset DAB service

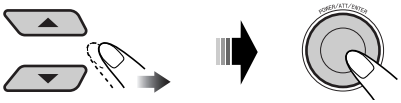
1

2 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

3 **Select "List."**

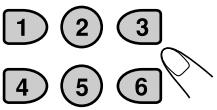


4 **Select a preset number.**



- You can move to the lists of the other DAB bands by turning the control dial.

When using the remote controller
Directly select the preset number.



Using the Standby Receptions

TA (Road Traffic News) Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 11 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot activate TA Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for FM tuner.
- The volume changes to the preset TA volume level (see page 24).

PTY Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 11 for FM RDS stations.
- PTY Standby Reception for DAB tuner works only using a dynamic PTY code.
- You can neither store your favorite PTY nor activate PTY Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.
- You can activate and deactivate PTY Standby Reception when the source is either "FM" or "DAB."

Announcement Standby Reception

Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

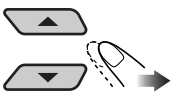
To select your favorite announcement type, see page 24.

Announcement types
Travel, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special, Rad Inf (Radio Information), Sports, Finance

To activate the Announcement Standby Reception

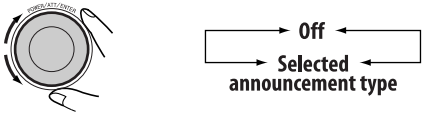
1 **Enter the MODE menu (see page 4).**

2 **Select "Announce."**



Continued on the next page

3 **Select an announce type.**



4 **Finish the procedure.**

- If the ANN indicator lights up,
  Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If the ANN indicator flashes,
  Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
  To activate, tune in to another service providing these signals. The ANN indicator will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception

Select "Off" in step **3** above.

- The ANN indicator goes off.

Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception

You can keep listening to the same programme by activating the Alternative Frequency Reception.

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 24.

To show the Dynamic Label Segment (DLS) information

- The DLS screen will be temporarily canceled when you operate the unit.

Other external component operations

You can connect an external component to the LINE IN plugs on the rear or to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

- For connection, see Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

For listening to the SD card/USB memory, see pages 14 – 17; For iPod, or D.player, see pages 27 – 29.

1

LINE-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the LINE IN plugs.

EXT-IN : For selecting the external component connected to the CD changer jack.

If "EXT-IN" does not appear, see page 25 and select the external input ("Ext In").

2 **Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**

3 **Adjust the volume.**

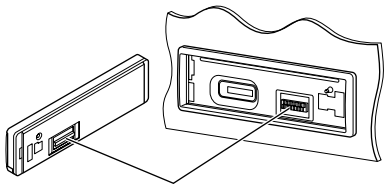
4 **Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 18 – 22.)**

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

Continued on the next page

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

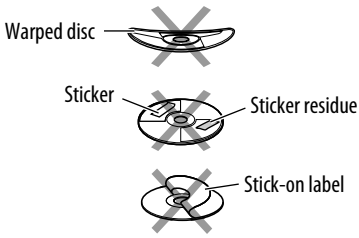
To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

How to handle SD card

SD cards are precision products. DO NOT impact, bend, drop, or wet them.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start from where playback has been stopped previously, next time you turn on the power.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - All previously stored stations are erased and stations are stored newly.
  - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA VOL) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See page 24.)

- Message service requires the RDS Radiotext signal. It is available on most major stations. If reception is weak, the service may become unavailable. For any questions regarding the content of this service, please contact your broadcaster.
- If you want to know more about RDS, visit «http://www.rds.org.uk».

Disc/SD card/USB memory operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA) and MP3/WMA format; MP3/WMA files recorded in an SD card or a USB memory.
- While playing an audio CD: If a title has been assigned to the audio CD (see page 26), it will be shown on the display.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing an MP3/WMA track, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the control panel moves down, and the disc automatically ejects from the loading slot.
- If you keep the control panel open for about 1 minute, (beeps sound when the "Beep" setting is turned "On"—see page 25) the control panel returns to its previous position.
- Do not insert 8 cm discs (single CD) and unusual shape discs (heart, flower, etc.) into the loading slot.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can play back only files of the same type which are first detected if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation occurs on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – CD-R/CD-RW on which the files are written with "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidities may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA discs

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files compliant to ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name.
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters

Continued on the next page

– Romeo*: up to 128 (72) characters
– Joliet*: up to 64 (36) characters
– Windows long file name*: up to 128 (72) characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 313 or more.*

- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, of 200 folders, and of 8 hierarchies.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriated format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA tracks from an SD card or a USB memory

- While playing from an SD card or a USB memory, the playback order may differ from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some SD cards or USB memories due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB memories and connection ports, some USB memories may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- It is not recommended to use a USB memory wider than 20 mm as it will block you from pressing some buttons on the control panel.
- If the connected USB memory does not have the correct files, "No Files" appears and the unit returns to the previous source.
- This unit can show Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- For SD card: The maximum number of characters for folder name is 8 characters; file names is 12 characters. This unit cannot recognize folder with period (.) on the folder name.
  For USB memory: The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- For SD card: This unit can recognize a total of 255 files and 63 folders.
  For USB memory: This unit can recognize a total of 2 500 files and 250 folders (999 files per folder).
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops. Next time you select the same source again, playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Sound adjustments

Selecting the DSP modes—DSP

- Effectiveness of "V.Cancel" depends on the recording condition of the sources:
  - Monaural sources such as AM and monaural FM broadcasting programs.
  - Multiplex sound sources.
  - Sources recorded with duets, strong echo, a chorus, or only a few instruments.
- When "4ch" is selected, rear speakers are used only to reproduce reflections and reverberations in order to creates a being-there feeling in your car compartment.
- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate effect may not be obtained.
- You cannot adjust the effect level and speaker number when "Defeat" is selected with crossover network activated.

Storing your own sound modes

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press MENU to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Setting the sound modes—SEL

- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to the center.
- Subwoofer out setting takes effect only when a subwoofer is connected.
- You cannot change the input level—"VolAdjust" of the FM stations. If the source is FM, "Fix" will appear when you try to adjust it.

General settings — PSM

- "Auto Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming. In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any one other than "Auto."
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 discs, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.
- Titles assigned to discs in the CD changer can also be shown if you play back the disc in the unit and vise versa.

iPod® or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
  - Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  - Depends on the condition of communication between the iPod or D. player and the unit.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 23). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

For D. player users: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>

DAB tuner operations

- Only primary DAB services can be presetted even when you store a secondary service.
- A previously preset DAB service is erased when a new DAB service is stored in the same preset number.

Continued on the next page

Preset frequency level settings for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset equalizing value								
	63 Hz	125 Hz	250 Hz	500 Hz	1 kHz	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12.5 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+06	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+02
R&B	+06	+04	+04	+04	00	+02	+02	+02	+06
Pop	00	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+02	+02	+04
Jazz	+06	+04	+02	+02	+02	+02	+02	+06	+04
Dance	+08	+04	+02	00	–04	–02	00	+02	+02
Country	+04	+02	00	00	00	00	00	+02	+04
Reggae	+06	+02	00	00	+02	+04	+04	+04	+06
Classic	+04	+06	+04	+02	00	00	+02	+04	00
User 1	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 2	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see pages 4 and 33).
	• "Push Reset" appears on the display and the control panel movement is freezed.	Reset the unit (see page 2). If this does not work, check the installation.
FM/AM/RDS	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.
	• "No Text" appears on the display.	The station does not support RDS RT or the reception is weak. Check the Network-Tracking Reception (see page 13).
	• "Loading" does not disappear.	The receiving signal is temporarily too weak to receive a complete message although the service is available. Check the Network-Tracking Reception (see page 13).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 17). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "Loading Error," or "Eject Error" appears).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("File Check" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs while playing. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• "No Music" appears on the display.	Change the disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 26).

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
SD card/USB memory playback	• Noise is generated.	The track played back is not an MP3/WMA track. Skip to another file. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• "File Check" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the device. • Do not use too many hierarchy and folders. • Turn off the power then on again.
	• "No Files" appears on the display.	Play a device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	• The device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the device are corrupted. • Do not pull out or attach the USB memory repeatedly while "File Check" appears on the display.
	• "SD Loading Error" appears on the display while playing tracks from an SD card.	Detach the control panel and reinsert the SD card. The control panel goes back to initial position (Angle 1).
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	MP3/WMA tracks have not been properly copied into the device. Copy MP3/WMA tracks again into the device, and try again.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols and special characters (see page 26).
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
Sounds	• DSP mode cannot be selected other modes than "Defeat." • Only high range sound or low range sound is reproduced though full range speakers are connected.	Deactivate crossover network (see page 21).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod/D. player playback	• The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press POWER/ATT/ENTER before performing the operation.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/ D. player.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation using the control panel (see page 28).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	• No sound can be heard. • "ERROR 01" appears on the display when connecting a D. player.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "No Files" or "No Track" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/ D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's or D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.
DAB tuner	• "No DAB Signal" appears on the display.	Search for another ensemble.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 2).
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
	• "Antenna Power NG" appears on the display.	Check the DAB aerial and its connections.

- *Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.*
- *SD logo is a trademark.*
- *Manufactured under license from BBE Sound, Inc.*
  Licensed by BBE Sound, Inc. under USP5510752 and 5736897. BBE and BBE symbol are registered trademarks of BBE Sound, Inc.
- *iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.*

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Equalizer Control Range:	Frequencies: Graphic EQ: 63 Hz, 125 Hz, 250 Hz, 500 Hz, 1 kHz, 2 kHz, 4 kHz, 8 kHz, 12.5 kHz (9 bands) Parametric EQ: 3 bands (Band 1/2/3): 20 Hz, 25 Hz, 31.5 Hz, 40 Hz, 50 Hz, 63 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 125 Hz, 160 Hz, 200 Hz, 250 Hz, 315 Hz, 400 Hz, 500 Hz, 630 Hz, 800 Hz, 1 kHz, 1.2 kHz, 1.6 kHz, 2 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 3.2 kHz, 4 kHz, 5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 8 kHz, 10 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 16 kHz, 20 kHz (31 frequencies)	
		Level:	±10 dB
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Level/Impedance:	Line-In:	1.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Line-Out:	5.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
	Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:		LINE IN, CD changer

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/65 dB
	LW Tuner	Sensitivity:	50 µV

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:	Compact disc player	
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		98 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		102 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

SD CARD	Format:		FAT 12/16
	Storage:		8 MB – 512 MB
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	8 kbps – 192 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz

USB MEMORY	Format:		FAT 12/16/32
	Storage:		Less than 4 GB (1 partition type)
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA
	Max. Current:		Less than 500 mA
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
			MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
			MPEG-2.5: 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz
	WMA:	Bit Rate:	5 kbps – 320 kbps
		Sampling Frequency:	8 kHz – 48 kHz

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 162 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.7 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Haben Sie PROBLEME mit dem Betrieb?

Bitte setzen Sie Ihr Gerät zurück

Siehe Seite Zurücksetzen des Geräts

Затруднения при эксплуатации?

Пожалуйста, перезагрузите Ваше устройство

Для получения информации о перезагрузке Вашего устройства обратитесь на соответствующую страницу

JVC

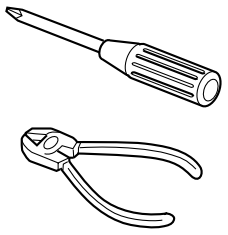
EN, GE, RU

© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0106DTSMDTJEIN

KD-SH1000

Installation/Connection Manual
Einbau/Anschlußanleitung
Руководство по установке/подключению



GET0366-013A
[EY]

0106DTSMDTJEIN
EN, GE, RU
© 2006 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

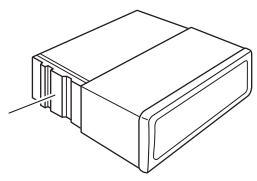
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4** Ω **to 8** Ω). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



DEUTSCH

Dieses Gerät ist für einen Betrieb in **elektrischen Anlagen mit 12 V Gleichstrom und (–) Erdung ausgelegt**. *Verfügt Ihr Fahrzeug nicht über diese Anlage, ist ein Spannungsinverter erforderlich, der bei JVC Autoradiohändler erworben werden kann.*

WARNUNGEN

Zur Vermeidung von Kurzschlüssen empfehlen wir, daß Sie den negativen Batterieanschluß abtrennen und alle elektrischen Anschlüsse herstellen, bevor das Gerät eingebaut wird.

- **Sicherstellen, daß das Gerät nach dem Einbau a Chassis des Fahrzeugs geerdet wird.**

Hinweise:

- *Die Sicherung mit einer der entsprechenden Nennleistung ersetzen. Brennt die Sicherung häufig durch, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.*
- *Es wird empfohlen, Lautsprecher mit einer Maximalleistung von mehr als 50 W anzuschließen (sowohl hinten als auch vorne, mit einer Impedanz von* **4** Ω **bis 8** Ω*). Wenn die Maximalleistung weniger als 50 W beträgt, stellen Sie „Amp Gain" anders ein, um Schäden an den Lautsprechern zu vermeiden (siehe Seite 25 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).*
- *Zur Vermeidung eines Kurzschlusses die Anschlußklemmen der NICHT VERWENDETEN Leitungen mit Isolierklebeband umwickeln.*
- *Das Abstrahlblech wird nach dem Gebrauch sehr heiß. Beim Ausbau des Geräts darauf achten, das Abstrahlblech nicht zu berühren.*

РУССКИЙ

Это устройство разработано для эксплуатации на **12 В постоянного напряжения с минусом на массе**. Если Ваш автомобиль не имеет этой системы, требуется инвертор напряжения, который может быть приобретен у дилера автомобилнего специалиста JVC.

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЯ

Для предотвращения коротких замыканий мы рекомендуем Вам отсоединить отрицательный разъем аккумулятора и осуществить все подключения перед установкой устройства.

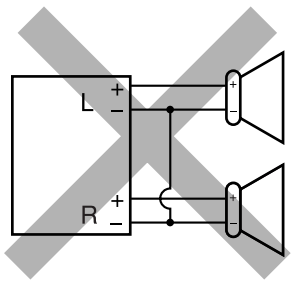
- **После установки обязательно заземлите данное устройство на шасси автомобиля.**

Примечания:

- Заменяйте предохранитель другим предохранителем указанного класса. Если предохранитель сгорает слишком часто, обратитесь к дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC.
- Рекомендуется подключать динамики с максимальной мощностью более 50 Вт (к задней и передней панели устройства, с полным сопротивлением от **4** Ω **до 8** Ω). Если максимальная мощность динамиков менее 50 Вт, перейдите в режим "Amp Gain", чтобы предотвратить их повреждение (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 25).
- Для предотвращения короткого замыкания заклейте НЕИСПОЛЬЗУЕМЫЕ концы изолирующей лентой.
- Радиатор во время использования сильно нагревается. Старайтесь его не трогать во время удаления устройства.

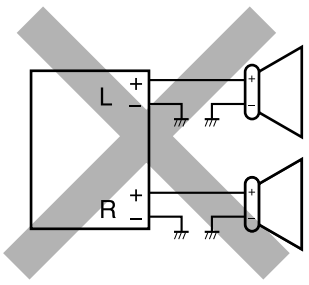
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



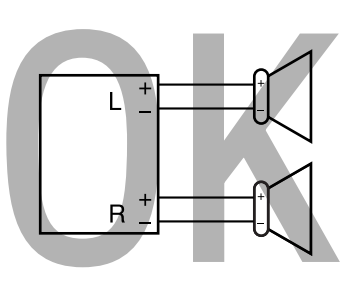
VORSICHTSMASSREGELN beim Anschließen der Stromversorgung und Lautsprecher:

- **Die Lautsprecherleitungen des Netzkabels NICHT an der Autobatterie anschließen, da sonst das Gerät schwer beschädigt wird.**
- *VOR dem Anschließen der Lautsprecherleitungen des Spannunsgversorgungskabels an die Lautsprecher, die Lautsprecherverdrahtung in Ihrem Auto überprüfen.*



ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЯ по питанию и подключению громкоговорителей:

- **НЕ подключайте провода громкоговорителей к аккумулятору автомобиля, иначе устройство будет повреждено.**
- ПЕРЕД подключением проводов громкоговорителей к кабелю питания громкоговорителя проверьте схему соединений громкоговорителей в Вашем автомобиле.



Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

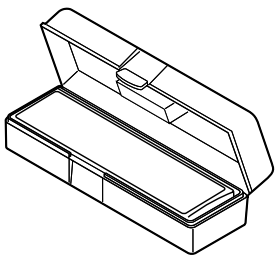
Teileliste für den Einbau und Anschluß

Die folgenden Teile werden zusammen mit diesem Gerät geliefert. Falls ein Artikel fehlt, wenden Sie sich sofort an Ihren JVC-Autoradiohändler.

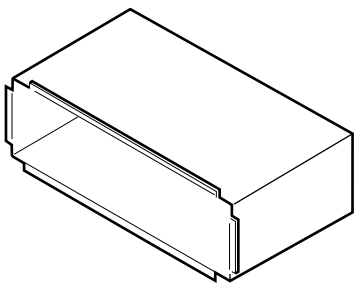
Список деталей для установки и подключения

Следующие детали поставлены в комплекте с устройством. При отсутствии какого-либо элемента немедленно свяжитесь с дилером автомобильного специалиста JVC.

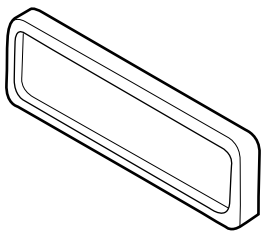
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Etui/Schalttafel
Жесткий футляр/панель управления



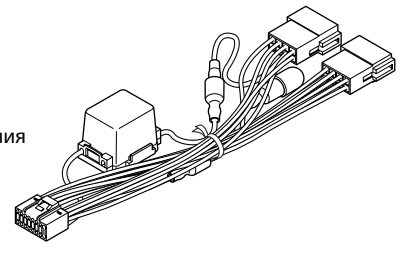
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Halterung
Муфта



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Frontrahmen
Декоративную панель



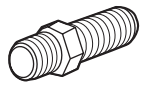
Ⓔ
Power cord
Stromkable
Кабель питания



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Unterlegscheibe (ø5)
Шайба (њ5)

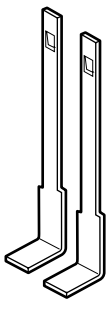
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Sicherungsmutter (M5)
Фиксирующая гайка (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
Befestigungsschraube (M5 × 20 mm)
Крепежный болт (M5 × 20 мм)

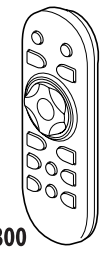


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Gummipuffer
Резиновый чехол

Ⓙ
Handles
Griffe
Рычаги



Ⓚ
Remote controller
Fernbedienung
дистанционного управления
RM-RK300



Ⓛ
Battery
Batterie
Батарейка
CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

EINBAU (IM ARMATURENBRETT)

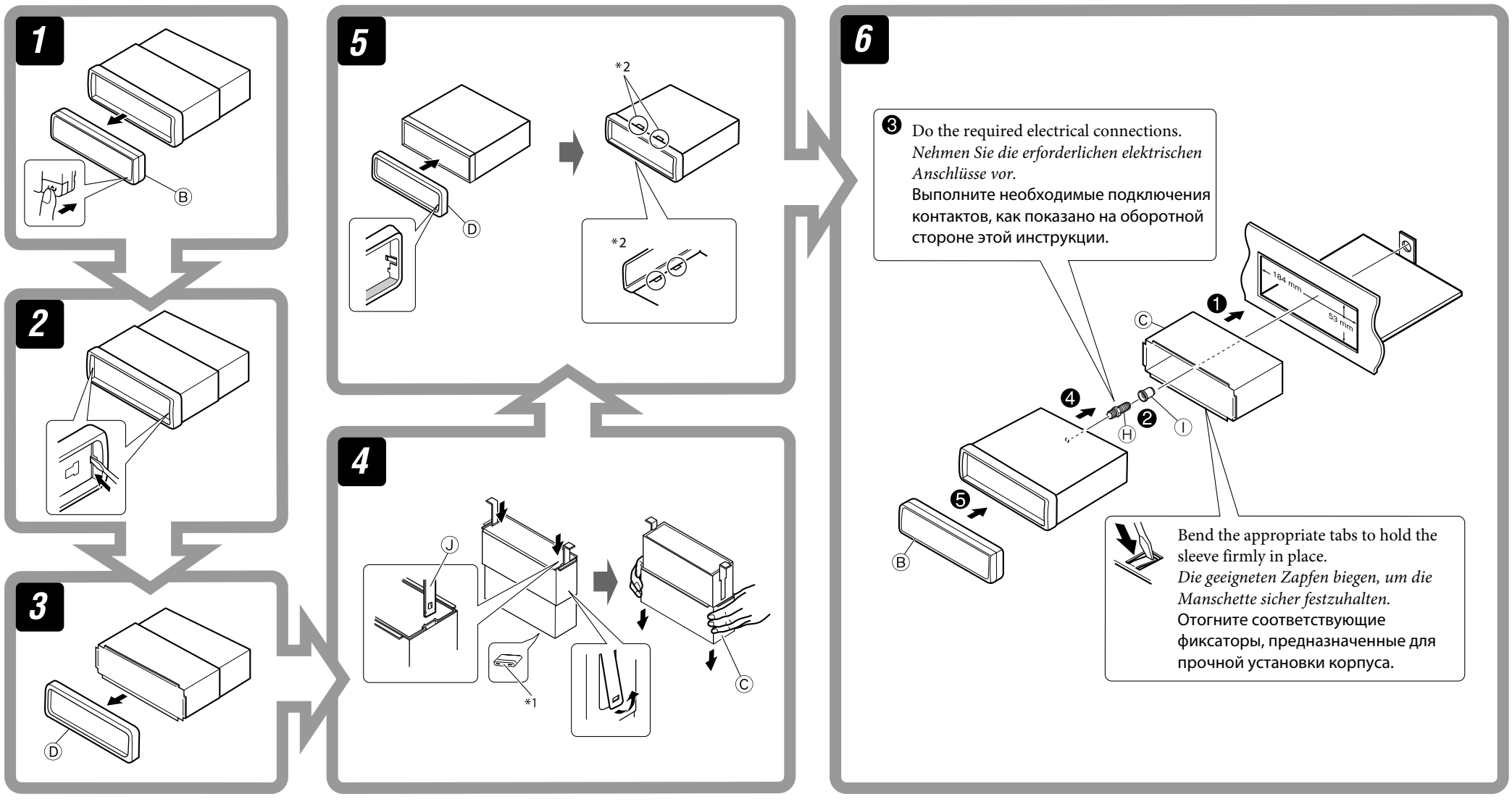
Die folgende Abbildung zeigt einen typischen Einbau. Bei irgendwelchen Fragen oder wenn Sie Informationen hinsichtlich des Einbausatzes brauchen, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler oder ein Unternehmen das diese Einbausätze vertreibt.

- *Sind Sie sich über den richtigen Einbau des Geräts nicht sicher, lassen Sie es von einem qualifizierten Techniker einbauen.*

УСТАНОВКА (УСТАНОВКА В ПРИБОРНУЮ ПАНЕЛЬ)

На следующих иллюстрациях показана типовая установка. Если у Вас есть какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся установки, обратитесь к Вашему дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC или в компанию, поставляющую соответствующие принадлежности.

- Если Вы не знаете точно, как следует устанавливать это устройство, обратитесь к квалифицированному специалисту.



*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*1 *Beim Aufstellen des Geräts darauf achten, daß die Sicherung auf der Rückseite nicht beschädigt wird.*
*1 Устанавливайте устройство таким образом, чтобы не повредить предохранитель, расположенный сзади.

*2 Fit the protrusions outside the receiver.
*2 *Die Vorsprünge außen am Receiver anpassen.*
*2 Выступы должны находиться с внешней стороны приемника.

Removing the unit

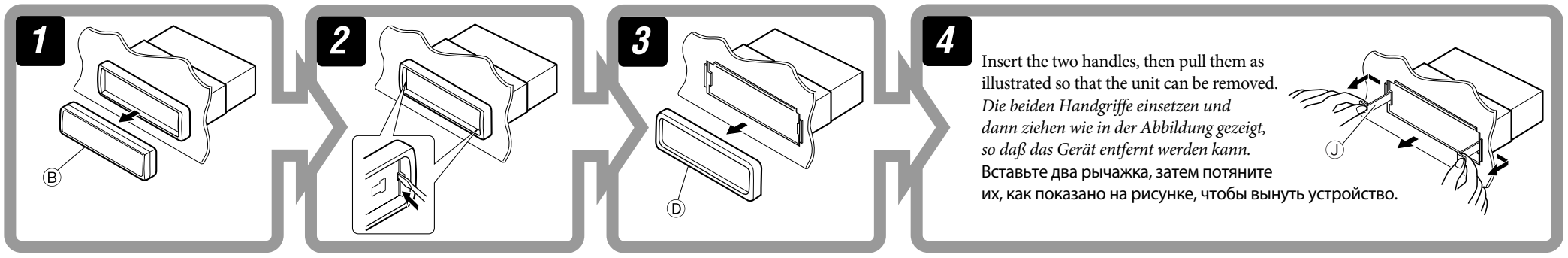
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Ausbau des Geräts

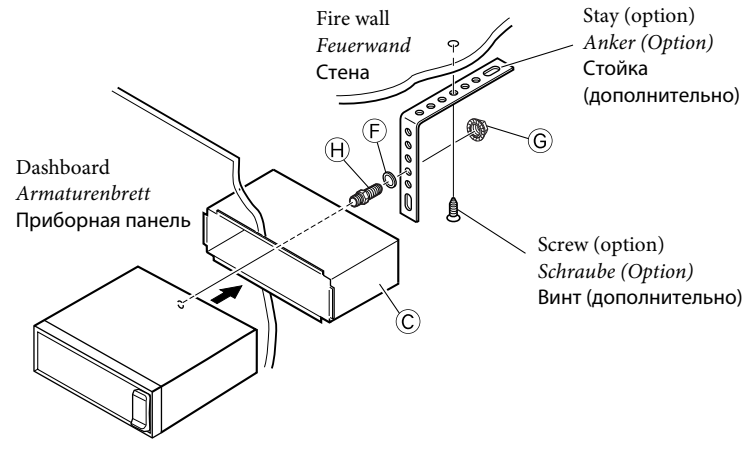
Vor dem Ausbau des Geräts den hinteren Teil freigeben.

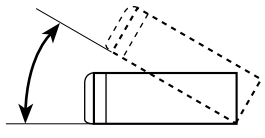
Удаление устройства

Перед удалением устройства освободите заднюю часть.



When using the optional stay / Beim Verwenden der Anker-Option / При использовании дополнительной стойки

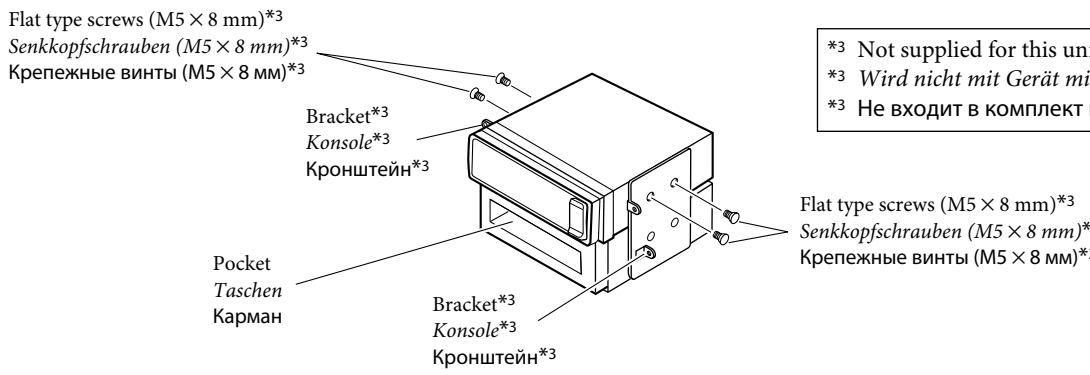




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚.
Stellen Sie das Gerät mit einem Winkel von weniger als 30˚ auf.
Установите устройство под углом менее 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Beim Einbau des Geräts ohne Halterung / При установке устройства без использования муфты

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
In einem Toyota-Automobil z.B. bauen Sie zuerst das Autoradio aus und installieren dann das Gerät an seiner Stelle.
В автомобиле Тойота, например, сначала извлеките автомобильный радиоприемник и установите устройство на место.



*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 *Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.*
*3 Не входит в комплект поставки.

Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
Hinweis : *Beim Anbringen des Gerät an der Konsole sicherstellen, daß 8 mm lange Schrauben verwendet werden. Werden längere Schrauben verwendet, können sie das Gerät beschädigen.*
Примечание : При установке устройства на крепежный кронштейн, используйте только винты длиной 8 мм. При использовании более длинных винтов можно повредить устройство.

Caution when installing / Vorsicht bei der Installation / Предостережение во время установки

Fit the unit into the mounting sleeve by using four corners of the trim plate.
- DO NOT press the panel (shaded in the illustration).

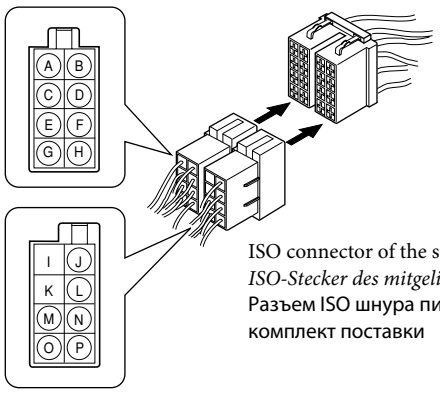
Setzen Sie den Receiver in die Montagemanschette, indem Sie die vier Ecken der Deckplatte verwenden.
- *Drücken Sie NICHT auf die Platte selber (in der Abbildung schraffiert).*

Поместите приемник в монтажную панель, используя четыре угла лицевой панели.
- НЕ нажимайте на панель (затемнена на рисунке).

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS / ELEKTRISCHE ANSCHLÜSSE / ЭЛЕКТРИЧЕСКИЕ ПОДКЛЮЧЕНИЯ

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit dem ISO-Steckverbinder ausgestattet ist / Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- *Schließen Sie die ISO-Steckverbinder an, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.*
- Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.



From the car body
Von der Fahrzeugkarosserie
От корпуса автомобиля

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
ISO-Stecker des mitgelieferten Stromkabels
Разъем ISO шнура питания, входящего в комплект поставки

View from the lead side
Von der Kabelseite aus gesehen
Вид со стороны выводов

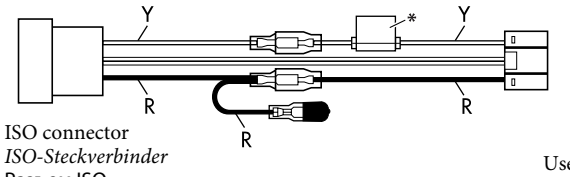
For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Bei bestimmten VW-/Audi- order Opel-(Vauxhall-) Fahrzeugen / Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Es kann erforderlich sein, die Verdrahtung des mitgelieferten Stromkabels zu modifizieren, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
- *Wenden Sie sich vor dem Einbau dieses Receivers an Ihre Auto-Fachwerkstatt.*

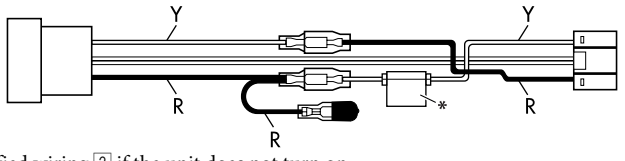
Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.
- Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.

Original wiring / *Original verdrahtung* / Исходная схема соединений



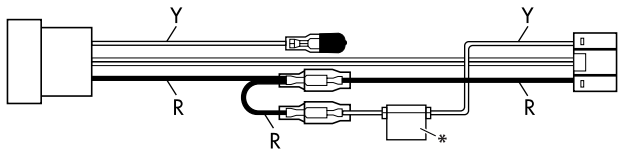
ISO connector
ISO-Steckverbinder
Разъем ISO

Modified wiring 1 / *Modifizierte Verdrahtung* 1 / Преобразованная схема соединений 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Verwenden Sie die modifizierte Verdrahtung 2 *wenn der Receiver nicht einschaltet.*
Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений 2.

Modified wiring 2 / *Modifizierte Verdrahtung* 2 / Преобразованная схема соединений 2



Y: Yellow / *Gelb* / Желтый
R: Red / *Rot* / Красный
* Choke coil / *Drosselspule* / Дроссельная катушка

B Connections without using the ISO connectors / Anschlüsse ohne Verwendung der ISO-Steckverbinder / Подключение без использования разъемов ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Vor dem Anschließen: *Die Verdrahtung im Fahrzeug sorgfältig überprüfen. Falsche Anschlüsse können ernsthafte Schäden am Gerät hervorrufen. Die Leiter des Stromkabels und die Leiter des Anschlusses im Fahrzeug können sich farblich unterscheiden.*

1. *Schneiden Sie den ISO-Steckverbinder auf.*
2. *Die farbigen Adern des Stromkabels in der Reihenfolge anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.*
3. *Das Antennenkabel anschließen.*
4. *Die Kabelbäume am Gerät anschließen.*

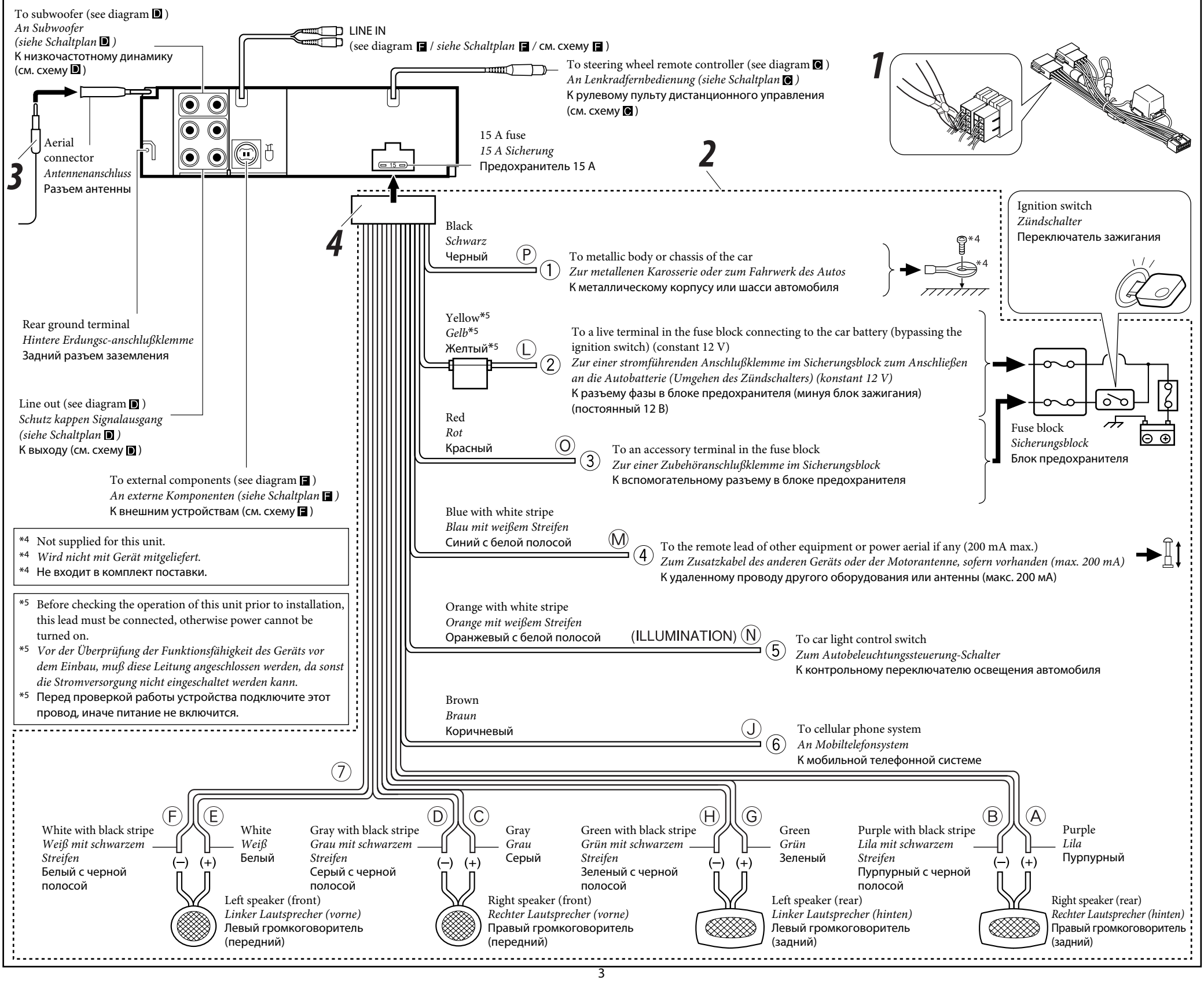
Перед началом подключений: Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле. Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства. Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

1. Обрежьте разъем ISO.
2. Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.
3. Подключите кабель антенны.
4. В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.

If you have installed 3-way network speaker system in your car, see diagram E for speaker connection.

Wenn Sie eine 3-Wege-Lautsprecheranlage in Ihrem Fahrzeug eingebaut haben, *siehe Zeichnung* E *zum Lautsprecheranschluss.*

Если в автомобиле установлена трехполосная система динамиков, схему подключения динамиков см. на диаграмме E.



*4 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 *Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.*
*4 Не входит в комплект поставки.

*5 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
*5 *Vor der Überprüfung der Funktionsfähigkeit des Geräts vor dem Einbau, muß diese Leitung angeschlossen werden, da sonst die Stromversorgung nicht eingeschaltet werden kann.*
*5 Перед проверкой работы устройства подключите этот провод, иначе питание не включится.

C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Anschluß an die Lenkradfernbedienung / Подключение к рулевому пульту дистанционного управления

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit einer Lenkradferndienung ausgestattet ist, können Sie damit diesen Receiver steuern. Hierfür ist ein für Ihr Fahrzeug passender Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption von JVC (nicht im Lieferumfang enthalten) erforderlich. Für weitere Einzelheiten wenden Sie sich an Ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.

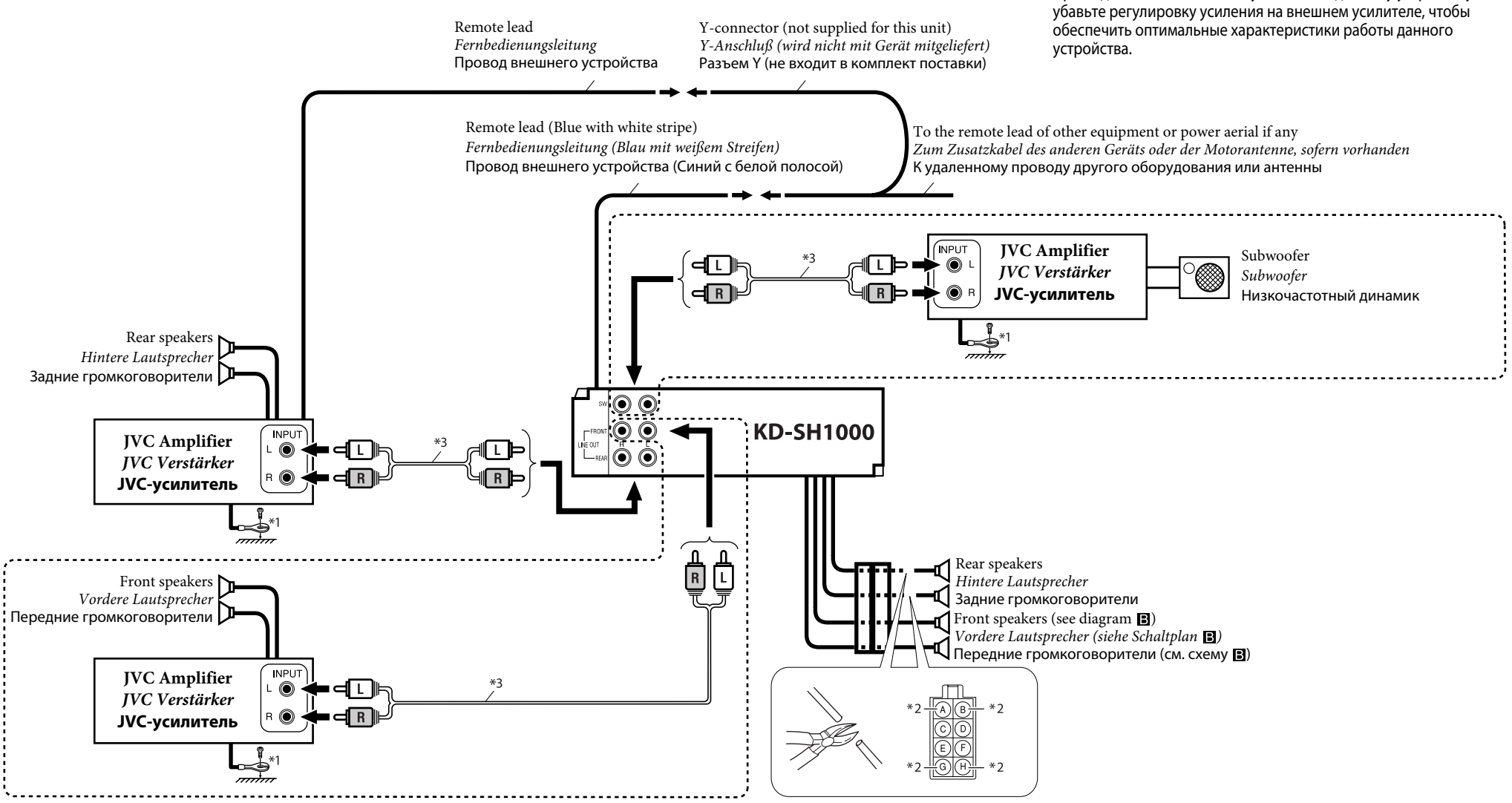
Если автомобиль оборудован рулевым пультом дистанционного управления, его можно использовать для управления данным устройством. Для этого необходим адаптер рулевого пульта дистанционного управления JVC OE (не поставляется), подходящий для Вашего автомобиля. За более подробной информацией обратитесь к поставщику автомобильных аудиосистем компании JVC.

D Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Anschließen der externen Verstärker und/oder Subwoofer / Подключение внешних усилителей и/или низкочастотного динамика

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  - **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
  - You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
  - The line output level of this unit is kept high to maintain the hi-fi sounds reproduced from this unit.
  When connecting an external amplifier to this unit, turn down the gain control on the external amplifier to obtain the best performance from this unit.

Sie können Verstärker anschließen, um Ihre Autostereoanlage zu erweitern.
- *Schließen Sie das Fernbedienungskabel (blau mit weißem Streifen) an das Fernbedienungskabel des anderen Geräts an, so daß es über dieses Gerät gesteuert werden kann.*
- **Nur für den Verstärker:**
  - **Die Lautsprecher von diesem Gerät abtrennen und am Verstärker anschließen. Die Lautsprecherleitungen dieses Geräts unbenutzt lassen.**
  - *Sie können den eingebauten Verstärker abschalten und die Audiosignale nur zu dem(n) externen Verstärker(n) ausgeben, um scharfen Ton zu erhalten und Hitzestau im Unit zu vermeiden (siehe Seite 25 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).*
  - *Der Ausgangspegel dieses Geräts wird auf einem hohen Wert gehalten, um den Hifi-Klang zu unterstützen, den dieses Gerät reproduziert. Wenn Sie einen externen Verstärker an dieses Gerät anschließen, stellen Sie den Verstärkungsregler des externen Verstärkers herunter, um die bestmögliche Leistung dieses Geräts zu erzielen.*

Можно подключить усилители для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы.
- Подсоедините провод внешнего устройства (синий с белой полосой) к проводу внешнего устройства другого оборудования так, чтобы им можно было управлять с этого устройства.
- **Только для усилителя:**
  - **Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.**
  - Для получения более чистого звука и предотвращения внутреннего перегрева приемника можно отключить встроенный усилитель и использовать для усиления аудиосигнала только внешние усилители (см. стр. 25 ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ).
  - Уровень выходного сигнала линии данного устройства поддерживается высоким, чтобы обеспечить высококачественный звук, воспроизводимый данным устройством.
  При подключении внешнего усилителя к данному устройству убавьте регулировку усиления на внешнем усилителе, чтобы обеспечить оптимальные характеристики работы данного устройства.



*1 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*1 *Verbinden Sie den Erdungsleiter mit der Karosserie oder dem Rahmen des Fahrzeugs. Die Kontaktstelle darf nicht lackiert sein (sollte die Kontaktstelle lackiert sein, entfernen Sie den Lack der Kontaktstelle, bevor Sie den Leiter befestigen). Wenn der Erdungsleiter nicht ordnungsgemäß angeschlossen wird, kann dieses Gerät beschädigt werden.*
*1 Плотно прикрепите заземляющий провод к металлическому кузову или шасси автомобиля—в месте, не покрытом краской (если оно покрыто краской, удалите краску перед тем, как прикреплять провод). Невыполнение этого требования может привести к повреждению данного устройства.

*2 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*2 *Schneiden Sie die hinteren Lautsprecherkabel des ISO-Steckverbinders des Fahrzeugs ab, und schließen diese an den Verstärker an.*
*2 Отрежьте провода задних громкоговорителей разъема ISO и подсоедините их к усилителю.

*3 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*3 *Einzelleitung (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)*
*3 Кабель сигнала (не входит в комплект поставки)

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

FEHLERSUCHE

- **Die Sicherung brennt durch.**
* *Sind die roten und schwarzen Leitungen richtig angeschlossen?*
- **Stromversorgung kann nicht eingeschaltet werden.**
* *Ist die gelbe Leitung angeschlossen?*
- **Kein Ton aus den Lautsprechern.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung kurzgeschlossen?*
- **Ton verzerrt.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
* *Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Störgeräusche im Klang.**
* *Ist die hintere Erdungsklemme mit kürzeren und dickeren Kabeln an das Fahrzeugchassis angeschlossen?*
- **Gerät wird heiß.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
* *Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Dieser Receiver funktioniert überhaupt nicht.**
* *Haben Sie einen Reset am Receiver vorgenommen?*

ВЫЯВЛЕНИЕ НЕИСПРАВНОСТЕЙ

- **Сработал предохранитель.**
* Правильно ли подключены черный и красный провода?
- **Питание не включается.**
* Подключен ли желтый провод?
- **Звук не выводится через громкоговорители.**
* Нет ли короткого замыкания на кабеле выхода громкоговорителей?
- **Звук искажен.**
* Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
* Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Шум мешает звучанию.**
* Соединен ли находящийся сзади зажим заземления с шасси автомобиля с помощью более короткого и тонкого шнуров?
- **Устройство нагревается.**
* Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
* Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Приемник не работает.**
* Выполнена ли перенастройка приемника?

E Speaker connections for 3-way network speaker system / Lautsprecheranschlüsse für die 3-Wege-Lautsprecheranlage / Схема подключения динамиков для трехполосной системы динамиков

You can enjoy a world of "pure audio" in your car by connecting 3-way network speaker system (high-range/mid-range/subwoofer).

Sie können eine Welt des "reinen Tons" in Ihrem Fahrzeug genießen, wenn Sie eine 3-Wege-Lautsprecheranlage (Hochtöner/Mitteltöner/Subwoofer) anschließen.

Чтобы в полной мере насладиться миром "чистого звука" в автомобиле, подключите трехполосную систему динамиков (высоко-, средне- и низкочастотные динамики).

IMPORTANT:

If you have installed the 3-way network speaker system in the car, make sure of the following.

- Connect the speaker system as illustrated below.
- Before using the system, activate crossover network and preset the appropriate cutoff frequencies for HPF/LPF (especially for HPF); otherwise, it may damage the speakers.
- For details about the setting, see pages 21 and 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.

WICHTIG:

Wenn Sie eine 3-Wege-Lautsprecheranlage im Fahrzeug eingebaut haben, überprüfen Sie Folgendes.

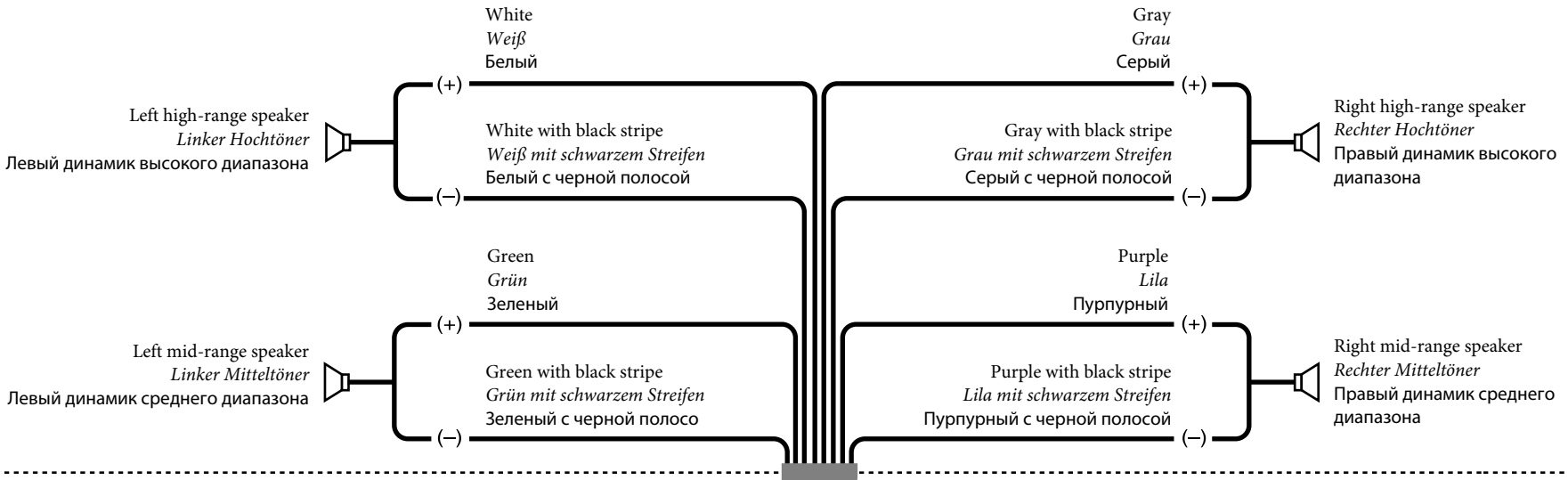
- *Schließen Sie die Lautsprecheranlage an, wie unten gezeigt.*
- *Vor der Verwendung der Anlage aktivieren Sie das Crossover-Netz und stellen die geeigneten Schwellenfrequenzen für HPF/LPF (besonders für HPF) ein; andernfalls können die Lautsprecher beschädigt werden.*
- *Einzelheiten zur Einstellung siehe Seite 21 und 22 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.*

ВАЖНО:

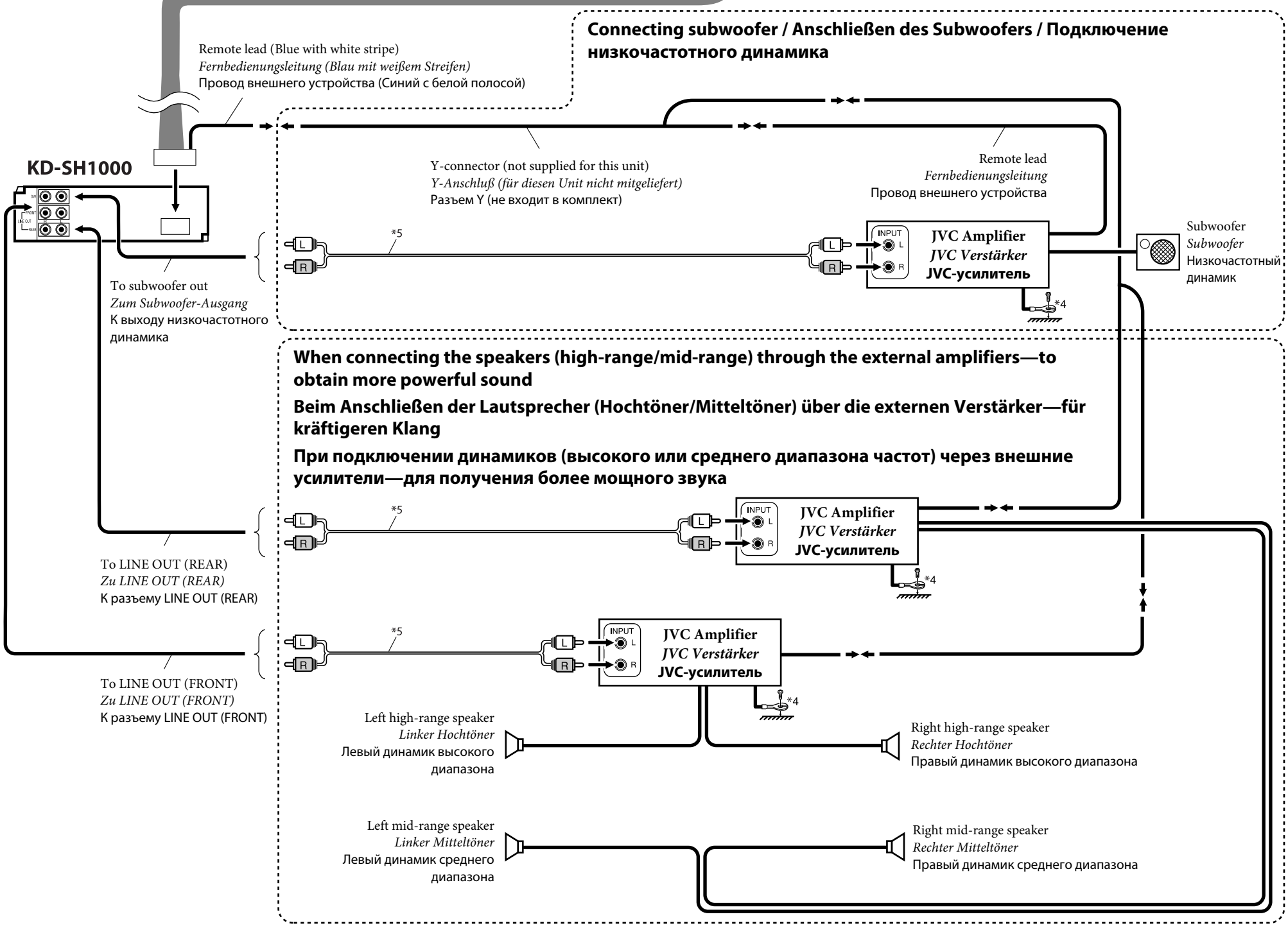
Если в автомобиле установлена трехполосная система динамиков, выполните следующие настройки.

- Подключите систему динамиков, как показано на рисунке ниже.
- Перед использованием системы активируйте разделительный фильтр и установите предельные значения для самых высоких и низких частот HPF/LPF (особенно для высоких – HPF); в противном случае возможно повреждение динамиков.
- Подробную информацию о настройках см. на страницах 21 и 22 ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ.

When connecting the speakers (high-range/mid-range) through the speaker output
Bei Anschließen der Lautsprecher (Hochtöner/Mitteltöner) über den Lautsprecherausgang
При подключении динамиков (высокого или среднего диапазона) через выход динамиков



Connecting subwoofer / Anschließen des Subwoofers / Подключение низкочастотного динамика



When connecting the speakers (high-range/mid-range) through the external amplifiers—to obtain more powerful sound

Beim Anschließen der Lautsprecher (Hochtöner/Mitteltöner) über die externen Verstärker—für kräftigeren Klang

При подключении динамиков (высокого или среднего диапазона частот) через внешние усилители—для получения более мощного звука

*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*4 *Verbinden Sie den Erdungsleiter mit der Karosserie oder dem Rahmen des Fahrzeugs. Die Kontaktstelle darf nicht lackiert sein (sollte die Kontaktstelle lackiert sein, entfernen Sie den Lack der Kontaktstelle, bevor Sie den Leiter befestigen). Wenn der Erdungsleiter nicht ordnungsgemäß angeschlossen wird, kann dieses Gerät beschädigt werden.*

*4 Плотно прикрепите заземляющий провод к металлическому кузову или шасси автомобиля—в месте, не покрытом краской (если оно покрыто краской, удалите краску перед тем, как прикреплять провод). Невыполнение этого требования может привести к повреждению данного устройства.

*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*5 *Einzelleitung (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)*

*5 Кабель сигнала (не входит в комплект поставки)

F Connecting the external components / Anschließen der externen Komponenten / Подключение внешних устройств

CD changer, DAB tuner, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / CD-Wechsler, DAB-Tuner, Apple iPod® oder JVC D. Player / Устройство автоматической смены компакт-дисков, тюнер DAB, Apple iPod® или проигрыватель JVC D.

- **Set "Changer" for the external input setting (See page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Stellen Sie „Changer" für externe Eingangseinstellung ein (Siehe Seite 25 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.) / Установите для внешнего входа значение "Changer" (См. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 25.)**

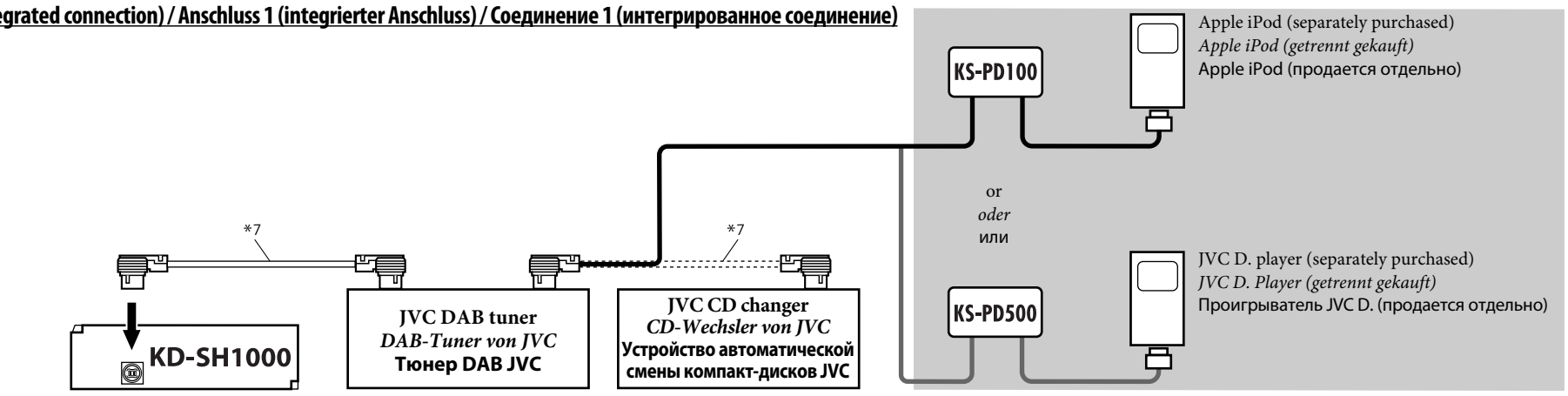
You can connect these components in series as illustrated below. The iPod*6 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

*Sie können diese Komponenten in Reihe anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt. Der iPod*6 oder D. Player kann mit einem Schnittstellenadapter angeschlossen werden (nicht mitgeliefert)—KS-PD100 (für iPod) oder KS-PD500 (für D. Player).*

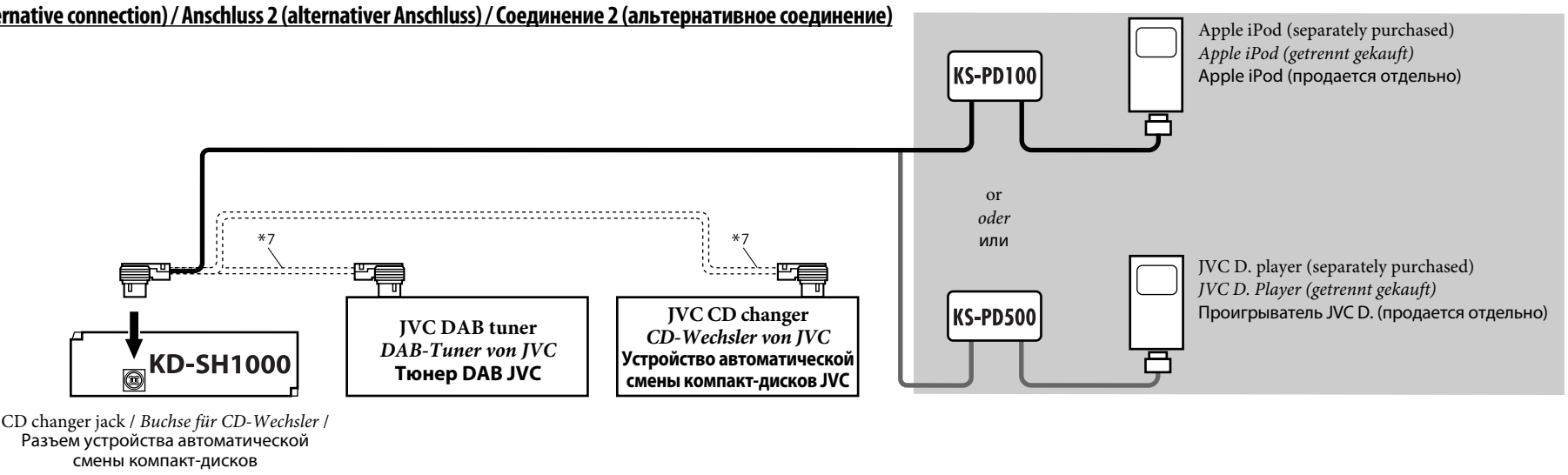
Эти внешние устройства можно подключать параллельно, как показано на рисунке. Проигрыватель iPod*6 или D. можно подключить с помощью интерфейсного адаптера (не входит в комплект поставки)—KS-PD100 (для iPod) или KS-PD500 (для проигрывателя D.).

CAUTION / ACHTUNG / ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЕ:
- Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
- *Vor dem Anschließen der externen Komponenten sicherstellen, dass das Gerät ausgeschaltet ist.*
- Перед подключением внешних компонентов убедитесь в том, что устройство выключено.

Connection 1 (integrated connection) / Anschluss 1 (integrierter Anschluss) / Соединение 1 (интегрированное соединение)



Connection 2 (alternative connection) / Anschluss 2 (alternativer Anschluss) / Соединение 2 (альтернативное соединение)

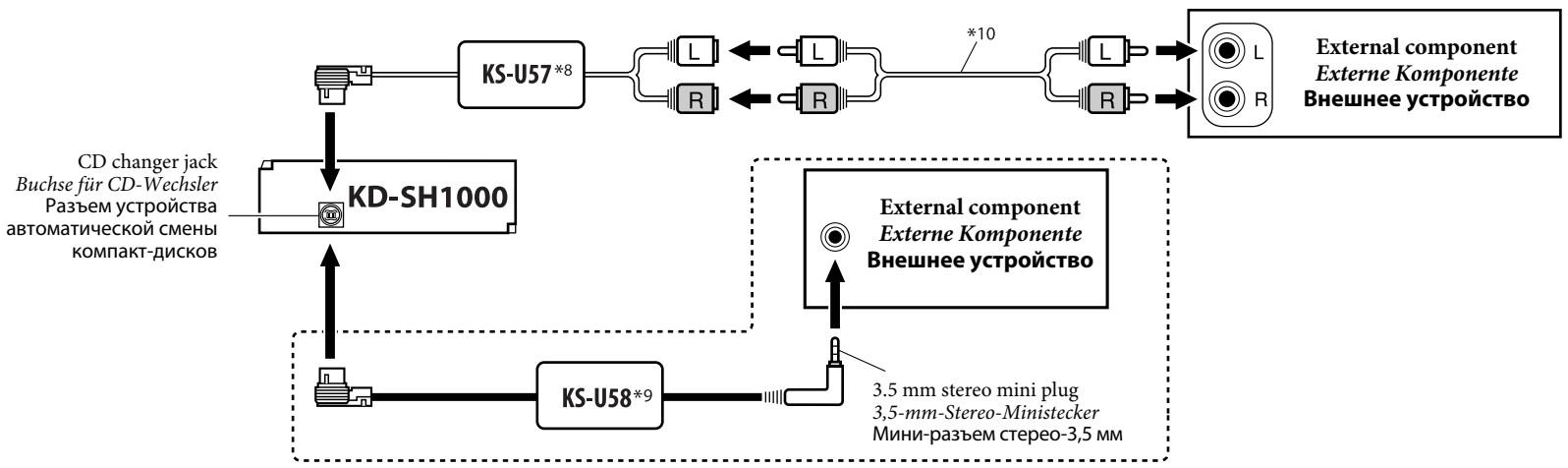


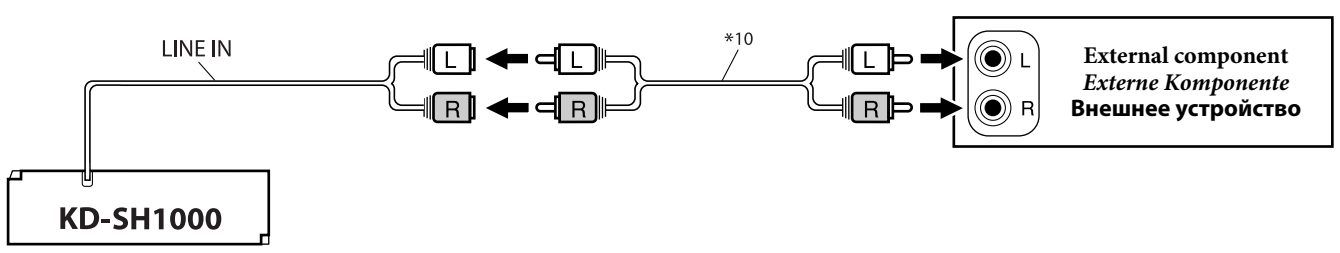
*6 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*6 *iPod ist ein Warenzeichen von Apple Computer, Inc., eingetragen in den USA und anderen Ländern.*
*6 iPod является торговой маркой Apple Computer, Inc., зарегистрированной в США и других странах.

*7 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer or DAB tuner
*7 *Anschließen des für CD-Wechsler oder DAB-Tuner mitgelieferten Kabels*
*7 Подключение кабеля, входящего в комплект поставки устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков или тюнера DAB

Other external component / Andere externe Komponenten / Другое внешнее устройство

- **Set "Ext In" for the external input setting (See page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Stellen Sie „Ext In" für externe Eingangseinstellung ein (Siehe Seite 25 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.) / Установите для внешнего входа значение "Ext In" (См. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 25.)**





*8 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*8 *Line-Eingangsadapter KS-U57 (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)*
*8 Коммуникационный адаптер KS-U57 (не входит в комплект поставки)

*9 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)
*9 *AUX-Eingangsadapter KS-U58 (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)*
*9 Адаптер для подключения дополнительных устройств KS-U58 (не входит в комплект поставки)

*10 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*10 *Einzelleitung (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)*
*10 Кабель сигнала (не входит в комплект поставки)